

COURSE OF MATHEMATICAL WORKS,

BY GEORGE R. PERKINS, A. M.,

Professor of Mathematics and Principal of the State Normal School

I. PRIMARY ARITHMETIC. Price 21 cts.

A want, with young pupils, of rapidity and accuracy in performing operations upon written numbers; an imperfect knowledge of Numeration; inadequate conceptions of the nature and relations of Fractions, and a lack of familiarity with the principles of Decimals, have induced the author to prepare the PRIMARY ARITHMETIC.

The first part is devoted to MENTAL EXERCISES and the second to *Exercises on the Slate and Blackboard*.

While the minds of young pupils are disciplined by mental exercises (if not wearisomely prolonged), they fail, in general, in trusting to "head-work" for their calculations; and in resorting to written operations to solve their difficulties, are often slow and inaccurate from a want of early familiarity with such processes: these considerations have induced the Author to devote part of his book to *primary written exercises*.

It has been received with more popularity than any Arithmetic heretofore issued.

II. ELEMENTARY ARITHMETIC. Price 42 cts.

Has recently been carefully revised and enlarged. It will be found concise, yet lucid. It reaches the radical relations of numbers, and presents fundamental principles in analysis and examples. It leaves nothing obscure, yet it does not embarrass by multiplied processes, nor excite by minute details.

In this work *all of the examples or problems are strictly practical*, made up as they are in a great measure of important statistics and valuable facts in history and philosophy, which are thus unconsciously learned in acquiring a knowledge of the Arithmetic.

Fractions are placed immediately after Division; Federal Money is treated as and with Decimal Fractions; Proportion is placed before Fellowship, Alligation, and such rules as require its application in their solution. Every rule is marked with verity and simplicity. The answers to all of the examples are given.

The work will be found to be an improvement on most, if not all, previous elementary Arithmetics in the treatment of Fractions, Denominate Numbers, Rule of Three, Interest, Equation of Payments, Extraction of Roots, and many other subjects.

Wherever this work is presented, the publishers have heard but one opinion in regard to its merits, and that most favorable.

III. HIGHER ARITHMETIC. Price 84 cts.

The present edition has been revised, many subjects rewritten, and much new matter added; and contains an APPENDIX of about 60 pages, in which the philosophy of the more difficult operations and interesting properties of numbers are fully discussed. The work is what its name purports, a *Higher Arithmetic*, and will be found to contain many entirely new principles which have never before appeared in any Arithmetic. It has received the strongest recommendations from hundreds of the best teachers the country affords.

IV. ELEMENTS OF ALGEBRA. Price 84 cts.

This work is an introduction to the Author's "Treatise on Algebra," and is designed especially for the use of Common Schools, and universally pronounced "admirably adapted to the purpose."

V. TREATISE ON ALGEBRA. Price \$1 50.

This work contains the higher parts of Algebra usually taught in Colleges; a new method of cubic and higher equations as well as the THEOREM OF STURM, by which we may at once determine the number of real roots of any Algebraic Equation, with much more ease than by previously discovered method.

In the present revised edition, one entire chapter on the subject of CONTINUED FRACTIONS has been added.

VI. ELEMENTS OF GEOMETRY, WITH PRACTICAL APPLICATIONS. \$1.

The author has added throughout the entire Work, PRACTICAL APPLICATIONS, which, in the estimation of Teachers, is an important consideration.

An eminent Professor of Mathematics, in speaking of this work, says: "We have adopted it, because it follows more closely the best model of pure geometrical reasoning, which ever has been, and perhaps ever will be exhibited; and because the Author has condensed some of the important principles of the great Master of Geometricians, and more especially has shown that his theorems are not mere theory, or many practical applications: a quality in a text-book of this science no less uncommon than it is important."

PROF. MANDEVILLE'S READING BOOKS.

I. PRIMARY, OR FIRST READER. Price 10 cents.

II. SECOND READER. Price 16 cents.

These two Readers are formed substantially on the same plan; and the second is a continuation of the first. The design of both is to combine a knowledge of the meaning and pronunciation of words, with a knowledge of their grammatical functions. The parts of speech are introduced successively, beginning with the articles; these are followed by the demonstrative pronouns; and these again by others, class after class, until all that are requisite to form a sentence have been separately considered; when the common reading lessons begin.

The Second Reader reviews the ground passed over in the Primary, but adds largely to the amount of information. The child is here also taught to read writing as well as printed matter; and in the reading lessons, attention is constantly directed to the different ways in which sentences are formed and connected, and of the peculiar manner in which each of them is delivered. All who have examined these books, have pronounced them a decided and important advance on every other of the same class in use.

III. THIRD READER. Price 25 cents.

IV. FOURTH READER. Price 38 cents.

In the first two Readers, the main object is to make the pupil acquainted with the meaning and functions of words, and to impart facility in pronouncing them in sentential connection; the leading design of these, is to form a natural, flexible, and varied delivery. Accordingly, the Third Reader opens with a series of exercises on articulation and modulation, containing numerous examples for practice on the elementary sounds (including errors to be corrected) and on the different movements of the voice, produced by sentential structure, by emphasis, and by the passions. The habits formed by these exercises, which should be thoroughly, as they can be easily mastered, under intelligent instruction, find scope for improvement and confirmation in the reading lessons which follow, in the same book and that which succeeds.

These lessons have been selected with special reference to the following peculiarities; 1st, Colloquial character; 2d, Variety of sentential structure; 3d, Variety of subject matter; 4th, Adaptation to the progressive development of the pupil's mind; and as far as possible, 5th, Tendency to excite moral and religious emotions. Great pains have been taken to make the books in these respects, which are, in fact, characteristic of the whole series, superior to any others in use; with what success a brief comparison will readily show.

V. THE FIFTH READER; OR, COURSE OF READING. Price 75 cents.

VI. THE ELEMENTS OF READING AND ORATORY. Price \$1.

These books are designed to cultivate the literary taste, as well as the understanding and vocal powers, of the pupil.

THE COURSE OF READING comprises three parts; the *first part* containing a more elaborate description of elementary sounds and the parts of speech grammatically considered than was deemed necessary in the preceding works; here indispensable: *part second*, a complete classification and description of every sentence to be found in the English, or any other language; examples of which in every degree of expansion, from a few words to the half of an octavo page in length are adduced, and arranged to be read; and as each species has its peculiar delivery, as well as structure, both are learned at the same time; *part third*, paragraphs; or sentences in their connection unfolding general thoughts, as in the common reading books. It may be observed that the selections of sentences in *part second*, and of paragraphs in *part third*, comprise some of the finest gems in the language: distinguished alike for beauty of thought and facility of diction. If not found in a school book, they might be appropriately called "elegant extracts."

THE ELEMENTS OF READING AND ORATORY closes the series with an exhibition of the whole theory and art of Elocution exclusive of gesture. It contains, besides the classification of sentences already referred to, but here presented with fuller statement and illustration, the laws of punctuation and delivery deduced from it: the whole followed by carefully selected pieces for sentential analysis and vocal practice.

THE RESULT.—The student who acquaints himself thoroughly with the contents of this book, will, as numerous experiments have proved; 1st, Acquire complete knowledge of the structure of the language; 2d, Be able to designate any sentence of any book by name at a glance; 3d, Be able to declare with equal rapidity its proper punctuation; 4th, Be able to declare, and with sufficient practice to give its proper delivery. Such are a few of the general characteristics of the series of school books which the publishers now offer to the friends and patrons of a sound common school and academic education. For more particular information, reference is respectfully made to the "Hints," which may be found at the beginning of each volume.

N. B. The punctuation in all these books conforms, in the main, to the sense and proper delivery of every sentence, and is a guide to both. When a departure from the proper punctuation occurs, the proper delivery is indicated. As reading books are usually punctuated, it is a matter of surprise that children should learn to read at all.

* * The above series of Reading Books are already very extensively introduced and commended by the most experienced Teachers in the country. "Prof. Mandeville's system is eminently original, scientific and practical, and destined wherever it is introduced to supersede at once all others."

English.

THE SHAKSPEARIAN READER;

A COLLECTION OF THE MOST APPROVED PLAYS OF

SHAKSPEARE.

Thoroughly Revised, with Introductory and Explanatory Notes, and a Memoir of the Author. Prepared expressly for the use of Classes, and the Family Reading Circle.

BY JOHN W. S. HOWS,

Professor of Elocution in Columbia College.

—The MAN, whom *Nature's* self hath made
mock herself, and TRUTH to imitate.—*Spenser.*

One Volume, 12mo, \$1 25.

At a period when the fame of Shakspeare is "striding the world like a colossus," and editions of his works are multiplied with a profusion that testifies the desire awakened in all classes of society to read and study his imperishable compositions,—there needs, perhaps, but little apology for the following selection of his works, prepared expressly to render them unexceptionable for the use of Schools, and acceptable for Family reading. Apart from the fact, that Shakspeare is the "well-spring" from which may be traced the origin of the purest poetry in our language,—a long course of professional experience has satisfied me that a necessity exists for the addition of a work like the present, to our stock of Educational Literature. His writings are peculiarly adapted for the purposes of Elocutionary exercise, when the system of instruction pursued by the Teacher is based upon the true principle of the art, viz.—a careful analysis of the structure and meaning of language, rather than a servile adherence to the arbitrary and mechanical rules of Elocution.

To impress upon the mind of the pupil that words are the exposition of thought, and that in reading, or speaking, every shade of thought and feeling has its appropriate shade of modulated tone, ought to be the especial aim of every Teacher; and an author like Shakspeare, whose every line embodies a volume of meaning, should surely form one of our Elocutionary Text Books. . . . Still, in preparing a selection of his works for the express purpose contemplated in my design, I have not hesitated to exercise a severe revision of his language, beyond that adopted in any similar undertaking—"Bowdler's Family Shakspeare" not even excepted;—and simply, because I practically know the impossibility of introducing Shakspeare as a *Class Book*, or as a satisfactory Reading Book for Families without this precautionary revision. —
Extract from the Preface.

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY

OF

THE MIDDLE AGES

(CHIEFLY FROM THE FRENCH.)

BY G. W. GREENE,

Instructor in Brown University.

PART I: HISTORY. One volume, 12mo. \$1.

Extract from Preface.

"This volume, as the title indicates, is chiefly taken from a popular French work, which has rapidly passed through several editions, and received the sanction of the University. It will be found to contain a clear and satisfactory exposition of the Revolution of the Middle Ages, with such general views of literature, society, and manners, as are required to explain the passage from ancient to modern history. At the head of each chapter there is an analytical summary, which will be found of great assistance in examination or in review. Instead of a single list of sovereigns, I have preferred giving full genealogical tables, which are much clearer and infinitely more satisfactory."

A MANUAL OF ANCIENT AND MODERN HISTORY,

COMPRISING :

I. ANCIENT HISTORY, containing the Political History, Geographical Position, and Social State of the Principal Nations of Antiquity, carefully digested from the Ancient Writers, and illustrated by the discoveries of Modern Travellers and Scholars.

II. MODERN HISTORY, containing the Rise and Progress of the principal European Nations, their Political History, and the changes in their Social Condition : with a History of the Colonies Founded by Europeans. By W. COOKE TAYLOR, LL.D., of Trinity College, Dublin. Revised, with Additions on American History, by C. S. Henry, D.D., Professor of History in the University of N. Y., and Questions adapted for the Use of Schools and Colleges. One handsome vol., 8vo., of 800 pages, \$2.25 ; Ancient History in 1 vol. \$1.25, Modern History in 1 vol., \$1.50.

The ANCIENT HISTORY division comprises Eighteen Chapters, which include the general outlines of the History of Egypt—the Ethiopians—Babylonia and Assyria—Western Asia—Palestine—the Empire of the Medes and Persians—Phœnician Colonies in Northern Africa—Foundation and History of the Grecian States—Greece—the Macedonian Kingdom and Empire—the States that arose from the dismemberment of the Macedonian Kingdom and Empire—Ancient Italy—Sicily—the Roman Republic—Geographical and Political Condition of the Roman Empire—History of the Roman Empire—and India—with an Appendix of important illustrative articles.

This portion is one of the best Compendes of Ancient History that ever yet has appeared. It contains a complete text for the collegiate lecturer ; and is an essential hand-book for the student who is desirous to become acquainted with all that is memorable in general secular archæology.

The MODERN HISTORY portion is divided into Fourteen Chapters, on the following general subjects :—Consequences of the Fall of the Western Empire—Rise and Establishment of the Saracenic Power—Restoration of the Western Empire—Growth of the Papal Power—Revival of Literature—Progress of Civilization and Invention—Reformation, and Commencement of the States System in Europe—Augustan Ages of England and France—Mercantile and Colonial System—Age of Revolutions—French Empire—History of the Peace—Colonization—China—the Jews—with Chronological and Historical Tables and other Indexes. Dr. Henry has appended a new chapter on the History of the United States.

This Manual of Modern History, by Mr. Taylor, is the most valuable and instructive work concerning the general subjects which it comprehends, that can be found in the whole department of historical literature. Mr. Taylor's book is fast superseding all other compends, and is already adopted as a text-book in Harvard, Columbia, Yale, New-York, Pennsylvania and Brown Universities, and several leading Academies.

LECTURES

ON

MODERN HISTORY.

By THOMAS ARNOLD, D.D.,

Regius Professor of Modern History in the University of Oxford, and Head Master of Rugby School.

EDITED, WITH A PREFACE AND NOTES,

By HENRY REED, LL.D.,

Professor of English Literature in the University of Pa.

One volume, 12mo. \$1.25.

Extract from the American Editor's Preface.

In preparing this edition, I have had in view its use, not only for the general reader, but also as a text-book in education, especially in our college course of study. * * * * The introduction of this work as a text-book I regard as important, because, as far as my information entitles me to speak, there is no book better calculated to inspire an interest in historical study. That it has this power over the minds of students I can say from experience, which enables me also to add, that I have found it excellently suited to a course of college instruction. By intelligent and enterprising members of a class especially, it is studied as a text-book with zeal and animation.

OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD
OF
LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK
THE FRENCH LANGUAGE,

With an Appendix, containing the Cardinal and Ordinal Numbers, and full Paradigms of the Regular and Irregular, Auxiliary, Reflective, and Impersonal Verbs

By J. L. JEWETT. One volume, 12mo. \$1.

'NEW METHOD OF LEARNING THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.—This grammar must supersede others now used for instruction in the French language. Its conception and arrangement are admirable,—the work evidently of a mind familiar with the deficiencies of the systems, the place of which it is designed to supply. In all the works of the kind that have fallen under our notice, there has been so much left unexplained or obscure, and so many things have been omitted—trifles, perhaps, in the estimation of the author, but the cause of great embarrassment to the learner—that they have been comparatively valueless as self-instructors. The student deceived by their specious pretensions, has not proceeded far before he has felt himself in a condition similar to that of a mariner who should put out to sea without a compass to direct him. He has encountered difficulty after difficulty, to which his grammar afforded no clue; when, disappointed and discouraged, he has either abandoned the study in disgust, or if his means permitted, has resorted to a teacher to accomplish what it was not in his power to effect by the aid of his 'self-instructor.'

"Ollendorff has passed his roller over the whole field of French instruction, and the rugged inequalities formerly to be encountered, no longer discourage the learner. What were the difficulties of the language, are here mastered in succession; and the only surprise of the student, as he passes from lesson to lesson, is, that he meets none of these 'lions in the way.'

"The value of the work has been greatly enhanced by a careful revision, and the addition of an appendix containing matter essential to its completeness either as a book for the use of teachers or for self-instruction."—*New-York Commercial Advertiser.*

VALUE'S IMPROVED EDITION OF
OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD
OF
LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK
THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

With the Lessons divided into Sections of a Proper Length for Daily Tasks, and numerous Corrections, Additions, and Improvements, suitable for this country, by V. VALUE; to which is added Value's System of French Pronunciation; his Grammatical Synopsis; a New Index, and Short Models of Commercial Correspondence.

One volume, 12mo. Price \$1.

"Mr. Value has taught practically Ollendorff's system for many years, and has bestowed much thought and labor on the improvement of this edition. The longer lessons have been judiciously subdivided; much attention has been bestowed upon the arrangement of the exercises relating to the subjunctive mood: besides the system of pronunciation, we have an excellent grammatical synopsis, which appears to us, on a brief examination, very happily constructed, and of great value. In his preface the author mentions several minute corrections made in this edition, which show the care and accuracy bestowed upon it."—*Churchman.*

Messrs. D. APPLETON & Co.

Gentlemen,

I have carefully perused your new edition of Ollendorff by Mr. Value, and find it contains all the improvements the original work so much required. It is evidently the result of long research, time and labor, founded upon experience and a thorough knowledge of the system, and in my estimation far superior to any work of the kind which I have yet met with. I intend adopting the use of it in my classes.

Yours, respectfully,

J. ROEMER,

Professor of the French Language in the N. Y. Free Academy.

* * * Keys to the Exercises of the above Grammars in separate vols., 75 cts. each.

Mezzofanti's System of Learning Languages applied to the Study of French.
IN TWO VOLUMES.

^{I.}
FIRST FRENCH READER.

WITH A TREATISE ON FRENCH VERSIFICATION, AND A DICTIONARY OF IDIOMS,
PECULIAR EXPRESSIONS, ETC.

BY J. ROEMER,

Professor of the French Language and Literature in the N. Y. Free Academy.

12mo. \$1.

^{II.}
SECOND FRENCH READER.

ILLUSTRATED WITH HISTORICAL, GEOGRAPHICAL, PHILOSOPHICAL, AND
PHILOLOGICAL NOTES.

BY J. ROEMER.

12mo. \$1 25.

"With the exception of our own tongue, French is undoubtedly the most important language of the modern world. Commerce, literature, science, and the fine arts, all demand its aid. It therefore is justly classed with the numerous branches of knowledge essential to a good education.

"The work now before us is an amplification of the system pursued by the late Cardinal Mezzofanti, applied to the French language. Professor Roemer, who is favorably known in connection with the Free Academy of this city, was personally acquainted with this extraordinary linguist, and received from him the details of his successful mode of study."

"We approve highly of the method so ably advocated by Professor Roemer; it is simple, encouraging in its nature, and more likely to conduct the student to a sound knowledge of the structure of the language than any other with which we are acquainted. The introductory remarks on the history and analogies of the French language are practical and suggestive. An admirable treatise on French versification (generally neglected in tuition), and a copious dictionary of idioms, &c., are very important features in the work. The progressive reading exercises, in prose and verse, have been selected with great taste, and justly claim for the volume the additional merit of being highly interesting even to those who have mastered the language, and now cultivate its literature. We cannot close our notice of this excellent work more appropriately, than by recommending it as being well worthy of the attention of all those who are interested in educational progress and the simplification of valuable knowledge."

Journal of Commerce.

NEW POETICAL FRENCH READER.

CHOIX DE POESIES

POUR LES JEUNES PERSONNES.

PAR MADAME A. COUTAN.

1 vol., 12mo. \$1.

"CHOIX DES POESIES POUR LES JEUNES PERSONNES, is the title of a selection of poems in the French language, designed for the perusal of the young, by Madame A. Coutan, just published by Appleton and Company, of this city. It is a very charming collection of some of the sweetest and most graceful verses in the French language. We were hardly aware, till we looked over this book, that so many distinguished French authors had contributed to a class of productions, so peculiarly suited to readers of an early age."—*Evening Post.*

THE YOUNG LADIES' GUIDE TO FRENCH COMPOSITION.

BY GUSTAVE CHOUQUET.

1 vol., 12mo.

Extract from Preface.

"This work is intended to serve as a reading and translation book, a text-book on Rhetoric, and as a manual of French composition and conversation. The treatise on Rhetoric, being applicable to all languages, will help to exercise the minds of young ladies in the elaboration of thought, and train their judgments to sound and correct literary criticism."

ENGLISH SYNONYMES, CLASSIFIED AND EXPLAINED,

WITH

PRACTICAL EXERCISES.

DESIGNED FOR SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE TUITION.

BY G. F. GRAHAM,

Author of 'English, or the Art of Composition,' &c.

WITH AN INTRODUCTION AND ILLUSTRATIVE AUTHORITIES,

BY HENRY REED, LL.D.,

Prof. of English Literature in the University of Penn.

One neat Vol. 12mo. \$1.

CONTENTS.—SECTION I. Generic and Specific Synonymes. II. Active and Passive Synonymes. III. Synonymes of Intensity. IV. Positive and Negative Synonymes. V. Miscellaneous Synonymes. Index to Synonymes. General Index.

Extract from American Introduction.

"This treatise is republished and edited with the hope that it will be found useful as a textbook in the study of our own language. As a subject of instruction, the study of the English tongue does not receive that amount of systematic attention which is due to it, whether it be combined or no with the study of the Greek and Latin. In the usual courses of education, it has no larger scope than the study of some rhetorical principles and practice, and of grammatical rules, which, for the most part, are not adequate to the composite character and varied idiom of English speech. This is far from being enough to give the needful knowledge of what is the living language, both of our English literature and of the multiform intercourse—oral and written—of our daily lives. The language deserves better care and more sedulous culture; it needs much more to preserve its purity, and to guide the progress of its life. The young, instead of having only such familiarity with their native speech as practice without method or theory gives, should be so taught and trained as to acquire a habit of using words—whether with the voice or the pen—fitly and truly, intelligently and conscientiously."

"For such training, this book, it is believed, will prove serviceable. The 'Practical Exercises,' attached to the explanations of the words, are conveniently prepared for the routine of instruction. The value of a course of this kind, regularly and carefully completed, will be more than the amount of information gained respecting the words that are explained. It will tend to produce a thoughtful and accurate use of language, and thus may be acquired, almost unconsciously, that which is not only a critical but a moral habit of mind—the habit of giving utterance to truth in simple, clear and precise terms—of telling one's thoughts and feelings in words that express nothing more and nothing less. It is thus that we may learn how to escape the evils of vagueness, obscurity and perplexity—the manifold mischiefs of words used thoughtlessly and at random, or words used in ignorance and confusion."

"In preparing this edition, it seemed to me that the value and literary interest of the book might be increased by the introduction of a series of illustrative authorities. It is in the addition of these authorities, contained within brackets under each title, and also of a general index to facilitate reference, that this edition differs from the original edition, which in other respects is exactly reprinted. I have confined my choice of authorities to poetical quotations, chiefly because it is in poetry that language is found in its highest purity and perfection. The selections have been made from three of the English poets—each a great authority, and each belonging to a different period, so that in this way some historical illustration of the language is given at the same time. The quotations from Shakspeare (born A. D. 1564, died 1616) may be considered as illustrating the use of the words at the close of the 16th and beginning of the 17th century; those from Milton (born 1608, died 1674) the succeeding half century, or middle of the 17th century; and those from Wordsworth (born 1770) the contemporary use in the 19th century."

A DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE,

CONTAINING THE PRONUNCIATION, ETYMOLOGY, AND EXPLANATION OF ALL WORDS AUTHORIZED BY EMINENT WRITERS;

To which are added, a Vocabulary of the Roots of English Words, and an Accented List of Greek, Latin, and Scripture Proper Names

BY ALEXANDER REID, A. M.,

Rector of the Circus School, Edinburgh.

With a Critical Preface, by HENRY REED, Professor of English Literature in the University of Pennsylvania, and an Appendix, showing the Pronunciation of nearly 3000 of the most important Geographical Names. One volume, 12mo. of nearly 600 pages, bound in Leather. Price \$1.

Among the wants of our time was a good dictionary of our own language, especially adapted for academies and schools. The books which have long been in use were of little value to the junior students, being too concise in the definitions, and immethodical in the arrangement. Reid's English Dictionary was compiled expressly to develop the precise analogies and various properties of the authorized words in general use, by the standard authors and orators who use our vernacular tongue.

Exclusive of the large number of proper names which are appended, this Dictionary includes four especial improvements—and when their essential value to the student is considered, the sterling character of the work as a hand-book of our language will be instantly perceived.

The primitive word is distinguished by a larger type; and when there are any derivatives from it, they follow in alphabetical order, and the part of speech is appended, thus furnishing a complete classification of all the connected analogous words of the same species.

With this facility to comprehend accurately the determinate meaning of the English word, is conjoined a rich illustration for the linguist. The derivation of all the primitive words is distinctly given, and the phrases of the languages whence they are deduced, whether composite or simple; so that the student of foreign languages, both ancient and modern, by a reference to any word, can ascertain the source whence it has been adopted into our own form of speech. This is a great acquisition to the person who is anxious to use words in their utmost clearness of meaning.

To these advantages is subjoined a Vocabulary of the Roots of English Words, which is of peculiar value to the collegian. The fifty pages which it includes, furnish the linguist with a wide-spread field of research, equally amusing and instructive. There is also added an Accented List, to the number of fifteen thousand, of Greek, Latin, and Scripture Proper Names.

RECOMMENDATIONS

REID'S Dictionary of the English Language is an admirable book for the use of schools. Its plans combine a greater number of desirable conditions for such a work, than any with which I am acquainted: and it seems to me to be executed in general with great judgment, fidelity, and accuracy.

C. S. HENRY,

*Professor of Philosophy, History, and Belles Lettres,
in the University of the City of New-York.*

Reid's Dictionary of the English Language is compiled upon sound principles, and with judgment and accuracy. It has the merit, too, of combining much more than is usually looked for in Dictionaries of small size, and will, I believe, be found excellent as a convenient manual, for general use and reference, and also for various purposes of education.

HENRY REED,

Professor of English Literature in the University of Pennsylvania.

After a careful examination, I am convinced that Reid's English Dictionary has strong claims upon the attention of teachers generally. It is of convenient size, beautifully executed, and seems well adapted to the use of scholars, from the common school to the university.

D. H. CHASE,

Principal of Preparatory School.

MIDDLETOWN, Ct.

After a thorough examination of "Reid's English Dictionary," I may safely say that I consider it superior to any of the School Dictionaries with which I am acquainted. Its accurate and concise definitions, and a vocabulary of the roots of English words, drawn from an authority of such authority as Bosworth, are not among the least of its excellencies.

M. M. PARKS,

Chaplain and Professor of Ethics, U. S. Military Academy, West Point.

THE
STANDARD PRONOUNCING DICTIONARY
OF THE
FRENCH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES.

IN TWO PARTS.

PART I. FRENCH AND ENGLISH. | PART II. ENGLISH AND FRENCH.

The FIRST PART comprehending words in common use—Terms connected with Science—Arms belonging to the Fine Arts—4000 Historical Names—4000 Geographical Names—1100 Names lately published, with the PRONUNCIATION OF EVERY WORD, according to the French Academy and the most eminent Lexicographers and Grammarians; together with 750 *Critical Remarks*, in which the various methods of pronouncing employed by different authors are investigated and compared with each other.

The SECOND PART containing a copious vocabulary of English words and expressions, with the pronounciation according to Walker.

THE WHOLE PRECEDED BY

A Practical and Comprehensive System of French Pronunciation.

BY GABRIEL SURENNE, F. A. S. E.,

French Teacher in Edinburgh; Corresponding Member of the French Grammatical Society of Paris, &c., &c.

Reprinted from a duplicate cast of the stereotype plates of the last Edinburgh edition.

One stout volume, 12mo., of nearly 900 pages. Price \$1.50

A FEW CRITICISMS ON ITS MERITS.

Surenne's French Dictionary is in many respects superior to those of "Meadow" and "Boyer." The Proper Names at the bottom of each page, and the method of explaining the pronounciation, (by the French sounds of the vowels, with which the pupil has become familiar,) are in my opinion distinguishing excellencies.

Kinderhook Academy.

SILAS METCALF.

Princeton, N. J.

LYMAN COLEMAN.

We use habitually the admirable Dictionary of Surenne.

National Magazine.

"This work must have been one of very great labor, as it is evidently of deep research. We have given it a careful examination, and are perfectly safe in saying, we have never before seen any thing of the kind at all to compare with it. Our space will not permit us to give more than this general testimony to its value. Long as the title is, and much as it promises, our examination of the work proves that all the promises are fulfilled, and we think that no student of the French language should, for a moment, hesitate to possess himself of it. Nor, indeed, will it be found less useful to the accomplished French scholar, who will find in it a fund of information which can no where be met with in any one book. Such a work has for a long time been greatly needed, and Mr. Surenne has supplied the deficiency in a masterly style. We repeat, therefore our well digested opinion, that no one in search of a knowledge of the niceties of the French language should be without it."

New-York Observer.

"Every student of the French language, and every person of taste who is fond of reading French, and wishes to become proficient in that tongue, should possess this comprehensive but complete dictionary. It embraces all the words in common use, and those in science and the fine arts, historical and geographical names, etc., with the pronounciation of every word according to the French Academy, together with such critical remarks as will be useful to every learner. It is published in a form of extreme condensation, and yet contains so full a compilation of words, definitions, etc., as scarcely to leave any thing to be desired."

Boston Courier.

"This is, we believe, the first French pronouncing dictionary that has appeared in the English field of French education, and the compiler, Mr. Surenne, may well felicitate himself on the decided success which has attended his efforts to furnish us with this long expected desideratum. Mr. S. has rendered precise what was before uncertain, clear what had hitherto been obscure, in short, put into the hands of both teachers and scholars, an authority in philology and pronounciation, as good, as correct, as authoritative as Johnson, Walker, or Webster, in the English tongue. The method adopted for representing the sounds of words, is for the English or American eye and ear, so that faultless pronounciation may be depended upon. The phraseology is often that of the French Academy, consequently of the highest authority, and is both copious and practical. The English pronounciation is precisely after the plan of Webster, imitated or followed with the most scrupulous accuracy, thus giving two extraordinary advantages in one work, viz., a dictionary of French pronounciation, with words and meanings, and a standard of English pronounciation. We exhort, we entreat teachers, parents, guardians, all interested in the education of youth, to look at this splendid work of industry and ingenuity, and they will see and recognize its superiority at a glance

OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD
OF LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK
THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.

Reprinted from the Frankfort edition, to which is added a Systematic Outline of the different Parts of Speech, their Inflection and Use, with full Paradigms, and a complete List of the Irregular Verbs.

BY GEORGE J. ADLER, A. B.,

Professor of German in the University of the City of New-York. One volume, 12mo. \$1 60.

☞ A KEY TO THE EXERCISES, in a separate volume. 75 cts.

"OLLENDORFF'S new method of Learning to Read, Write, and Speak the German Language, with a systematic outline of German Grammar, by George J. Adler, is one of those rare works which leave nothing to be desired on the subjects of which they treat. The learner's difficulties are so fully and exactly provided for, that a constant sense of satisfaction and progress is felt from the beginning to the end of the book. A bare inspection of one of the lessons will satisfy any one acquainted with the elements of German grammar, that it adapts itself perfectly to his wants. With the systematic outline of grammar by Prof. Adler, the new method is substantially perfect, and it is probably second in its advantages only to residence and intercourse with educated Germans."

"The study of the German is becoming so essential a part of an ordinary education, that every work tending to facilitate the acquisition of the language should be welcomed. An American edition of Ollendorff has been much wanted. His system is based upon *natural* principles. He teaches by leading the student to the acquisition of phrases, from which he deduces the rules of the language. The *idioms* are also carefully taught, and the entire construction of the system is such that, if adhered to with fidelity and perseverance, it will secure such a practical knowledge of the German as can be acquired by no other mode, so rapidly and thoroughly. We heartily commend the book to all who really wish to understand a tongue which contains so many treasures."

NEW GRAMMAR FOR GERMANS TO LEARN ENGLISH.

OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD
OF
LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK
THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE
THROUGH THE MEDIUM OF THE GERMAN;

Arranged and adapted for Schools and Private Instruction,

BY P. GANDS.

One volume, 12mo.

Key to the same, uniform with the above. Price 75 cts.

"My compilation of the French Grammar after the method of Ollendorff, has made the German public so thoroughly acquainted with this highly practical system of instruction, that it will not be necessary to add any further recommendation in this place. It was so universally acknowledged and adopted, that I was induced to compile a similar Grammar for Germans to learn English, and I did this the more willingly because I was urged to do so by many from all quarters."

"In carrying out the plan, I endeavored to introduce exercises in questions and answers suited to familiar and social conversation, so as to do away with the antiquated Phrase-books still in use. The frequent application and repetition of the rules set forth in this book, I have sought to make as free from dull monotony as possible, by giving the sentences a new turn, and by arranging them in different order, so as not to repeat the same over and over again."

"A practical routine of instruction carried on for many years, has taught me the wants of the student; I feel therefore perfectly confident in bringing this book before the public."

"P. GANDS."

German.

A DICTIONARY OF THE GERMAN AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES,

INDICATING THE ACCENTUATION OF EVERY GERMAN WORD, CONTAINING SEVERAL HUNDRED GERMAN SYNONYMS, TOGETHER WITH A CLASSIFICATION AND ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS, AND A DICTIONARY OF GERMAN ABBREVIATIONS.

COMPILED FROM THE WORKS OF HILPERT, FLÜGEL, GREIB, HEYSE, AND OTHERS.

IN TWO PARTS:

I. GERMAN AND ENGLISH—II. ENGLISH AND GERMAN

BY G. J. ADLER, A. M.,

Professor of the German Language and Literature in the University of the City of New-York.

One large volume, 8vo, of 1400 pages. Price \$5. Strongly and neatly bound.

Extract from the Preface.

In preparing this volume, our principal aim was to offer to the American student of the German a work which would embody all the valuable results of the most recent investigations in German Lexicography, and which might thus become not only a reliable guide for the practical acquisition of that language, but one which would not forsake him in the higher walks of his pursuit, to which its literary and scientific treasures would naturally invite him. The conviction that such a work was a desideratum, and one which claimed immediate attention, was first occasioned by the steadily increasing interest manifested in the study of the German by such among us as covet a higher intellectual culture, as well as those who are ambitious to be abreast with the times in all that concerns the interests of Learning, Science, Art, and Philosophy.

In comparing the different German-English Dictionaries, it was found that all of them were deficient in their vocabulary of foreign words, which now act so important a part not only in scientific works, but also in the best classics in the reviews, journals, newspapers, and even in conversational language of ordinary life. Hence we have endeavoured to supply the desired words required in Chemistry, Mineralogy, Practical Art, Commerce, Navigation, Rhetoric, Grammar, Mythology, both ancient and modern. The accentuation of the German words, first introduced by Hernsius, and not a little improved by Hilpert and his coadjutors, has also been adopted, and will be regarded as a most desirable and invaluable aid to the student. Another, and it is hoped not the least, valuable addition to the volume, are the synonyms, which we have generally given in an abridged and not unfrequently in a new form, from Hilpert, who was the first that offered to the English student a selection from the rich store of Eberhard, Maas, and Gruber. Nearly all the Dictionaries published in Germany having been prepared with special reference to the German student of the English, and being on that account incomplete in the German-English part, it was evidently our vocation to reverse the order for this side of the Atlantic, and to give the utmost possible completeness and perfection to the German part. This was the proper sphere of our labor.

Morning Courier and New-York Enquirer.

The Appletons have just published a *Dictionary of the German Language*, containing English names of German words, and German translations of English words, by Mr. Adler, Professor of German in the University of the City of New-York.

In view of the present and rapidly increasing disposition of American students to make themselves familiar with the Language and Literature of Germany, the publication of this work seems especially timely and important. It is in form a large, substantial octavo volume of 1400 pages, beautifully printed in clear and distinct type, and adapted in every way to the constant services for which a lexicon is made. The purpose aimed at by the editor cannot be more distinctly stated than in his own words, quoted from the preface, in which he states that he sought "to embody all the valuable results of the most recent investigations in German Lexicography, so that his work might thus become not only a reliable guide for the practical acquisition of that language, but one which would not forsake him in the higher walks of his pursuits, to which its literary treasures would naturally invite him." All who are in any degree familiar with German, can bear witness to the necessity that has long been felt for such a work. It is needed by students of the language at every stage of their progress. None of those hitherto in use have been satisfactory—the best of them, that published in Philadelphia, in 1845, lacking very many of the essentials of a reliable and servicable lexicon. From a somewhat close examination of its contents, we are satisfied that Mr. ADLER's Dictionary will be universally regarded as the best extant. Its great superiority lies in its *completeness*, no word in any department of science or literature being omitted. We cannot doubt that it will become at once the only German lexicon in use throughout the country.

Spanish.

OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD
OF
LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK
THE SPANISH LANGUAGE,

With an Appendix, containing a brief, but comprehensive Recapitulation of the Rules as well as of all the Verbs, both Regular and Irregular, so as to render their use easy and familiar to the most ordinary capacity.

TOGETHER WITH
PRACTICAL RULES FOR SPANISH PRONUNCIATION, AND MODELS OF
SOCIAL AND COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENCE.

The whole designed for young learners and persons who are their own instructors.

By M. VELAZQUEZ and T. SIMONNE, Professors of the Spanish and French Languages

One volume, 12mo. of 560 pages. Price \$1 50.

A KEY TO THE SAME IN A SEPARATE VOLUME, 75 cts.

"OLLENDORFF'S SPANISH GRAMMAR.—This is another number of the admirable series of elementary books of instruction in the language of Modern Europe, for which the public is indebted to the Appletons. Ollendorff's method of teaching languages, especially living languages, is now in universal use, and enjoys a very decided pre-eminence over any other now in use, inasmuch as it combines the merits, and avoids the faults of all others, and has, besides, many very marked and admirable peculiarities. No other books are now in general use, and his elementary treatises have won a unanimous favor not often accorded to any work in any department of human knowledge. Their chief peculiarity consists in this, that they lead the learner, by gradual steps, each perfectly simple and easy, from the first elements even to the nicest idioms of the various languages, comprehending, in the process, a complete mastery of Grammatical rules and colloquial phrases. They are in common use, not only in this country, but throughout Europe, and are likely to supersede, every where, all similar books.

"This method of learning SPANISH, which has just been issued, is likely to be even more widely useful, especially in this country, than those which have preceded it, since recent events have rendered a knowledge of Spanish more than usually important to all classes of our people. The editors of the work are widely known as accomplished scholars and distinguished teachers, and the book derives still higher authority from their connection with it. We commend it with great confidence to all who desire to become acquainted with the Castilian tongue."—*New-York Courier and Enquirer*.

New Grammar for Spaniards to learn English.

GRAMMATICA INGLESA

SEGUN

EL SISTEMA DE OLLENDORFF,

Accompañado de un Apéndice que comprende en compendio las reglas contenidas en el cuerpo principal de la obra: un Tratado sobre la pronunciaci6n, divisi6n y formaci6n de las palabras inglesas; una lista de los verbos regulares é irregulares, consus conjugaciones y las distintas preposiciones que rigen: modelos de correspondencia, &c., &c., todo al alcance de la capacidad mas mediana.

POR

RAMON PALENZUELA,

Abogado, Doctor en Derecho Cívil de la Universidad de Carácas (Venezuela) y Profesor de lenguas en Nueva-York.

One vol. 12mo.

Arnold, Thomas Kerchever
" ARNOLD'S

FIRST LATIN BOOK;

REMODELLED AND REWRITTEN,

AND ADAPTED TO THE

OLLENDORFF METHOD OF INSTRUCTION.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS,

SENIOR MASTER IN THE PROVIDENCE HIGH SCHOOL.

NEW-YORK:

D. APPLETON & COMPANY,

200 BROADWAY.

1851.

copy 2

PA2087
A68
1851
copy 2

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1851, by
D. APPLETON & COMPANY,
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Southern District of New-York.

Gift
Mrs. Hennen Jennings
April 26, 1933

Ms. A. 10. 1. 1. 38

P R E F A C E.

ARNOLD'S *First and Second Latin Book* was introduced to the American public some five years since, under the editorial care of Professor Spencer. As the system was, at that time, quite new in this country, and comparatively so in England, the American editor did not think it best "to make any material alteration in the original work." The marked favor with which the volume was at once received, and the almost unprecedented success which has since attended it, are a sufficient proof of its excellence. The test of the class-room and the improved methods of instruction have, however, convinced teachers that, with many rare merits, and with a general plan most happily adapted to the wants of the beginner in Latin, it was still, in some important respects, quite incomplete in its execution and details. The present volume, undertaken at the request of the publishers, is the result of an attempt to remove these defects, and thus to render

the work worthy of yet higher favor and success. The entire book has been rewritten and many important additions have been made.

The Latin of the *First and Second Latin Book* has been retained, so far as consistent with our purpose; but as it has been found necessary to add many new selections, care has been taken to secure pure classic Latin, by resorting exclusively to the pages of Caesar and Cicero.

In the preparation of this book, it has been a leading object with the editor, so to classify and arrange the various topics as to *simplify*, and, as far as possible, to *remove* the disheartening difficulties too often encountered by the learner at the very outset in the study of an ancient language. He has accordingly endeavored so to present each new subject as to enable the beginner fully to master it, before he is called upon to perplex himself with its more difficult combinations. The lessons have been prepared with constant reference to the Ollendorff method of instruction, while, at the same time, special pains have been taken to present a complete and systematic outline, both of the grammatical forms and of the elementary principles of the language. An effort has thus been made to combine the respective advantages of two systems, distinct in themselves, but by no means inconsistent with each other.

In the earlier portions of the book, the exercises for translation consist of two paragraphs of Latin sentences and two of English,

the first of each being designed to illustrate the particular topic which chances to be the subject of the lesson, and the second to furnish miscellaneous examples on the various subjects already learned. Thus each lesson becomes at once an *advance* and a *review*.

For convenience of reference and for the purposes of general review, a summary of Paradigms and an outline of Syntax have been appended to the lessons. The Syntax will be found, it is hoped, to be an improvement, at least in point of classification and arrangement, upon that ordinarily presented in Latin Grammars. In a Second Latin Book, now in preparation—being at once a Reader and an Exercise Book—the editor contemplates a fuller development and illustration of the Latin Syntax, in a series of exercises on the principle of *analysis* and *synthesis*.

The present volume, as already intimated, has been prepared *mainly* from Arnold's *First and Second Latin Book*; the editor has, however, had before him numerous other works of a kindred character, from some of which he has derived valuable aid. Among these may be mentioned, in addition to the various Latin Grammars in use in this country and in England, Allen's *New Latin Delectus*; *Analysis of Latin Verbs*, by the same author; and Pinnock's *First Latin Grammar*; together with numerous other elementary works, among which the editor is happy to specify the *First Latin Book*, by Professors M'Clintock and Crooks.

Professor Spencer's edition of Arnold's *Latin Prose Compo-*

sition, one of the volumes of the excellent Classical Series published by the Messrs. Appleton, has been consulted with much advantage.

For valuable assistance in the preparation of the Syntax, the editor is happy to acknowledge his indebtedness to Greene's Analysis of the English Language.

A. HARKNESS.

Providence, July 18, 1851

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

PRONUNCIATION.

	Page
I. Letters	1
II. Syllables	2
III. Quantity	2
IV. Accentuation	2
V. Sounds of the Letters	3
i. The Continental Method	3
ii. The English Method	4

LESSONS AND EXERCISES.

Lesson.		
I.	Parts of Speech.—Proposition.—Subject.—Predicate	7
II.	Verbs.—First Conjugation	8
III.	First Conjugation—continued	11
IV.	Second Conjugation	12
V.	Third Conjugation	14
VI.	Fourth Conjugation	16
VII.	Four Conjugations.—Plural Number	17
VIII.	Nouns.—Nominative Case	19
IX.	Nominative Case—continued	23
X.	Vocative Case	24
XI.	Apposition.—Modified Subject	26
XII.	Genitive Case.—Modified Subject	27
XIII.	Accusative Case.—Direct Object of Predicate	31
XIV.	Accusative—continued.—Adverbial Modifiers	34
XV.	Dative Case.—Indirect Object of Predicate	35
XVI.	Ablative Case.—Modified Predicate	38
XVII.	First Declension	40
XVIII.	Second Declension.—Nouns in <i>ūs</i> and <i>ūm</i>	43

Lesson.	Page.
XIX. Second Declension.—Nouns in <i>ěr</i> and <i>ŕr</i> . . .	46
XX. Adjectives of the First and Second Declension . . .	47
XXI. First and Second Declension—continued . . .	51
XXII. First and Second Declension, continued.—Price, Value, and Degree of Estimation	53
XXIII. Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class I.	55
XXIV. Third Declension.—Class II.	58
XXV. Third Declension.—Class III.	60
XXVI. Third Declension.—Class IV.	63
XXVII. Third Declension.—Genitives in <i>iŭm</i> .—Gender . . .	66
XXVIII. Third Declension.—Formation of Cases from each other	68
XXIX. Adjectives.—Third Declension	71
XXX. Adjectives, continued.—Nouns.—Fourth Declension	75
XXXI. Nouns.—Fifth Declension	78
XXXII. Five Declensions.—Greek Nouns.—Gender . . .	81
XXXIII. Verbs.— <i>Esse</i> , to be.—Predicate, <i>Essě</i> with a Noun or an Adjective	85
XXXIV. Infinitive as Subject.—Genitive with <i>Essě</i> in the Pre- dicate	87
XXXV. Tenses for Completed Action.—First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations	90
XXXVI. Third Conjugation.—Class I.— <i>Second Root the same as the First</i>	93
XXXVII. Third Conjugation.—Class II.— <i>Second Root formed by adding s to the First</i>	96
XXXVIII. Third Conjugation.—Class II, continued.— <i>Second Root formed by adding s to the First</i>	97
XXXIX. Third Conjugation.—Class II, continued.— <i>Second Root formed by adding s to the First</i>	100
XL. Formation of the Second Root.—First Irregularity— <i>Radical Vowel lengthened (and often changed)</i> . . .	103
XLI. Formation of the Second Root.—Second Irregularity— <i>Reduplication</i>	105
XLII. Formation of the Second Root.—Third Irregularity— <i>Second Root after the analogy of other conjugations</i>	107
XLIII. Subjunctive Mood	110
XLIV. Subjunctive Mood.—Purpose	113
XLV. Persons of Verbs.—Indicative Mood.—First Conjugation	115
XLVI. Indicative Mood.—Four Conjugations.—Personal Pro- nouns	119
XLVII. Subjunctive Mood.—Four Conjugations	123

Lesson.	Page.
XLVIII. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Verbs in <i>iŏ</i> of the Third Conjugation.—Demonstrative Pronouns	127
XLIX. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Inter-sive Pronoun	130
L. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Relative and Interrogative Pronouns	132
LI. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Inter-rogative Particles	134
LII. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Inde-finite and Possessive Pronouns	136
LIII. Verb <i>Essě</i> , to be	138
LIV. Verb <i>Essě</i> , continued.—Comparison of Adjectives	142
LV. Compounds of <i>Essě</i> .—Comparison of Adverbs.—Nume-ral Adjectives	145
LVI. Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Continued Action	148
LVII. Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Completed Action	151
LVIII. Indicative Mood of the Passive Voice	154
LIX. Subjunctive Mood of the Passive Voice	158
LX. Imperative Mood—Active and Passive	160
LXI. Infinitive Mood	163
LXII. Participles.—Ablative Absolute	166
LXIII. Gerunds and Supines	169
LXIV. Participle in <i>dŭs</i>	172
LXV. First Conjugation	174
LXVI. Second Conjugation	175
LXVII. Third Conjugation	176
LXVIII. Fourth Conjugation	177
LXIX. Verbs with the Dative.—Indirect Object	178
LXX. Deponent Verbs	180
LXXI. Irregular Verbs.— <i>Possě, Vellě, Nollě, Mallě</i>	182
LXXII. Irregular Verbs, continued.— <i>Ferrě, Fĕrĕi</i>	185
LXXIII. Irregular Verbs, continued.— <i>Irě, Eděre</i>	189
LXXIV. Periphrastic Conjugations	191
LXXV. Impersonal Verbs	193
LXXVI. Impersonal Periphrastic	195
LXXVII. Impersonal Passive Verbs.—Prepositions	197
LXXVIII. Conjunctions	199
LXXIX. Subjunctive Mood with <i>ŭt, ně, quō</i>	201

Lesson.	Page.
LXXX. Subjunctive with <i>quōmīnūs</i> , <i>quīn</i> , and other Conjunctions	203
LXXXI. Interrogative Sentences	205
LXXXII. Conditional Sentences.—Subjunctive in Relative Clauses and with <i>quīm</i>	207
LXXXIII. Participles	209
LXXXIV. Participles, continued	212
LXXXV. Derivation of Nouns	215
LXXXVI. Derivation of Adjectives	217
LXXXVII. Derivation of Verbs and Adverbs	219
LXXXVIII. Composition of Words	222

PARADIGMS, &c.

1. Nouns.—Endings of Genitive Singular	227
2. Gender	227
3. First Declension	227
4. Second Declension	228
5. Third Declension	229
6. Fourth Declension	232
7. Fifth Declension	233
8. Case-Endings of Substantives	233
9. Table of Genders	234
10. Adjectives.—First and Second Declension	235
11. Third Declension	236
12. Comparison of Adjectives	238
13. Numerals	238
14. Substantive Pronouns	239
15. Adjective Pronouns	239
16. Verbs.— <i>Essē</i>	241
17. Infinitive Endings	243
18. First Conjugation	243
19. Second Conjugation	245
20. Third Conjugation	247
21. Fourth Conjugation	250
22. Formation of Second Root	252
23. Deponent Verbs	252
24. Irregular Verbs	252
25. Periphrastic Conjugations	257
26. Impersonal Verbs	257

SYNTAX.

Page.

Introduction	259
--------------	---	---	---	---	---	---	-----

CHAPTER I.

Essential Elements of Sentences.—Subject and Predicate.

Section I. Subject	.	.	.	.	.	.	260
“ II. Predicate	.	.	.	.	.	.	260

CHAPTER II.

Subordinate Elements.—Modifiers.

Section I. Use of Modifiers	.	.	.	.	.	262
“ II. Modifiers of Nouns	.	.	.	.	.	262
“ III. Modifiers of Adjectives	.	.	.	.	.	263
“ IV. Modifiers of Verbs	.	.	.	.	.	264
“ “ § I. Objects	.	.	.	.	.	265
“ “ § II. Adverbial Modifiers	.	.	.	.	.	268
“ V. Modifiers of Adverbs	.	.	.	.	.	271

CHAPTER III.

<i>Use of Moods, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines</i>	271
--	---	---	---	---	---	-----

DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM	.	.	.	.	.	275
CAUTIONS	.	.	.	.	.	277
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	.	.	.	.	.	279
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	.	.	.	.	.	291

EXPLANATIONS.

The small numerals above the line in the Exercises refer to *Differences of Idiom*, page 275 ; the small letters to *Cautions*, page 277.

The numerals enclosed in parentheses refer to articles in the body of the work.

In the Exercises, words connected by hyphens are to be rendered into Latin by a single word ; as, *natural-to-man*, hūmānūs ; *it-is*, est, &c.

INTRODUCTION.

PRONUNCIATION.

THE two Methods, the Continental and the English, which at present prevail in the pronunciation of Latin, differ from each other chiefly in the sounds of the vowels; we shall accordingly first state the settled principles in which they agree (as accent, quantity, &c.), and then present the vowel sounds of each separately, hoping, however, that, in this country, the Continental Method will soon commend itself to general favor. With the important merit of uniform consistency, it is, at the same time, the only pronunciation intelligible on the Continent of Europe, the very place where the American scholar will most need his Latin as a medium of communication.

I. LETTERS.

The Latin Language has six characters, or letters, representing vowel sounds, and nineteen representing consonant sounds.

REM. 1. The vowel sounds are *a, e, i, o, u,* and *y*; the consonants are the same as in English, with the omission of *w*, which is not used in Latin.

REM. 2. Two vowels sometimes unite in sound, and form a diphthong, as in English; e. g., *æ* in *Cæsar*.

REM. 3. *X* and *z** are called double consonants; *l, m, n,* and *r*, liquids, and the other consonants, with the exception of *h* and *s*, mutes.

* *X* is equivalent to *cs* or *gs*, and *z* to *ds*.

II. SYLLABLES.

In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus the Latin words, *more*, *vice*, *acute*, and *persuade*, are pronounced, not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus, *mo-re*, *vi-ce*, *a-cu-te*, *per-sua-de*.

III. QUANTITY.

Syllables are, in *quantity* or *length*, either *long*, *short*, or *common* (i. e. sometimes long and sometimes short).

1. A syllable is *long* in quantity:

1) When it contains a *diphthong*, as the first syllable of *cædo*.

2) When its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any *two consonants* of which the *second* is not *h*, or a *liquid*; as the second syllables of *erexit* and *magister*.

2. A syllable is *short*, when its vowel is followed by another vowel, or a diphthong, as the second syllable of *indies*.

REM. A vowel is also short when separated from the following vowel by the letter *h*.

The quantity of syllables, when not determined by these rules, will be indicated in the vocabularies (and, in some instances, in the exercises) by the dash - when *long*, by the curve *◡* when *short*, and by the two together *≈* when *common*.

IV. ACCENTUATION.

1. The primary (or principal) accent, or stress of voice, is placed:

1) In words of two syllables, always on the first; as, *hō'mō*, a man.

2) In words of more than two syllables, on the *penult* (the last syllable but one), if that is *long* in quantity; otherwise on the *antepenult* (the last syllable but two); as, *rādī'cīs*, *con'sūlīs*.

2. An additional accent is placed on each second syllable preceding the *primary* accent; as, *dē'monstrātūr*.

V. SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

I. THE CONTINENTAL METHOD.*

1. *The Sounds of the Vowels.*

The Continental sounds of the vowels are as follows:—

a	ä in <i>father</i> ;	e. g.,	ārīs.
e	{ 1. ā in <i>made</i> ;	e. g.,	ēdīt.
	{ 2. ě in <i>met</i> ;	e. g.,	āmět.
i	ē in <i>me</i> ;	e. g.,	īrě.
o	1. ō in <i>no</i> ;	e. g.,	ōră.
	2. ǒ in <i>nor</i> ;	e. g.,	ămǒr.
u	ô in <i>do</i> ;	e. g.,	ūnă.
y	ē in <i>me</i> ;	e. g.,	nŷmphă.

REM. Y is used only in words derived from the Greek.

These sounds are uniformly the same in all situations, except as modified by *quantity* and *accent*, (III. and IV.)

2. *The Sounds of the Diphthongs.*

æ and œ . . . ā in *made*; e. g., ætās, coelŷm.
 au . . . ou in *out*; e. g., aurŷm.

REM. The vowels in *ei* and *eu* are generally pronounced separately.

* For the Continental Pronunciation the editor is indebted to the kindness of Mr. George W. Greene, Instructor in Modern Languages in Brown University.

3. *The Sounds of the Consonants.*

The pronunciation of the consonants is nearly the same as in English, though it varies somewhat in different countries.

II. THE ENGLISH METHOD.

1. *The Sounds of the Vowels.**

In the English method, the vowels generally have the long or short English sounds: the length of the sound, however, is not dependent upon the quantity of the vowel, but must be determined by its situation or accent.

(a) In all *monosyllables*, vowels have

- 1) The *long* sound if at the end of the word; as, *si*, *re*.
- 2) The *short* sound if followed by a consonant; as, *sit*, *rem*; except *post*, *monosyllables* in *es*, and *plural* cases in *os*; as, *hos* (a plural case).

(b) In an *accented penult*, vowels have

- 1) The *long* sound before a vowel, diphthong, single consonant, or a mute followed by *l*, *r*, or *h*; as, *deus*, *pater*, *patres*; except *tibi* and *sibi*.

- 2) The *short* sound before a double consonant, or any two single consonants except a mute followed by *l*, *r*, or *h*; as, *bellum*, *rexit*.

(c) In any *accented syllable* except the penult, vowels have

- 1) The *long* sound before a vowel or diphthong; as *e* in *éadem*.

* The system of vowel sounds here presented is the same as that given in Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, and, like that, is based upon Walker's Key to the Pronunciation of Greek and Latin Proper Names. The *rules*, however, unlike those of Andrews and Stoddard, are so prepared as to show the sounds of the vowels, in all their various situations, independently of the division of words into syllables. This, it is hoped, will facilitate their application.

2) The *short* sound before a consonant; as *o* in *dēminus*: except,

a) *U* before a single consonant, or a mute followed by *r* or *h* (and perhaps *l*); as, *Pūnicus*, *salūbritas*.

b) *A*, *e*, and *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute before *l*, *r*, or *h*), followed by *e* or *i* before another vowel; as, *dóceo*, *ácria*.

(*d*) In all *unaccented syllables*, vowels have the *short* sound; as, *cantámus*, *vígilat*: except,

1) Final *a* in words of more than one syllable. This has the sound of *ah*, as in the word *America*; e. g., *musa* (*musah*).

2) Final syllables in *i* (except *tibi* and *sibi*), *es*, and *os*, in *plural cases*; as, *hómini*, *dies*, *illos* (a plural case).

3) The first syllable of words accented on the second, when the first either begins with an *i* followed by a single consonant, or contains *i* before a vowel; as, *diébus*, *irátus*.

REM. *E*, *o*, and *u*, unaccented before a vowel, diphthong, a single consonant, or a mute followed by *l*, *r*, or *h*, are not quite as short in sound as the other vowels in the same situations.

2. The Sounds of the Diphthongs.

Æ and *œ*, like *e* in the same situation; e. g., *Cæsar*, *Dædalus*.

Au, as in the English, *author*; e. g., *aurum*.

Eu, “ “ *neuter*; e. g., *neuter* (both Eng. and Latin).

Ei, as in the English, *height*; e. g., *dein*.

Oi, “ “ *coin*; e. g., *proin*.

REM. 1. The vowels in *ei* and *oi* are generally pronounced separately.

REM. 2. A few other combinations seem sometimes to be used as

diphthongs. *U* is always the first element of these combinations, and has then the sound of *w*; as, *suade* = swade: except, *Ui* in *huic*, and *cui*, which has the sound of long *i*.

3. *The Sounds of the Consonants.*

The consonants are pronounced nearly as in English; *c* and *g*, however, are soft before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ* and *œ*, and hard in other situations: *ch* is always hard, like *k*; as, *charta* (*kartah*).

FIRST LATIN BOOK.

LESSON I.

Parts of Speech.—Proposition.—Subject.—Predicate.

1. IN Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*, viz.: *Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

2. These parts of speech, either singly or combined, form *propositions* or *sentences*; as, *āmās*, thou lovest; *puēr lūdīt*, the boy plays.

3. Every proposition, however simple, consists of two parts: (1.) the *subject*, or the person or thing of which it speaks; and, (2.) the *predicate*, or that which is said of the subject: thus, in the proposition, *puēr lūdīt*, *puēr* (the boy) is the subject of which the proposition speaks, and *lūdīt* (plays) is the predicate which is affirmed of the subject.

4. In Latin the subject is often omitted, because the form of the predicate shows what subject is meant; thus the proposition *āmās*, thou lovest, consists in Latin of a single word, because the ending *ās*, of *āmās*, shows (as we shall see by and by) that the subject cannot be *I*, *he*, or *they*, but must be *thou*.

5. When a proposition thus consists of a single word, that word is always a *verb*; e. g., *āmāt*, he loves.

6. The *analysis* of a proposition consists in separating it into its elements.

EXAMPLE 1.—Proposition, *Puēr* (the boy) *lūdīt* (plays).

Puēr (the boy) is the *subject*, because it is that of which the proposition speaks (3). *Lūdīt* (plays) is the *predicate*, because it is that which is said of the subject (3).

EXAMPLE 2.—Proposition, *Amās* (thou lovest).

Amās is the *predicate*, because it is that which is said of the subject. *Thou*, the subject in English, is omitted in Latin, because the ending *ās*, of the predicate *āmās*, fully implies it.

7. Exercise in Analysis.*

Puellă (the girl) *cantăt* (sings). *Puēr* (the boy) *lūdēt* (will play). *Pătēr* (the father) *vīdēbīt* (will see). *Mătēr* (the mother) *rīdēbăt* (was laughing). *Currēbăt* (he was running). *Cantābīt* (he will sing). *Lūdēbăt* (he was playing). *Arābăt* (he was ploughing).

LESSON II.

Verbs.—First Conjugation.

8. A VERB expresses *existence, condition, or action* (generally the *existence, condition, or action* of some *person*

* These propositions are to be analyzed according to the examples just given. The object is twofold: first, to fix definitely the distinction between *subject* and *predicate*; and, secondly, to show the learner that when the subject is a personal pronoun (English, *I, thou, he, &c.*), it is generally omitted in Latin. The use of the pronoun to express *emphasis* or *contrast* will be considered in another place.

or *thing*, called its *subject*): as, *est*, he is; *dormi*t, he sleeps (is sleeping, or is asleep); *ămă*t, he loves.

9. When a verb expresses simply its *meaning*, without reference to any person or thing, as *ămă*rě, to love, it is said to be in the *Infinitive Mood*.

10. When a verb expresses its meaning in the form of an *assertion* or *question*, referring to its subject, as *ămă*t, he loves, it is said to be in the *Indicative Mood*.*

11. A verb may represent its subject,

- 1) As acting in *present* time; as, *ămă*t, he loves. It is then said to be in the *Present Tense*.
- 2) As acting in *past* time; as, *ămăbă*t, he was loving. It is then said to be in the *Imperfect Tense*.
- 3) As acting in *future* time (i. e., about to act); as, *ămăbî*t, he will love. It is then said to be in the *Future Tense*.*

12. A verb may represent its subject,

- 1) As *speaking of himself*; as, *ămă*ŏ, I love, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *First Person*.
- 2) As *spoken to*; as, *ămă*s, thou lovest, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Second Person*.
- 3) As *spoken of*; as, *ămă*t, he loves, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Third Person*.

13. A verb may represent its subject,

- 1) As consisting of *only one* person or thing; as, *ămă*t, he, she, or it loves, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Singular Number*.

* The other *moods* and *tenses* will be noticed in another place.

- 2) As consisting of *more than one* person or thing; as, *ămant*, they love; and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Plural Number*.

14. Every verb consists of two parts, viz.:

- 1) *The Root*, or that part of the verb which remains unchanged throughout the various moods, tenses, numbers, and persons; as, *ăm* in *ămără*, *ămă*, *ămăt*, and *ămăbî*.
- 2) *The Endings* which are added to this root, to form the moods, tenses, numbers, and persons; thus, in the forms just noticed—viz., *ămără*, *ămă*, *ămăt*, and *ămăbî*—the endings are, *ără*, *ă*, *ăt*, and *ăbî*.

15. Some verbs have the *infinitive* in *ără*; as, *ămără*, to love. These are said to be of

The First Conjugation.

16. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ără*; as, *ămără*; root, *ăm*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following endings:

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
ăt,	ăbăt,	ăbî.

PARADIGM.

Ămără, to love: root, *ăm*.

Present. Am-ăt, he, she, or it loves (or, is loving).

Imperfect. Am-ăbăt, “ “ “ was loving.

Future. Am-ăbî, “ “ “ will love (will be loving).

17. VOCABULARY.

<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>	<i>Key-words.*</i>
Amārē,	to love	(amorous).
Arārē,	to plough	(arable).
Cantārē,	to sing	(canto).
Lābōrārē,	to labor	(labor).
Vigīlārē,	to watch	(vigilant).

18. *Exercise.*

1. Labōrat.† 2. Cantat. 3. Arat. 4. Arābat.
 5. Amābat. 6. Vigilābat. 7. Vigilābit. 8. Cantābit.
 9. Laborābit. 10. Vigīlat. 11. Laborābat. 12. Amā-
 bit. 13. Amat. 14. Cantābat. 15. Arābit.

LESSON III.

First Conjugation—continued.

19. VOCABULARY.

Ambūlarē,	to walk	(ambulatory).
Jūrārē,	to swear.	
Pūgnārē,	to fight	(pugnacious).
Saltārē,	to dance.	
Spērārē,	to hope.	
Vōcārē,	to call	(vocation).

* These Key-words, derived from the Latin, are introduced partly as a key or help to the learner, in fixing the meaning of the Latin, and partly as specimens of English derivatives of Latin origin.

† The subject of each of these verbs may be, in English, either *he*, *she*, or *it*. The ending, *at*, shows the number and person of the subject, but not its gender (see Paradigm). When the subject is thus omitted in Latin, we can usually determine from the connection which subject to use, just as in English we determine the meaning of the pronoun *they*, which may represent either *things* or *persons*, and either *males* or *females*. In these exercises the pupil may use *he* as the subject.

20. In English, the *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons* of verbs are indicated by certain *words* or *signs*; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
<i>He loves,</i>	<i>He was loving,</i>	<i>He will love.</i>

In Latin, however, no such *signs* are used; but their place is supplied by the *endings* of the verb. Hence, in translating English into Latin, omit these signs and express the *tense*, *number*, and *person* of the verb by the *proper endings*; e. g.:

	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
Eng.	<i>He loves,</i>	<i>He was loving,</i>	<i>He will love.</i>
Lat.	<i>Amat,</i>	<i>Amābat,</i>	<i>Amābit.</i>

21. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Saltat. 2. Cantat. 3. Ambulat. 4. Ambulābat. 5. Jurābat. 6. Vocābat. 7. Sperābat. 8. Sperābit. 9. Ambulābit. 10. Saltābit. 11. Jurat. 12. Cantābat. 13. Vocat. 14. Laborābat. 15. Jurābit.

(b) 1. He calls. 2. He is ploughing. 3. He hopes. 4. He swears. 5. He is laboring. 6. He was laboring. 7. He was walking. 8. He was dancing. 9. He was singing. 10. He was ploughing. 11. He will plough. 12. He will call. 13. He will swear. 14. He will hope. 15. He will labor. 16. He is walking. 17. He was hoping. 18. He will walk. 19. He dances. 20. He was fighting. 21. He will sing.

LESSON IV.

Verbs.—Second Conjugation.

22. SOME Verbs have the *infinitive* in *ērē*; as, *mōnērē*, to advise. These are said to be of

The Second Conjugation.

23. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ērě*; as, *mōnērě*; root, *mōn*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings*:

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
ēt,	ēbāt,	ēbīt.

PARADIGM.

Mōnērě, to advise: root, *mōn*.

Present.	Mōn-ēt,	he, she, or it advises (is advising).
Imperfect.	Mōn-ēbāt,	“ “ “ was advising.
Future.	Mōn-ēbīt,	“ “ “ will advise.

24. VOCABULARY.

Dōcērě,	to teach	(<i>docile</i>).
Dōlērě,	to grieve	(<i>doleful</i>).
Flērě,	to weep.	
Mānērě,	to remain.	
Mōvērě,	to move	(<i>move</i>).
Nērě,	to spin.	
Respondērě,	to answer	(<i>respond</i>).
Rīdērě,	to laugh	(<i>ridicule</i>).
Tīmērě,	to fear, to be afraid	(<i>timid</i>).

25. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Ridet. 2. Docet. 3. Respondet. 4. Dolet.
 5. Dolēbat. 6. Nebat. 7. Flebat. 8. Manēbat. 9. Movēbat.
 10. Movēbit. 11. Dolēbit. 12. Docēbit. 13. Respondēbit.
 14. Ridēbit. 15. Movet. 16. Docēbat. 17. Manēbit.
 18. Flet. 19. Ridēbat. 20. Nebit.

21. Pugnat. 22. Manet. 23. Pugnābat. 24. Manēbat. 25. Pugnābit. 26. Manēbit. 27. Cantat. 28. Timet. 29. Saltābat. 30. Respondēbat. 31. Ambulābit. 32. Timēbit. 33. Labōrat. 34. Movet. 35. Saltābat. 36. Docēbat. 37. Vocābit. 38. Dolēbit.

(b) 1. He remains. 2. He moves. 3. He weeps. 4. He spins. 5. He was spinning. 6. He was laughing. 7. He was teaching. 8. He was grieving. 9. He was answering. 10. He will answer. 11. He will weep. 12. He will remain. 13. He will spin. 14. He is laughing. 15. He was weeping. 16. He will teach. 17. He teaches. 18. He was moving. 19. He will laugh. 20. He dances. 21. He laughs. 22. He was calling. 23. He was weeping. 24. He walks. 25. He answers. 26. He was ploughing. 27. He was laughing. 28. He will sing. 29. He will move.

LESSON V.

Verbs.—Third Conjugation.

26. SOME verbs have the *infinitive* in *ĕrĕ*; as, *rĕgĕrĕ*, to rule. These are said to be of

The Third Conjugation.

27. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ĕrĕ*; as, *rĕgĕrĕ*; root, *rĕg*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings*:

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
īt,	ēbāt,	ēt.

PARADIGM.

Rĕgĕrĕ, to rule : root, *rĕg*.

Present.	Rĕg-īt,	he, she, or it rules (is ruling).
Imperfect.	Rĕg-ēbāt,	" " " was ruling.
Future.	Rĕg-ēt,	" " " will rule.

28. VOCABULARY.

Bībĕrĕ,	to drink	(<i>bibber</i> ; as, <i>wine-bibber</i>).
Cādĕrĕ,	to fall	(<i>cadence</i>).
Currĕrĕ,	to run	(<i>current</i>).
Discĕrĕ,	to learn	(<i>disciple</i>).
Lĕgĕrĕ,	to read	(<i>legible</i>).
Lūdĕrĕ,	to play	(<i>ludicrous</i>).
Scribĕrĕ,	to write	(<i>scribe, scribble</i>).

29. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Ludit. 2. Currit. 3. Discit. 4. Discēbat. 5. Scribēbat. 6. Bibēbat. 7. Bibet. 8. Cadet. 9. Leget. 10. Legit. 11. Currēbat. 12. Scribet. 13. Scribit. 14. Ludēbat. 15. Discet.

16. Labōrat. 17. Movet. 18. Cadit. 19. Vocābat. 20. Ridēbat. 21. Legēbat. 22. Sperat. 23. Dolet. 24. Bibit. 25. Jurābat. 26. Flebat. 27. Cadēbat. 28. Arābit. 29. Respondēbit. 30. Ludet.

(b) 1. He writes. 2. He drinks. 3. He falls. 4. He was falling. 5. He was reading. 6. He was playing. 7. He will play. 8. He will run. 9. He will learn. 10. He learns. 11. He was writing. 12. He will read. 13. He is playing. 14. He was running. 15. He will fall.

16. He is fighting. 17. He fears. 18. He reads. 19. He was singing. 20. He was spinning. 21. He was learning. 22. He will labor. 23. He will remain. 24. He will write.

LESSON VI.

Verbs.—Fourth Conjugation.

30. SOME verbs have the infinitive in *īrē*; as, *audīrē*, to hear. These are said to be of

The Fourth Conjugation.

31. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *īrē*; as, *audīrē*; root, *aud*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings*:

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
īt,	iēbāt,	iēt.

PARADIGM.

Audīrē, to hear: root, *aud*.

Present.	Aud-īt,	he, she, or it hears (is hearing).
Imperfect.	Aud-iēbāt,	“ “ “ was hearing.
Future.	Aud-iēt,	“ “ “ will hear.

32. VOCABULARY.

Audīrē,	to hear	(<i>audible</i>).
Custōdirē,	to guard	(<i>custody</i>).
Dormīrē,	to sleep	(<i>dormant</i>).
Erūdīrē,	to instruct	(<i>erudition</i>).
Sciīrē,	to know	(<i>science</i>).
Sītīrē,	to thirst.	
Vēnīrē,	to come.	

33. *Exercises.*

- (a) 1. Custōdit. 2. Erūdit. 3. Sitit. 4. Sitiēbat.
 5. Veniēbat. 6. Sciēbat. 7. Sciet. 8. Audiet. 9.
 Dormiet. 10. Dormit. 11. Erudiēbat. 12. Custodiet.
 13. Venit. 14. Audiēbat. 15. Erudiet.

16. Ambūlat. 17. Docet. 18. Currit. 19. Audit.
20. Cantābat. 21. Ridēbat. 22. Ludēbat. 23. Dormiē-
bat. 24. Saltābit. 25. Nebit. 26. Discet. 27. Veniet.

(b) 1. He thirsts. 2. He knows. 3. He guards. 4.
He was guarding. 5. He was instructing. 6. He was
coming. 7. He will come. 8. He will hear. 9. He
will thirst. 10. He will know. 11. He hears. 12.
He was thirsting. 13. He will instruct. 14. He sleeps.
15. He was hearing. 16. He will guard.

17. He walks. 18. He spins. 19. He runs. 20. He
comes. 21. He was dancing. 22. He was teaching.
23. He was writing. 24. He was sleeping. 25. He will
sing. 26. He will laugh. 27. He will play. 28. He
will instruct. 29. He labors. 30. He was weeping.
31. He will learn. 32. He will sleep.

LESSON VII.

Verbs.—Four Conjugations.—Plural Number.

34. THE *Four Conjugations* already noticed contain all the *regular* verbs of the Latin language: hence,

- 1) In any *regular* verb, the *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending of the conjugation to which it belongs. These endings in the four conjugations are as follows:

<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
āřě,	ērě,	ěrě,	īřě.

a) These endings, it must be observed, differ from each other only in the vowel before *řě*, which is called the *characteristic* vowel of the conjugation. The *characteristic* vowels in the four conjugations are as follows:

<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
ā,	ē,	ě,	ī.

REM.—These vowels occur so frequently in their respective conjugations, that they are called *favorite* vowels of the conjugations. The third conjugation has also *ī* as a *favorite* vowel, as in the present ending, *īt* ; e. g., *rēgīt*, he rules.

- 2) In any *regular* verb, the *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* are formed by adding to the root the endings of the conjugation to which the verb belongs. These endings in the four conjugations are as follows :

	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>
Conj. I.	āt,	ābāt,	ābīt.
II.	ēt,	ēbāt,	ēbīt.
III.	īt,	ēbāt,	ēt.
IV.	īt,	iēbāt,	iēt.

35. In any *regular* verb, the *third persons plural*, in the tenses already noticed, are formed by simply inserting *n* before *t* in the *endings* of the *third singular*.

Exc.—If *ī* immediately precedes *t*, it must be changed, in the fourth conjugation, into *iu* ; as, *audīt*, he hears ; *audiunt*, they hear : and in the other conjugations into *u* ; as, *āmābīt*, he will love ; *āmābunt*, they will love.

PARADIGM.

		<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
Conj. I.	{ Sing.	Am-āt,	ām-ābāt,	ām-ābīt.
	{ Plur.	Am-ant,	ām-ābant,	ām-ābunt.
II.	{ Sing.	Mōn-ēt,	mōn-ēbāt,	mōn-ēbīt.
	{ Plur.	Mōn-ent,	mōn-ēbant,	mōn-ēbunt.
III.	{ Sing.	Rēg-īt,	rēg-ēbāt,	rēg-ēt.
	{ Plur.	Rēg-unt,	rēg-ēbant,	rēg-ent.
IV.	{ Sing.	Aud-īt,	aud-iēbāt,	aud-iēt.
	{ Plur.	Aud-iunt,	aud-iēbant,	aud-ient.

36. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Saltat. 2. Saltant. 3. Ambulābat. 4. Ambulābant. 5. Arābit. 6. Arābunt. 7. Docet. 8. Docent. 9. Timēbat. 10. Timēbant. 11. Ridēbit. 12. Ridēbunt. 13. Ludit. 14. Ludunt. 15. Scribēbat. 16. Scribēbant. 17. Curret. 18. Current. 19. Dormit. 20. Dormiunt. 21. Veniēbat. 22. Veniēbant. 23. Custodiet. 24. Custodient. 25. Vocant. 26. Dolent. 27. Discunt. 28. Sciunt. 29. Saltābunt. 30. Movēbant. 31. Legēbant. 32. Erudiēbant. 33. Jurābunt. 34. Manēbunt. 35. Cadent. 36. Sitient.

(b) 1. He sings. 2. They sing. 3. He was swearing. 4. They were swearing. 5. He will labor. 6. They will labor. 7. He laughs. 8. They laugh. 9. He was spinning. 10. They were spinning. 11. He will remain. 12. They will remain. 13. He runs. 14. They run. 15. He was playing. 16. They were playing. 17. He will drink. 18. They will drink. 19. He knows. 20. They know. 21. He was guarding. 22. They were guarding. 23. He will hear. 24. They will hear. 25. They walk. 26. They answer. 27. They write. 28. They sleep. 29. They were ploughing. 30. They were teaching. 31. They were learning. 32. They were instructing. 33. They will sing. 34. They will weep. 35. They will read. 36. They will come.

LESSON VIII.

Nouns.—Nominative Case.

37. IN Latin, as in English, all names, whether of persons, places, or things, are called *Nouns*; as, *Cæsār*; *puēr*, a boy, &c.

REM. 1.—Names of *individual* persons or objects are called *proper nouns*; as, *Cæsär*; *Römă*, Rome.

REM. 2.—Names applicable to persons or objects, not as *individuals*, but as *members of a class*, are called *common nouns*; as, *equūs*, a horse (a name applicable to all animals of this class).

38. All nouns have *gender, number, person, and case*.

39. The *Gender* of a noun is either *masculine, feminine, common, or neuter*.

40. In Latin, as in English, all nouns denoting objects which have sex, except such names of animals as are applicable to both sexes, are,

- 1) *Masculine*, when they denote *male* beings; as, *hōmīnēs*, men; *puēr*, a boy; *leōnēs*, lions.
- 2) *Feminine*, when they denote *female* beings; as, *mūliēr*, a woman; *puellă*, a girl; *leānă*, a lioness.
- 3) *Common*, when they apply alike to both sexes; as, *părens*, a parent (either *male* or *female*); *testīs*, a witness (either *male* or *female*).

41. When gender is employed to denote sex, as in the cases just noticed, it is called *natural gender*.

42. In nouns denoting objects without sex (*neuter in English*), and in most names applicable to animals of both sexes, the gender in Latin is entirely independent of sex, and is accordingly called *grammatical gender*.

Some of these nouns are grammatically masculine; some, grammatically feminine; and some, grammatically neuter.

43. The grammatical gender of nouns is determined *partly* by their *signification*, but *principally* by their *endings*.

44. The general rules for ascertaining the grammatical gender of nouns, independently of their endings, are:

- 1) Most names of *rivers, winds, and months* are masculine; as, *Rhēnūs*, the Rhine; *austēr*, the south wind; *Aprīlis*, April.
- 2) Most names of *countries, towns, islands, and trees* are feminine; as *Ægyptūs*, Egypt; *Rōmā*, Rome; *Dēlōs*, name of an island; *laurūs*, the laurel-tree.
- 3) *Indeclinable nouns*,* and *clauses used as nouns*, are neuter; as, *fās*, right; *nihīl*, nothing.

Gender, as determined by the endings of nouns, will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

45. The *Numbers* and *Persons* are the same in Latin as in English. The *first* person denotes the *speaker*; the *second*, the *person spoken to*; and the *third*, the *person spoken of*. The singular number denotes one; and the plural, more than one.

46. The *Cases* of Latin nouns are six in number, viz.: *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative*.

47. The case of a noun is indicated by its ending; and the formation of its several cases is called *Declension*.

48. The *Nominative Case* corresponds to the nominative in English, both in name and use; e. g.,

Puēr lūdīt, the boy plays.

49. RULE OF SYNTAX.†—The subject of a finite (i. e. *not infinitive*) verb is put in the nominative.

REM. 1.—Thus, in the example, *puēr* is in the nominative by this rule.


REM. 2.—The subject stands before the verb, as in English.

* Such as have but one form for all cases and both numbers.

† Rules for the government and agreement of words are called *Rules of Syntax*.

50. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A finite verb must agree with its subject in *number* and *person*.

REM.—Thus, in the above example, *lūdīt* is in the third person singular, to agree with its subject *puēr*.

 Determine which of the nouns in the following Vocabularies have *natural* gender, and which *grammatical*, and apply rules.

51. VOCABULARY.*

Caesār, <i>m.</i>	Caesar,	
	<i>a celebrated Roman general.</i>	
Filiūs, <i>m.</i>	son	(<i>filial</i>).
Pătēr, <i>m.</i>	father	(<i>paternal</i>).
Puellā, <i>f.</i>	girl.	
Puēr, <i>m.</i>	boy	(<i>puerile</i>).
Vincērē,	to conquer.	(<i>vincible</i>).

52. Exercises.

(a) 1. Pater† docet. 2. Puer ludit. 3. Filius discēbat. 4. Caesar vincēbat. 5. Puer veniet. 6. Puella cantābat. 7. Pater scribēbat.

(b) 1. The girl will learn. 2. The father will conquer. 3. The boy dances. 4. The son was learning. 5. The father was ploughing. 6. The boy was playing. 7. The girl will sing. 8. Caesar was coming.

* Gender is indicated in the Vocabularies by *m.* for *masculine*, *f.* for *feminine*, *c.* for *common*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

† As the Latin has no article, a noun may be translated, (1) without the article; as, *pătēr*, father: (2) with the indefinite article; as, *pătēr*, a father: (3) with the definite article; as, *pătēr*, the father.

LESSON IX.

Nouns.—Nominative Case—Continued.

53. VOCABULARY.*

Aquă, <i>f.</i>	water	(<i>aqueous</i>).
Aquilă, <i>f.</i>	eagle	(<i>aquiline</i>).
Avīs, <i>f.</i>	bird.	
Cănis, <i>c.</i>	dog	(<i>canine</i>).
Equus, <i>m.</i>	horse	(<i>equestrian</i>).
Filiă, <i>f.</i>	daughter	(<i>filial</i>).
Fluērē,	to flow	(<i>fluent</i>).
Hostis, <i>c.</i>	enemy	(<i>hostile</i>).
Impērārē,	to command	(<i>imperative</i>).
Măgistēr,	master, teacher	(<i>magisterial</i>).
Mătēr,	mother	(<i>maternal</i>).
Mors, <i>f.</i>	death	(<i>mortal</i>).
Nubēs, <i>f.</i>	cloud.	
Rex,	king	(<i>regal</i>).
Servūs, <i>m.</i>	slave	(<i>servant</i>).
Vōlārē,	to fly	(<i>volatile</i>).

54. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mors veniet. 2. Aquila volat. 3. Hostis veniēbat. 4. Nubes movet. 5. Aqua fluit. 6. Canis ludēbat. 7. Equus curret. 8. Magister erudiēbat. 9. Rex imperābat.

10. Avis volat. 11. Volant. 12. Servus pugnābit. 13. Pugnābant. 14. Puer timēbat. 15. Timēbant. 16. Puella discēbat. 17. Discēbant. 18. Filia dormiēbat. 19. Dormiēbant.

(b) 1. The bird will fly. 2. The eagle was flying. 3. The king will come. 4. The mother will teach. 5. The daughter will learn. 6. The dog will run. 7. The

* In this and the following Vocabularies, whenever the gender of a noun is not marked, the pupil is expected to determine it by the rules already given.

slave will swear. 8. Caesar was coming. 9. The slave is ploughing.

10. They were ploughing. 11. The king will conquer. 12. They are conquering. 13. The dog will come. 14. They were coming. 15. The girl is weeping. 16. They will weep. 17. The boy is singing. 18. They will laugh.

LESSON X.

Nouns.—Vocative Case.

55. THE same form* of the noun which is called the *nominative*, when *spoken of*, is called the *vocative*, when *spoken to*. This corresponds to the *nominative independent* in English; e. g.

<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>
Pățēr,	puēr cǎdēt.
Father (or, <i>O father</i>), the boy will fall.	

REM.—In very short sentences, like the above, the vocative may be placed either at the beginning or close; in other cases, however, it is generally preceded by one or more words in the sentence.

56. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative.

REM.—The interjection *O* is sometimes used before the name addressed, both in Latin and English.

57. VOCABULARY.

Agrīcōlă,	husbandman	(<i>agriculture</i>).
Balbūs,	Balbus, <i>a man's name</i> .	
Caiūs,	Caius, <i>a man's name</i> .	
Discipūlus,	pupil	(<i>disciple</i>).
Mordēre,	to bite.	

* A single exception will be noticed in another place.

O (<i>interj.</i>),	O, <i>used in direct address.</i>	
Peccărē,	to sin	(<i>peccant</i>).
Rēgīnă,	queen.	
Sörör,	sister.	

58. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puer jurat. 2. *O mater*, puer jurat. 3. Puer ludēbat. 4. Puer ludēbat, *magister*. 5. Rex saltābat. 6. *O regīna*, rex saltābat. 7. Mater dolēbit. 8. *Soror*, mater dolēbit. 9. Canis mordēbit. 10. *O puer*, canis mordēbit.

11. Mors veniet. 12. Balbus jurābat. 13. Jurābunt. 14. Agricōla arābit. 15. Arant. 16. Servus peccat. 17. Peccābant. 18. Magister erudiet. 19. Hostis vincet. 20. Vincēbant. 21. Scient. 22. Discēbant. 23. Puella legēbat. 24. Rex imperābat. 25. Nubes movet. 26. Pugnābant. 27. Vincunt.

(b) 1. The king will conquer. 2. *O queen*, the king will conquer. 3. The slave was weeping. 4. *Father*, the slave was weeping. 5. The boy is swearing (*swears*). 6. *Master*, the boy is swearing (*swears*). 7. The dog will bite. 8. *Brother*, the dog will bite. 9. They will dance. 10. *Mother*, they will dance. 11. The master will hear. 12. *Sister*, the master will hear. 13. The horse will run. 14. *Daughter*, the horse will run. 15. Death will come. 16. *Déath* will come, *O king*.

17. Caius is ploughing. 18. They will plough. 19. Balbus was fighting. 20. They are fighting. 21. The girl was writing. 22. They will learn. 23. The pupil will learn. 24. The master is teaching. 25. The queen is weeping. 26. They will weep. 27. They were reading. 28. The eagle was flying. 29. The king will command. 30. The mother will teach. 31. The king is conquering. 32. The father will come.

LESSON XI.

Nouns.—Apposition.—Modified Subject.

59. THE subject of a proposition may have a noun denoting the same person or thing connected with it to explain or limit its meaning. The subject is then said to be *modified* by the limiting noun; e. g.

Subject not modified.

Subject modified.

1. Lătīnūs rēgnābăt. 2. Lătīnūs rex rēgnābăt.

Latinus was reigning. Latinus *the king* was reigning.

REM. 1.—*Rex*, in the above example, limits Lătīnūs; i. e. it shows that the predicate *rēgnābăt* is not affirmed of every one who may have borne the name Latinus, but only of Latinus *the king*. *Rex* is in the same case as the subject, i. e. *nominative*, and is said to be in *apposition* with it.

REM. 2.—The noun in apposition is generally placed after the noun which it limits, as in the above example; if, however, it is *emphatic*, it is placed before that noun.

60. VOCABULARY.

Aurūm,	gold.	
Crescĕrĕ,	{ to grow,	} (crescent).
	{ to wax (as moon) }	
Faustŭlŭs,	Faustulus,	
	an Italian shepherd.	
Lătīnŭs,	Latinus,	
	a king of Latium.	
Lāviniă,	Lavinia,	
	daughter of Latinus.	
Lŭnă,	moon	(lunar).
Mĕcărĕ,	to glitter, to shine.	
Milĕs,	soldier	(military).
Nŭmă,	Numa,	
	second king of Rome.	
Pastŏr,	shepherd	(pastor, pastoral).

Rēgnārē,	to reign	(<i>regnant, reign</i>).
Tulliā,	Tullia,	
	<i>a queen of Rome.</i>	
Victōriā,	Victoria,	
	<i>queen of England.</i>	

61. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Balbus dormiēbat. 2. Balbus *servus* dormit. 3. Latīnus regnābat. 4. Latīnus *rex* vincēbat. 5. Tullia cantābat. 6. Tullia *regīna* saltābit. 7. Caius *pastor* cantābit.

8. Luna crescit. 9. Aurum micat. 10. Lavinia *regīna* regnābat. 11. Currēbant. 12. Current. 13. Pastor ridēbit. 14. Ridēbant. 15. Canis mordēbit. 16. Mordēbunt. 17. Puella nebit. 18. Nebunt.

(b) 1. Numa was reigning. 2. *King* Numa was reigning. 3. Faustus *a shepherd* was singing. 4. *Queen* Victoria was reigning.

5. The boy was ploughing. 6. They were playing. 7. They will write. 8. The queen was weeping. 9. They are weeping. 10. The soldier will fight. 11. The girl will learn. 12. The daughter is spinning. 13. They will spin. 14. The boy will fight. 15. They will fight.

LESSON XII.

Nouns.—Genitive Case.—Modified Subject.

62. NOUNS in Latin are declined in five different ways, and are accordingly divided into five classes, called *Declensions*, distinguished from each other by the following

GENITIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	ī,	īs,	ūs,	ēī.*

EXAMPLES.

	<i>Nominative.</i>	<i>Genitive.</i>
Dec. I.	Mūsā, <i>a muse,</i>	mūsae, <i>of a muse.</i>
II.	Servūs, <i>a slave,</i>	servī, <i>of a slave.</i>
III.	Hōnōr, <i>an honor,</i>	hōnōris, <i>of an honor.</i>
IV.	Fructūs, <i>a fruit,</i>	fructūs, <i>of a fruit.</i>
V.	Diēs, <i>a day,</i>	diēī, <i>of a day.</i>

REM.—The genitive endings are usually added to the word after the ending of the nominative is dropped; but, as this is not always the case, it becomes necessary, in order to decline a noun correctly, to know both the *nominative* and the *genitive*: accordingly, both these forms are given in the Vocabularies.

63. The *Genitive Case* expresses *possession*, and the *various relations* denoted by the preposition *of*, and accordingly corresponds both to the *English Possessive*, and the *English Objective* with *of*; as, *rēgīs cōrōnā*, the king's crown (or the crown of the king); *āmōr glōriæ*, the love of glory.

64. The subject of a proposition may have a noun denoting a *different person* or *thing* connected with it, to explain or limit its meaning. The subject is then said to be *modified* by such noun; e. g.

Subject not modified.

Subject modified.

1. Fīliūs rēgnābīt.

2. Rēgīs fīliūs rēgnābīt.

The son will reign.

The son *of the king* will reign.

REM.—The genitive *rēgīs* (of the king), in the above example, modifies *fīliūs* (the son); i. e. it shows that the predicate *rēgnābīt*

* In this ending *e* is long except in *spēī*, *fīdēī*, and *rēī*.

(will reign) is not affirmed of *every* son, but only of the son of *the king*.

a) In the example, the limiting genitive stands before the noun which it limits. This seems to be the more common order, when no *emphasis* is intended, though we often find it reversed.

b) If the noun which is limited by the genitive is *emphatic*, or is a *monosyllable*, it generally stands before the genitive; e. g.

1. Cicerō, *pāter* patriae.

Cicero, *the father* of (his) country.

2. Lex nātūrae.

The law of nature.

REM.—In the first example, *pāter* is emphatic, and in the second, *ex* is a monosyllable; they accordingly stand before their genitives.

65. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

- 1) In the *same* case as that noun, when it denotes the *same* person or thing; e. g. *Lātīnūs rex*, Latinus the king (59, REM. 1).
- 2) In the *genitive*, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g. *Rēgīs filiūs*, the son of the king.

66. VOCABULARY.*

Agrīcōlā,	Gen. āgrīcōlae,	husbandman	(agriculture).
Amīcūs,	“ āmīcī,	friend	(amicable).
Balbūs,	“ Balbī,	Balbus, a man's name.	
Caiūs,	“ Caiī,	Caius, a man's name.	
Cānis,	“ cānīs,	dog	(canine).
Filiā,	“ filiae,	daughter.	

* The genitive is given in the Vocabulary; and the pupil may determine from the genitive ending to which declension the noun belongs.

Filiūs,	Gen. filiī,	son	(<i>filial</i>).
Frātēr,	“ frātrīs,	brother	(<i>fraternal</i>).
Lātinūs,	“ Lātinī,	Latinus,	
		<i>a king of Latium.</i>	
Milēs,	“ milītīs,	soldier	(<i>military</i>).
Pātēr,	“ pātrīs,	father	(<i>paternal</i>).
Puēr,	“ puērī,	boy	(<i>puerile</i>).
Rēgīnā,	“ rēgīnae,	queen.	
Rex,	“ rēgīs,	king	(<i>regal</i>).
Servūs,	“ servi,	slave	(<i>servant</i>).
Tulliā,	“ Tulliae,	Tullia,	
		<i>a queen of Rome.</i>	

67. Exercises.

(a) 1. Servus dormit. 2. *Balbi* servus dormiet. 3. Filius ludit. 4. *Regis* filius ludēbat. 5. *Regīnae* pater docēbat. 6. Filia ridēbat. 7. Filia *regīnae* ridēbat. 8. Amīcus *regis* cadet.

9. Balbus servus veniēbat. 10. *Balbi* servus dormit. 11. Pastor cantābit. 12. Canis *pastōris* mordēbit. 13. Mordēbunt. 14. Filia *pastōris* nebit. 15. *Regis* amīcus timēbit. 16. Caius, *regis* amīcus, timēbit. 17. Tullia, *regis* filia, cantābat.

(b) 1. The brother will conquer. 2. The king will conquer. 3. The brother of the king will conquer. 4. The daughter of the king is singing. 5. The queen will read. 6. The daughter of the queen will read. 7. The father of *Balbus* was laughing.

8. The shepherd's dog (the dog of the shepherd) will bite. 9. The boy's dog will bite. 10. The husband-man's dog will play. 11. The soldier will fight. 12. The son of the soldier will fight. 13. Latinus the king was conquering. 14. The shepherd's daughter (the daughter of the shepherd) is spinning.

LESSON XIII.

Nouns.—*Accusative Case.*—*Direct Object of Predicate.*

68. EVERY noun consists of two distinct parts, viz:—

- 1) The *Root*, or that part which remains *unchanged* throughout the various cases of both numbers; as *mūs* in *mūsā*, *mūsae*, and *mūsām*.
- 2) The *Endings*, which are added to the root to form these cases; thus, in the forms just noticed, viz., *mūsā*, *mūsae*, and *mūsām*, the endings are *ā*, *ae*, and *ām*.

69. In any noun, of whatever declension,

- 1) The *root* may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular (62); as, *mūsā*, Gen. *mūsae*; root, *mūs*: *servūs*, Gen. *servī*; root, *serv*: *hōnōr*, Gen. *hōnōrīs*; root, *hōnōr*, &c.
- 2) Any *case* may be formed (with a few exceptions) by adding to this root the proper ending.

70. 1) The *Accusative Singular* of *neuter* nouns is the same as the *Nominative*; e. g., Nom. *sceptrū*, a sceptre; Accus. *sceptrū*.

- 2) The *Accusative Singular* of *masculine* and *feminine* nouns is formed from the root, by adding one* of the following

ACCUSATIVE ENDINGS.

<i>Dec. I.</i>	<i>Dec. II.</i>	<i>Dec. III.</i>	<i>Dec. IV.</i>	<i>Dec. V.</i>
ām,	ūm,	ēm,	ūm,	ēm.

* If the noun is of the first declension, the learner will, of course, add the ending given for the first declension; if of the second, the ending given for the second; and so on.

EXAMPLES.

	<i>Genitive.</i>	<i>Root. Ending.</i>	<i>Accusative.</i>
Dec. I.	Mūsae, <i>of a muse</i> ;	mūs -ām; mūsām,	<i>a muse.</i>
II.	Servī, <i>of a slave</i> ;	serv -ūm; servūm,	<i>a slave.</i>
III.	Hōnōris, <i>of an honor</i> ;	hōnōr-ēm; hōnōrēm,	<i>an honor.</i>
IV.	Fructūs, <i>of a fruit</i> ;	fruct -ūm; fructūm,	<i>a fruit.</i>
V.	Diēī, <i>of a day</i> ;	di -ēm; diēm,	<i>a day.</i>

71. The accusative case corresponds very nearly to the English objective, and is used after *transitive verbs* and *certain prepositions*.

72. When a verb represents its subject as acting upon some other person or thing, it is said to be *transitive*; and the person or thing upon which the action is exerted, is called its *direct object*; e. g.

Serviūs impēriūm admīnistrāt.
(Servius the government administers.)
 Servius administers *the government*.

73. In English the object is placed after the verb; thus, *government* is placed after *administers*; but in Latin the object precedes the verb; thus, *impēriūm* precedes *admīnistrāt*.

74. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The *Direct Object* of an action is put in the *accusative*.

75. VOCABULARY.

Aedificārē,		to build	(<i>edifice</i>).
Diēs,	Gen. diēī,	day.	
Dēmīnūs,	“ dēmīnī,	master, as owner	(<i>domineer</i>).
Epistōlā,	“ epistōlae, f.	letter	(<i>epistle</i>).
Laudārē,		to praise	(<i>laud</i>).
Monstrārē,		to show.	
Mors,	“ mortīs, f.	death	(<i>mortal</i>).

Mūrūs,	Gen. mūrī, m.	wall	(mural).
Occidēre,		to kill.	
Puellā,	“ puellae,	girl.	
Sēnātūs,	“ sēnātūs, m.	senate	(senate).
Spērāre,		to hope for.	
Terrēre,		to terrify.	
Tīmēre,		to fear	(timid).
Viā,	“ viae, f.	way, road.	
Vidēre,		to see.	
Vitāre,		to shun.	

76. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius *puellam* laudat. 2. Puer *murum* aedificābat. 3. Rex *puerum* ridet. 4. Puer *mortem* vitat. 5. Puella *diem* sperābat. 6. Puella *viam* monstrābit. 7. Servus *dominum* occīdit.

8. Puella *puerum* laudat. 9. Rex *senatum* timet. 10. Puer *canem* timēbit. 11. Epistōlam scribit. 12. Puer *canem* occidēbat. 13. *Mortem* vitant. 14. *Mortem* timent. 15. Balbus *servus dominum* timēbit. 16. Balbus *servum* docent. 17. Balbi *filius puerum* laudābat.

(b) 1. The boy will show *the road*. 2. Balbus is building *a wall*. 3. Caius was praising *the boy*. 4. The slave is showing *the way*. 5. The king hopes for *the day*. 6. The girl will shun *the dog*.

7. The dog will bite the girl. 8. Father is writing a letter. 9. The father will praise the daughter. 10. They are building a wall. 11. They are killing the slave. 12. The king's son will play. 13. The king fears death. 14. The death of the father will terrify the son.

LESSON XIV.

Nouns.—Accusative, continued.—Adverbial Modifiers.

77. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Certain qualifying words, called *adverbs*, are often connected with verbs, merely to modify their meaning; e. g.,

1. *Mīlēs fortītēr pūgnāt.* 2. *Mīlēs nōn pūgnāt.*
(The soldier bravely fights.) *(The soldier not fights.)*
 The soldier fights *bravely*. The soldier *does not* fight.

REM.—In these examples, *fortītēr* (bravely) and *nōn* (not) are *adverbs* modifying *pūgnāt*. In Latin the adverb generally precedes the verb, as in these instances.

78. VOCABULARY.*

Anguīs, anguīs, <i>c.</i>	snake, serpent.	
Christiānus, ī, <i>m.</i>	Christian	(<i>Christian</i>).
Fortītēr,	bravely.	
Lex, lēgis, <i>f.</i>	law	(<i>legal</i>).
Mātēr, māt̄ris,	mother	(<i>maternal</i>).
Nēglīgērē,	to disregard	(<i>neglect</i>).
Nōn,	not.	
Pastōr, pastōris,	shepherd	(<i>pastor</i>).
Pēcūniā, ae, <i>f.</i>	money	(<i>pecuniary</i>).
Serviūs, ī,	Servius, <i>a man's name</i> .	
Vox, vōcīs, <i>f.</i>	voice	(<i>vocal</i>).

79. Exercises.

- (a) 1. *Servius pūgnat.* 2. *Servius fortītēr pūgnat.*
 3. *Mors Christiānum non† terret.* 4. *Agricōla anguem timēbit.*
 5. *Agricōla anguem non timēbit.* 6. *Pater*

* In this and the following Vocabularies, either the genitive or its ending is given immediately after each substantive.

† In translating *nōn* before a verb, place 'not' after the English tense-sign; thus, *nōn terrēt*, *does not terrify*, or *is not terrifying*.

filiam audiēbat. 7. Pater filii vocem audiēbat. 8. Mater vocem negliget. 9. Mater filiae vocem *non* negliget.

10. Caius legem negligēbat. 11. Christiānus pecuniam negliget. 12. Pecuniam negligent. 13. Puërum docent. 14. Christiānus mortem non timet.

(b) 1. The husbandman will fight. 2. The husbandman will *not* fight. 3. Servius fears death. 4. Servius does *not* fear death. 5. The slave hears the voice of (his) master. 6. The boy was killing the dog. 7. The boy was killing the shepherd's dog. 8. The dog will *not* bite. 9. Servius will avenge the death of the king.

10. They do not fear death. 11. They will fight bravely. 12. Caius is teaching the boy. 13. The daughter of the queen is singing. 14. They did not hear (were not hearing). 15. They will not disregard the law.

LESSON XV.

Nouns.—Dative Case.—Indirect Object of Predicate.

80. THE *Dative Case* in Latin corresponds to the *objective* with *to* or *for* in English; as, *mūsā*, a muse; Dat. *mūsae*, *to* or *for* a muse.

81. The *Dative Singular* of a noun may be formed by adding to its root one of the following

DATIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	ō,	ī,	uī,*	ēī.†

* Neuter nouns of the fourth declension are exceptions, as they have the *dative singular* like the *nominative*.

† In this ending *e* is long except in *spēī*, *fīdēī*, and *rēī*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Genitive.</i>	<i>Root.</i>	<i>Ending.</i>	<i>Dative.</i>
Dec. I. Mūsae, <i>of a muse</i> ;	mūs	- ae;	mūsae, <i>to or for a muse.</i>
II. Servī, <i>of a slave</i> ;	serv	- ō;	servō, “ “ <i>a slave.</i>
III. Hōnōris, <i>of honor</i> ;	hōnōr	- ī;	hōnōrī, “ “ <i>an honor.</i>
IV. Fructūs, <i>of fruit</i> ;	fruct	- uī;	fructuī, “ “ <i>a fruit.</i>
V. Diēi, <i>of day</i> ;	di	- ēi;	diēi, “ “ <i>a day.</i>

82. The person or thing *to* or *for which* any thing is, or is done, is called an *indirect object*; e. g.,

Balbūs puērō viām monstrāt.

(*Balbus to the boy the way shows.*)

Balbus shows the way *to the boy*.

REM.—In the example it will be observed that the *indirect object* precedes the *direct*. This is the more common order, though not unfrequently reversed.

83. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Any transitive verb may take the *accusative* of the *direct* object and the *dative* of the *indirect* object.

84. VOCABULARY.

Accūsārē,	to accuse.	
Bellūm, <i>i, n.</i>	war.	
Claudērē,	to shut	(close).
Condērē,	to found, to build.	
Dārē,*	to give.	
Dŏmūs, dŏmūs, or dŏmī, <i>f.</i>	house	(domestic).
Evertērē,	to pull down, to overthrow.	
Indicērē,	to declare (as war).	
Leō, leōnis, <i>m.</i>	lion.	
Milēs, itis, <i>m. (rarely f.)</i> ,	soldier	(military).

* *Dārē* is of the first conjugation, with *ā* short, contrary to the general rule.

Portă, ae, f.	gate	} (portal). (porter).
Răpărire,	to find.	
Romulus, i,	Romulus,	
	<i>the founder of Rome.</i>	
Sceptrum, i, n.	sceptre.	
Urbs, is, f.	city	(urbane).

85. Exercises.

(a) 1. Pastor viam monstrat. 2. Pastor *puero* viam monstrat. 3. Puer viam monstrabit. 4. Puer *pastori* viam monstrabit. 5. Servus portam claudet. 6. Servus *regi* portam claudet.

7. Romulus urbem condēbat. 8. Agricola anguem repērit. 9. Miles agricolae domum evertet. 10. Regis sceptrum vidēbant. 11. Militi viam monstrant. 12. Leōnem timēbant.

(b) 1. The slave is building a wall. 2. The slave is building a wall *for the king*. 3. The boy was showing the road. 4. The boy was showing the road *to the husbandman*. 5. The husbandman is showing the road *to the boy*. 6. They will declare war *against the city*. *Urbs. Bellum indicunt.*

7. They are founding a city for the queen. 8. They will not disregard the law. 9. They were writing for the king. 10. They will accuse the boy. 11. They were praising the queen. 12. They will praise the queen's daughter. 13. The king will declare war against the senate. 14. The king will give the city to (his) son.

LESSON XVI.

Nouns.—Ablative Case.—Modified Predicate.

86. THE *Ablative Case* in Latin corresponds to the *objective* with *from*, *by*, *in*, or *with* in English; as, *mūsă*, a muse; Abl. *mūsă*, from a muse, or *by*, *in*, or *with* a muse.*

87. The *Ablative Singular* of a noun may be formed by adding to its root one of the following

ABLATIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ă,	ō,	ě,†	ū,	ē.

EXAMPLES.

	<i>Genitive.</i>	<i>Root.</i>	<i>Ending.</i>	<i>Ablative.</i>
Dec. I.	<i>Mūsae, of a muse;</i>	<i>mūs</i>	<i>- ă;</i>	<i>mūsă, from, in, &c., a muse.</i>
II.	<i>Servi, of a slave;</i>	<i>serv</i>	<i>- ō;</i>	<i>servō, “ “ “ a slave.</i>
III.	<i>Hōnōris, of honor;</i>	<i>hōnōr</i>	<i>- ě;</i>	<i>hōnōrě, “ “ “ honor.</i>
IV.	<i>Fructūs, of fruit;</i>	<i>fruct</i>	<i>- ū;</i>	<i>fructū, “ “ “ fruit.</i>
V.	<i>Diēi, of day;</i>	<i>di</i>	<i>- ē;</i>	<i>diē, “ “ “ day.</i>

88. The predicate may be modified by a noun denoting the *time* of an action; e. g.,

Hĩēmě ursūs dormĩt.

(*In winter the bear sleeps.*)

The bear sleeps (when?) *in winter.*

89. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The time *when* is put in the

* The preposition is, however, often expressed before the ablative, as it is before the objective in English.

† As an exception to this, a few nouns of the third declension form the ablative in *z*, as we shall see by-and-by.

ablative without a preposition (i. e., without any word for the English *at, in, &c.*)

REM.—The ablative of time often stands first in a sentence, as in the example.

90. The predicate may be modified by a noun denoting the *place* of its action; e. g.,

Ursūs *in antrō* dormit.

(*The bear in a cave sleeps.*)

The bear sleeps (where?) *in a cave.*

91. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of a place where any thing is, or is done, when not a town (227), is generally put in the ablative with a preposition.

☞ The pupil, in preparing his exercises, should imitate the *order* in the examples, whenever nothing is said on the point.

92. VOCABULARY.

Aestās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	summer.	
Agēr, āgrī, <i>m.</i>	field	(<i>agriculture</i>).
Antrūm, ī, <i>n.</i>	cave.	
Asīnūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	ass.	
Avīs, īs, <i>f.</i>	bird	(<i>aviary</i>).
Dilāniārē,	to tear in pieces.	
Equūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	horse	(<i>equestrian</i>).
Hiems, ĕmīs, <i>f.</i>	winter.	
Hortūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	garden	(<i>horticulture</i>).
In (<i>prep. with abl.</i>),	in.	
Lūcūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	grove.	
Mons, tīs, <i>m.</i>	mountain.	
Prātūm, ī, <i>n.</i>	meadow.	
Ursūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	bear.	

93. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ursus dormit. 2. Ursus *in antro* dormit. 3. Canis currit. 4. Canis *in horto* currit. 5. Puer ludēbat. 6. Puer *in agro* ludēbat. 7. Hiēme ursus *in*

antro dormiet. 8. Romŭlus urbem condēbat. 9. Romŭlus urbem *in monte* condēbat. 10. *Hiēme* ursus *in antro* dormit.

11. Servus regem occīdet. 12. Leo aſinum dilaniat. 13. Rex regīnam accusābat. 14. Regīna filiam docēbit. 15. In luco ludunt. 16. Leo æquum dilaniābit.

(b) 1. The boy is playing. 2. The boy is playing *in the garden*. 3. The dog is running. 4. The dog is running *in the meadow*. 5. The bird will not sing. 6. The bird will not sing *in winter*. 7. The daughter was singing *in the grove*. 8. They will walk *in the field*. 9. They will play *in summer*.

10. Balbus will fear Caius. 11. They will fear the queen. 12. He was building a wall. 13. They are building a wall. 14. The queen is walking in the field. 15. The queen's mother was weeping. 16. The slave is showing the boy (to the boy) the way. 17. The slave was shutting the gate. 18. The boy will shut the gate.

LESSON XVII.

*Nouns.—First Declension.**

94. To the *First Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive in *ae* (62). They all end in *ā* (except a few *Greek* nouns. See 174).

95. Latin nouns of this declension are grammatically feminine; unless their gender is determined by their *signification*, according to previous rules (40, 44).

* Having learned in the previous Lessons the *use* of the *several cases* of the Latin language, the pupil will now find little difficulty in mastering the *five declensions* (62) in all the cases of *both numbers*.

96. We have already learned that the root of a noun may always be found from the genitive singular (69, 1), but, as it may *also* be formed without much difficulty from the nominative, it will be well for us to notice, in connection with the different declensions, the manner in which this may be done.

97. In the First Declension,

- 1) The *root* may be found by dropping the nominative ending *ă*, as *mūsă*; root, *mūs* (69, 1).
- 2) Any noun *may be declined* (i. e., all the cases of both numbers may be formed) by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	ă,	ae,	ae,	ăm,	ă,	ă,
Plur.	ae,	ărūm,	īs,	ās,	ae,	īs.

PARADIGM.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	Mūs-ă, <i>a muse.</i>	Nom.	Mūs-ae, <i>muses.</i>
Gen.	Mūs-ae, <i>of a muse.</i>	Gen.	Mūs-ărūm, <i>of muses.</i>
Dat.	Mūs-ae, <i>to, for a muse.</i>	Dat.	Mūs-īs, <i>to, for muses.</i>
Acc.	Mūs-ăm, <i>a muse.</i>	Acc.	Mūs-ās, <i>muses.</i>
Voc.	Mūs-ă, <i>O muse.</i>	Voc.	Mūs-ae, <i>O muses.</i>
Abl.	Mūs-ă, <i>from, &c. a muse.</i>	Abl.	Mūs-īs, <i>from, &c. muses.</i>

98. VOCABULARY.*

Apěrîrě,	to open, to uncover	(<i>aperture</i>).
Aquîlă, ae,	eagle	(<i>aquiline</i>).
Căpăt, itīs, n.	head	(<i>capital</i>).
Cōlumbă, ae,	dove.	

* The pupil must apply rules for gender.

Cōrōnā, ae,	garland, crown	(<i>coronation</i>).
Dōlōr, ōrīs, m.	pain, grief, sorrow	(<i>dolorous</i>).
Lusciniā, ae,	nightingale.	
Rīdērē,	{ to laugh, }	(ridicule).
	{ to laugh at }	
Sentīrē,	{ to feel, to perceive }	
	{ by the senses.	
Vinciērē,	{ to bind,	
	{ to bind up.	

99. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puellae saltant. 2. Aquilae volant. 3. Regīna puellas docēbit. 4. Tulliae filiae ridēbunt. 5. Tulliae filias ridēbit. 6. Aquila columbas occīdet. 7. Luscinae cantābant.

8. Balbus vocem audit. 9. Caius dolōrem vitābit. 10. Puellae dolōrem sentiunt. 11. Servus epistōlas scribit. 12. Puer caput vinciēbat. 13. Regīna puellae corōnam dabit. 14. Regīna puellis corōnas dabit.

(b) 1. The girl was writing a letter. 2. The girls are writing letters. 3. The queen will call (her) daughter. 4. The queen is calling (her) daughters. 5. Tullia will give a garland to her daughter.

6. They will give garlands to (their) daughters. 7. He is reading the queen's letter. 8. They are reading the girls' letters (the letters of the girls). 9. They will show the way to the queen. 10. The husbandman will shut the gate. 11. The doves will fly. 12. The nightingales are singing. 13. The boy hears (his) father's voice. 14. The boy is opening the letters. 15. The slave will open (his) master's letters.

LESSON XVIII.

Nouns.—Second Declension.—Nouns in ūs and ūm.

100. To the *Second Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive singular in ī (62). They end in ūs, ūm, ěr, and ěr (except a few Greek nouns. See 174).

101. In this declension nouns in ūm are grammatically *neuter*; and the *rest* (with a few exceptions*) are grammatically *masculine*; unless their gender is determined by their signification, according to previous rules (40, 44).

102. In nouns in ūs and ūm, of this declension, the *root* is found by dropping the *nominative ending*; as, *serv-ūs*, a slave; root, *serv*: *rēgn-ūm*, a kingdom; root, *rēgn*.

103. Nouns in ūs are declined by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	ūs,	ī,	ō,	ūm,	ě,†	ō,
Plur.	ī,	ōrūm,	īs,	ōs,	ī,	īs.

* It has not been thought best to burden the memory of the learner with *lists* of exceptions, at this early stage of his study. Accordingly, *general rules*, covering the great majority of cases, are given for *immediate* and *constant use*; thus the pupil may fix the general principles of the language, and become better prepared to understand and recollect the exceptions as they occur in his lessons. Such exceptions, whether pertaining to gender or other subjects, will be marked in the *Vocabularies*.

† The vocative singular, in nouns in ūs of this declension, is not like the nominative (see 55 and note). Proper nouns in *iūs* drop the ending ě in the vocative singular; as, *Tullius* (proper name), Voc. *Tulli*. *Filiūs*, a son, and *gēniūs*, a guardian angel, also drop the ending ě in the vocative singular.

PARADIGM.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Serv-ūs, <i>a slave.</i>	Nom. Serv-ī, <i>slaves.</i>
Gen. Serv-ī, <i>of a slave.</i>	Gen. Serv-ōrūm, <i>of slaves.</i>
Dat. Serv-ō, <i>to, for a slave.</i>	Dat. Serv-īs, <i>to, for slaves.</i>
Acc. Serv-ūm, <i>a slave.</i>	Acc. Serv-ōs, <i>slaves.</i>
Voc. Serv-ě, <i>O slave.</i>	Voc. Serv-ī, <i>O slaves.</i>
Abl. Serv-ō, <i>from, by a slave.</i>	Abl. Serv-īs, <i>from, by slaves.</i>

REM.—It will be well for the pupil to accustom himself to compare the several cases with each other, and to associate together such as are alike, or nearly so.

104. Nouns in *ūm* are declined by adding to the root the following

NEUTER CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	ūm,	ī,	ō,	ūm,	ūm,	ō,
Plur.	ā,	ōrūm,	īs,	ā,	ā,	īs.

PARADIGM.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Rēgn-ūm, <i>a kingdom.</i>	Nom. Rēgn-ā, <i>kingdoms.</i>
Gen. Rēgn-ī, <i>of a kingdom.</i>	Gen. Rēgn-ōrūm, <i>of kingdoms.</i>
Dat. Rēgn-ō, <i>to, for a kingdom.</i>	Dat. Rēgn-īs, <i>to, for kingdoms.</i>
Acc. Rēgn-ūm, <i>a kingdom.</i>	Acc. Rēgn-ā, <i>kingdoms.</i>
Voc. Rēgn-ūm, <i>O kingdom.</i>	Voc. Rēgn-ā, <i>O kingdoms.</i>
Abl. Rēgn-ō, <i>from, by a kingdom.</i>	Abl. Rēgn-īs, <i>from, by kingdoms.</i>

REM. 1.—In neuters of all declensions, the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.* are alike in each number, and in the plural end in *ā*, as in the paradigm just given.

REM. 2.—Neuters in *ūm* are declined like masculines in *ūs* of this declension, except in the cases just mentioned (*nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.*). Compare paradigms.

105. VOCABULARY.

Agnūs, ī,	lamb.	
Discipŭlŭs, ī,	pupil	(disciple).
Dŏmīnŭs, ī,	master, as owner	(domineer).
Gĕrĕrĕ,	{ to carry on, to wage (as war).	
Haedŭs, ī,		kid.
Lŭpŭs, ī,	wolf.	
Māgīstĕr, trī,	master, as teacher	(magisteria).

106. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius Balbum docēbat. 2. Balbus Caium docēbat. 3. Servus domīnum occīdet. 4. Servi domīnos timent. 5. Balbus filios laudābit. 6. Servus domīni filios timet. 7. Servi dominŏrum filios timēbunt. 8. Puellae dolŏrem sentiēbant. 9. Servi muros aedificābunt. 10. Pastor filiis canem dabit. 11. Pastor filiābus* haedum dabit.

(b) 1. Balbus will instruct the slave. 2. Caius will punish the pupil. 3. They will instruct (their) pupils. 4. The slaves will fear Balbus. 5. The master was punishing (his) slaves. 6. Caius will kill the wolf. 7. Wolves will kill lambs. 8. The wolves do not see (see not) the kids.

9. Caius was waging war. 10. They are waging wars. 11. Balbus will fight. 12. The sons of Balbus will fight. 13. The master is teaching the boys. 14. The master is teaching his pupils in the garden. 15. The girls were walking in the garden. 16. He was playing in the meadow. 17. They will play in the fields. 18. The slaves were reading (their) master's letters.

* Filiā has the dative and ablative plur. in *ābŭs*, to distinguish it from the same cases of *filiŭs*.

LESSON XIX.

Nouns.—Second Declension, continued.—Nouns in ěr and ĭr.

107. NOUNS in ěr and ĭr, of the second declension, have the *nominative* and *vocative singular* alike, and in all the other cases are declined like *servŭs* (103), with the single exception that most nouns in ěr drop ě in the root.

PARADIGMS.

1. Gĕnĕr, a son-in-law : root, *gĕnĕr* (ě not dropped).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Gĕnĕr, <i>a son-in-law.</i>	Nom. Gĕnĕr-ĭ, <i>sons-in-law.</i>
Gen. Gĕnĕr-ĭ, <i>of son-in-law.</i>	Gen. Gĕnĕr-ōrum, <i>of sons-in-law.</i>
Dat. Gĕnĕr-ō, <i>to son-in-law.</i>	Dat. Gĕnĕr-īs, <i>to sons-in-law.</i>
Acc. Gĕnĕr-ŭm, <i>son-in-law.</i>	Acc. Gĕnĕr-ōs, <i>sons-in-law.</i>
Voc. Gĕnĕr, <i>O son-in-law.</i>	Voc. Gĕnĕr-ĭ, <i>O sons-in-law.</i>
Abl. Gĕnĕr-ō, <i>from son-in-law.</i>	Abl. Gĕnĕr-īs, <i>from sons-in-law.</i>

2. Agĕr, a field : root, *ăgr* (ě dropped).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Agĕr, <i>a field.</i>	Nom. Agr-ĭ, <i>fields.</i>
Gen. Agr-ĭ, <i>of a field.</i>	Gen. Agr-ōrŭm, <i>of fields.</i>
Dat. Agr-ō, <i>to a field.</i>	Dat. Agr-īs, <i>to fields.</i>
Acc. Agr-ŭm, <i>a field.</i>	Acc. Agr-ōs, <i>fields.</i>
Voc. Agĕr, <i>O field.</i>	Voc. Agr-ĭ, <i>O fields.</i>
Abl. Agr-ō, <i>from a field.</i>	Abl. Agr-īs, <i>from fields.</i>

☞ Vĭr (*a man*) and its compounds are the only nouns in ĭr, and are declined like *gĕnĕr*.

108. VOCABULARY.

Armĭgĕr, ĭ,
Dilġgentiā, ae,
Gĕnĕr, ĭ,
Lĭbĕr, lĭbrĭ,
Vulpĕs, ĭs, f.

armor-bearer.
diligence.
son-in-law.
book.
fox.

109. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puer in agro ludit. 2. Pueri in agris ludēbant. 3. Magister puēros docēbit. 4. Magistri discipulos docēbunt. 5. Magister puēris libros dabit. 6. Armigērum occidēbant.

7. Pater diligentiam (64, b) filiōrum laudābat. 8. Regīnae filia in luco ambulābat. 9. Lusciniae in lucis cantant. 10. Magistri legem non negligēt. 11. Puēri vulpem non occīdent.

(b) 1. The boy was running in the fields. 2. The boys will run in the fields. 3. The boys saw the master's book. 4. The pupils will give the master a book (a book to the master). 5. They will give books to (their) masters. 6. He will punish the armor-bearer. 7. He will accuse (his) son-in-law. 8. They will accuse (their) sons-in-law.

9. The master was praising (his) pupils. 10. The master was praising the diligence of (his) pupils. 11. The pupils do not hear the master. 12. The slaves will shut the gates of the city. 13. The boys were reading in the garden. 14. The girls are reading in the meadow.

LESSON XX.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.

110. THE *Adjective* is that part of speech which is used to qualify substantives; as, *bōnūs*, good; *māgnūs*, great.

111. The form of the adjective often depends, in part, upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies;

e. g., *Bōnūs puēr*, a good boy; *Bōnā puellā*, a good girl; and *Bōnūm rēgnum*, a good kingdom. Thus, *bōnūs* is the form of the adjective when used with *masc.* nouns, *bōnā* with *fem.*, and *bōnūm* with *neuter*.

112. These three forms of the adjective are declined like nouns of the same endings. Thus, the masculine is declined like *servūs* (103), and is accordingly of the *second* declension; the feminine like *mūsā* (97), and is of the *first* declension; and the neuter like *rēgnūm* (104), and is of the *second* declension.

PARADIGM.

Bōnūs, good.			
SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Bōn-ūs,	bōn-ā,	bōn-ūm.
Gen.	Bōn-ī,	bōn-ae,	bōn-ī.
Dat.	Bōn-ō,	bōn-ae,	bōn-ō.
Acc.	Bōn-ūm,	bōn-ām,	bōn-ūm.
Voc.	Bōn-ě,	bōn-ā,	bōn-ūm.
Abl.	Bōn-ō,	bōn-ā,	bōn-ō.
PLURAL.			
Nom.	Bōn-ī,	bōn-ae,	bōn-ā.
Gen.	Bōn-ōrūm,	bōn-ārūm,	bōn-ōrūm.
Dat.	Bōn-īs,	bōn-īs,	bōn-īs.
Acc.	Bōn-ōs,	bōn-ās,	bōn-ā.
Voc.	Bōn-ī,	bōn-ae,	bōn-ā.
Abl.	Bōn-īs,	bōn-īs,	bōn-īs.

REM.—Adjectives like the above are called adjectives of the *First* and *Second Declension*, because they are declined like nouns of these declensions; the *masc.* and *neut.* being declined like nouns of the second declension, and the *fem.* like those of the first.

113. Some adjectives of this declension have the *nom.* and *voc. sing.* in *ēr*, like nouns in *ēr* of the second declension. These, in all their other forms, are de-

clined like *bõnūs* in the Paradigm above, with the exception, that most of them drop *ě* before *r* of the *root* in all genders.

PARADIGMS.

1. Těněr, tender : root, *těněr* (*ě* not dropped).

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Těněr,	těněr-ă,	těněr-ăm.
Gen.	Těněr-ī,	těněr-ae,	těněr-ī.
Dat.	Těněr-ō,	těněr-ae,	těněr-ō.
Acc.	Těněr-ům,	těněr-ăm,	těněr-ům.
Voc.	Těněr,	těněr-ă,	těněr-ům.
Abl.	Těněr-ō,	těněr-ă,	těněr-ō.

PLURAL.

Nom.	Těněr-ī,	těněr-ae,	těněr-ă.
Gen.	Těněr-ōrům,	těněr-ărům,	těněr-ōrum.
Dat.	Těněr-īs,	těněr-īs,	těněr-īs.
Acc.	Těněr-ōs,	těněr-ăs,	těněr-ă.
Voc.	Těněr-ī,	těněr-ae,	těněr-ă.
Abl.	Těněr-īs,	těněr-īs,	těněr-īs.

2. Aegěr, sick : root, *aegr* (*ě* dropped).

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Aegěr,	aegr-ă,	aegr-ům.
Gen.	Aegr-ī,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ī.
Dat.	Aegr-ō,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ō.
Acc.	Aegr-ům,	aegr-ăm,	aegr-ům.
Voc.	Aegěr,	aegr-ă,	aegr-ům.
Abl.	Aegr-ō,	aegr-ă,	aegr-ō.

PLURAL.

Nom.	Aegr-ī,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ă.
Gen.	Aegr-ōrům,	aegr-ărům,	aegr-ōrům.
Dat.	Aegr-īs,	aegr-īs,	aegr-īs.
Acc.	Aegr-ōs,	aegr-ăs,	aegr-ă.
Voc.	Aegr-ī,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ă.
Abl.	Aegr-īs,	aegr-īs,	aegr-īs.

REM.—The following adjectives have the genitive singular in *ūs* (the *i* is generally short in *alterius*), and the dative singular in *ī* in all genders, viz.: *āliūs*, another; *nullūs*, no one; *sōlūs*, alone; *tōtūs*, the whole; *ullūs*, any; *unūs*, one; *altēr*, the other; *neutēr*, neither; and *utēr*, which (of the two).

114. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Adjectives agree with the nouns which they qualify, in *gender*, *number*, and *case*; e. g.,

Mātēr bōnām filiām laudāt.

(The mother (her) good daughter praises).

The mother praises her good daughter.

REM. 1.—The adjective *bōnām* is in the *feminine accusative singular*, to agree with its noun *filiām*.

REM. 2.—The position of the adjective seems to depend principally upon *emphasis*; and accordingly the adjective *precedes* or *follows* its noun, according as it is or is not emphatic. In the example, *bōnām* is emphatic.

REM. 3.—*Meūs*, my; *tuūs*, your (or thy); *suūs*, his, her, &c., though called *adjective pronouns* (273 and 295), are in declension and agreement really adjectives. They usually follow their nouns: e. g.,

Mūliēr ancillām suām excitāt.

(The woman maid her awakens.)

The woman awakens her maid.

115. VOCABULARY.

Bēnignūs, ā, ūm,	kind	(benign).
Bōnūs, ā, ūm,	good.	
Māgnūs, ā, ūm,	large, great	(magnitude).
Meūs,* ā, ūm,	my.	
Pulchēr, chrā, chrūm,	beautiful.	
Sēpēlīrē,	to bury.	
Stūdīōsūs, ā, ūm,	studious.	
Suūs,† ā, um,	his, her, its, their.	
Tuūs, ā, ūm,	your, thy.	

* Voc. sing. masc. is *mī*.

† The meaning of this word depends in part upon the *gender* and *number* of the subject of the proposition in which it is used. Thus, in the

116. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Regīna puēros laudābat. 2. Regīna puēros bonos laudābat. 3. Pater filium suum^a docēbat. 4. Mater filias suas amābit. 5. Bona mater filias suas amābit.

6. Magister puēros docēbit. 7. Bonus magister studiōsos puēros docēbit. 8. Agricōlae anguem non timēbunt. 9. Caius bonam legem non negliget. 10. Christiāni legem bonam non negligunt. 11. Pater meus in prato ambūlat.

(b) 1. The father was burying *his*^a son. 2. They are burying *their*^a sons. 3. My friend does not hear my voice. 4. The daughters love (their) kind mother. 5. The mother will instruct her beautiful daughters.

6. Caius disregards the law. 7. They disregard the good laws. 8. The boys are killing your dog. 9. Good boys will not kill dogs. 10. Your dog will kill the wolf. 11. Dogs will kill large wolves.

LESSON XXI.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension, continued.

117. THE noun which the adjective qualifies is often omitted in Latin; and then in translating into English the word *man* must be supplied, if the adjective is masc. sing.; *woman*, if fem. sing.; and *thing*, if neuter sing.; e. g.,

above example (Mūliēr ancillām suām excitāt), *suām* means *her*, because the subject *mūliēr* is *fem. sing.*; with a masculine subject it would mean *his*, and with a plural subject, *their*, &c.

Avārūs pēcūniām āmāt.
 (*The avaricious (man) money loves.*)
 The avaricious man loves money.

REM.—After a plur. adjec. the noun is sometimes expressed and sometimes omitted in the Eng. translation; thus, *āvārī* may be translated *avaricious men*, or simply *the avaricious*.

118. When a noun is limited by a genitive, one or both nouns may be qualified by an adjective; e. g.,

1. Māgnā rēgīs cōrōnā.
 (*The great of the king crown.*)
 The king's great crown.
2. Māgnā bōnī rēgīs cōrōnā.
 (*The great of the good king crown.*)
 The good king's great crown.

119. VOCABULARY.

Aureūs, ā, ūm,	golden.
Avārītiā, ae,	avarice.
Avārūs, ā, ūm,	avaricious.
Impiūs, ā, ūm,	impious.
Indoctūs, ā, ūm,	unlearned.
Lābōr, ōris, m.	labor.
Poētā, ae, m.	poet.
Sāpientiā, ae,	wisdom.
Vindicārē,	to avenge.

120. Exercises.

(a) 1. Auream regis corōnam vidēbant. 2. Servi magnam regis corōnam vidēbunt. 3. Balbi domum evertent. 4. Impii domum evertēbant. 5. Indoctus sapientiam laudābat.

6. Magnum boni regis sceptrum timēbunt. 7. Amīci sapientiam tuam laudant. 8. Christiāni avaritiam vitābunt. 9. Mater bonas filias laudābat.

(b) 1. He disregards his slave's labor. 2. He disre-

gards his slave's great labor. 3. The beautiful daughters of the queen will dance. 4. The poet was holding the beautiful crown. 5. The poet was holding the good queen's beautiful crown. 6. The good (man) will not disregard the law. 7. The poet will *laugh at* the unlearned (man). 8. The good will not fear death.

9. They will avenge the death of their father. 10. They were avenging the death of the good (woman). 11. The impious (man) will fear death. 12. The poet will build a beautiful house.

LESSON XXII.

Nouns and Adjectives.—First and Second Declension, continued.—Price, Value, and Degree of Estimation.

121. THE predicate of a proposition may be modified by a noun or adjective denoting *price, value, or degree of estimation*; e. g.,

1. Avārūs pātriām aurō vendēt.

(*The avaricious (man) (his) country for gold will sell.*)

The avaricious man will sell his country for gold.

2. Avārūs pēcūniām māgnī aestīmāt.

(*The avaricious (man) money at a great (price) values.*)

The avaricious man values money at a great price (or highly).

122. RULE OF SYNTAX.—*Price*, when expressed by nouns, is generally put in the ablative, and when expressed by adjectives, generally in the genitive.

REM. 1.—The genitive of a few nouns and the ablative of a few adjectives sometimes occur in expressions of price and value.

REM. 2.—In example 1. the noun *aurō* is in the ablative, and in example 2. the adjective *māgnī* is in the genitive, by the above rule.

123. VOCABULARY.

Aestĭmārĕ,	to value	(<i>estimate</i>).
Aurŭm, ĭ,	gold.	
Māgnĭ,	{ at a great price, { at a high price.	
Māgnĭ aestĭmārĕ,	{ to prize highly, { to think highly of.	
Parvĭ,	{ at a little price, { at a low price.	
Parvĭ aestĭmārĕ,	to think little of.	
Pătriă, ae,	native country	(<i>patriotic</i>).
Prōditōr, ōrĭs,	traitor.	
Vendĕrĕ,	to sell	(<i>vend</i>).
Vērŭs, ă, ūm,	true, real.	
Virtŭs, ūtĭs, f.	virtue.	

124. Exercises.

(a) 1. Impius patriam auro vendēbat. 2. Prođitor patriam *parvi*³ aestimābit. 3. Caius amĭci sui labōrem *parvi* aestimat. 4. Boni virtŭtem *magni*² aestimant.

5. Rex servum *magni* aestimābit. 6. Regĭna aurĕam corōnam *magni* aestimat. 7. Magnam urbis portam claudent. 8. Domĭnus servi sui epistōlas aperiet. 9. Servus puĕros vocābit.

(b) 1. The traitor will sell (his) country for gold. 2. Caius values true virtue *at a great (price)*.² 3. The master thinks *little*³ of^r the labor of his slave.

4. The poet will feel real sorrow. 5. A father will not disregard the sorrow of his son. 6. The avaricious (man) will value virtue *at a low (price)*.³ 7. The avaricious value money *at a high (price)*.² 8. Christians think *little*³ of^r money.

LESSON XXIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class I.

125. To the *Third Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive singular in *īs*. They end in *a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x*, and may be divided into four classes:

- 1) Those which have the root the same as the nominative singular (except, in a few instances, the omission or change of the radical vowel): as, *mūliēr*, a woman; root, *mūliēr*.
- 2) Those which form the root by adding a single letter to the nominative singular: as, *leō*, a lion; root, *leōn*.
- 3) Those which form the root by dropping the ending of the nominative singular: as, *urb*s, a city; root, *urb*.
- 4) Those which form the root by changing the ending of the nominative singular: as, *piētās*, piety; root, *piētāt*.

126. CLASS I.—This class comprises nouns in *c,* l, n, r, t*, and *y*. These either have the root the same as the nominative singular, or form it (with a few exceptions) by one of the following slight vowel changes:

- 1) Nouns in *tēr* and *bēr* generally drop *e* in the root: as, *pātēr*, a father; root, *pātr*.
- 2) Nouns in *ēr*n generally change *ě* into *ĩ* in the root: as, *flūmēr*n, a river; root, *flūmĩn*.
- 3) Nouns in *ūt* change *ũ* into *ĩ* in the root: as, *cāpūt*, a head; root, *cāpĩt*.

* There are only two nouns with this ending, one of which belongs to Class II.

REM.—The quantity of the radical vowel is sometimes changed ; this is the case in most nouns in *āl* and *ōr*, which generally lengthen the vowel in the root.

127. Neuter nouns of this declension have the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular alike, and are declined in the other cases by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	—	īs,	ī,	—	—	ě (ī).
Plur.	ā (iā),	ūm (iūm),	ībūs,	ā (iā),	ā (iā),	ībūs.

REM.—The inclosed endings belong only to neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*.

PARADIGMS.

1. Căpūt, <i>n.</i> , a head. (root, <i>căpūt</i> [126, 3].)		2. Anîmāl, <i>n.</i> , an animal. (root, same as <i>nom.*</i> [126].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Căpūt,	Căpīt-ă.	Nom. Anîmāl,	Anîmāl-iă.
Gen. Căpīt-īs,	Căpīt-ūm.	Gen. Anîmāl-īs,	Anîmāl-iūm.
Dat. Căpīt-ī,	Căpīt-ībūs.	Dat. Anîmāl-ī,	Anîmāl-ībūs.
Acc. Căpūt,	Căpīt-ă.	Acc. Anîmāl,	Anîmāl-iă.
Voc. Căpūt,	Căpīt-ă.	Voc. Anîmāl,	Anîmāl-iă.
Abl. Căpīt-ě,	Căpīt-ībūs.	Abl. Anîmāl-ī,	Anîmāl-ībūs.

128. Masculine and feminine nouns of this declension are declined, in all the cases except the *nominative* and *vocative singular* (which are alike), by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	—	īs,	ī,	ēm (īm),	—	ě (ī).
Plur.	ēs,	ūm (iūm),	ībūs,	ēs,	ēs,	ībūs.

* With the radical vowel lengthened (126, REM.).

REM.—The inclosed endings (except that of the genitive plural, which will be noticed again, 141) belong only to a few words.

PARADIGMS.

1. Lăbör, <i>m., labor.</i>		2. Mülïēr, <i>f., a woman.</i>	
(root, same as nom.* [126].)		(root, same as nom. [126].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Lăbör,	Lăbör-ēs.	Nom. Mülïēr,	Mülïēr-ēs.
Gen. Lăbör-ïs,	Lăbör-üm.	Gen. Mülïēr-ïs,	Mülïēr-üm.
Dat. Lăbör-î,	Lăbör-îbūs.	Dat. Mülïēr-î,	Mülïēr-îbūs.
Acc. Lăbör-ēm,	Lăbör-ēs.	Acc. Mülïēr-ēm,	Mülïēr-ēs.
Voc. Lăbör,	Lăbör-ēs.	Voc. Mülïēr,	Mülïēr-ēs.
Abl. Lăbör-ě,	Lăbör-îbūs.	Abl. Mülïēr-ě,	Mülïēr-îbūs.

3. Pătër, <i>a father.</i>		4. Frătër, <i>a brother.</i>	
(root, patr [126, 1].)		(root, frătr [126, 1].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Pătër,	Pătr-ēs.	Nom. Frătër,	Frătr-ēs.
Gen. Pătr-ïs,	Pătr-üm.	Gen. Frătr-ïs,	Frătr-üm.
Dat. Pătr-î,	Pătr-îbūs.	Dat. Frătr-î,	Frătr-îbūs.
Acc. Pătr-ēm,	Pătr-ēs.	Acc. Frătr-ēm,	Frătr-ēs.
Voc. Pătër,	Pătr-ēs.	Voc. Frătër,	Frătr-ēs.
Abl. Pătr-ě,	Pătr-îbūs.	Abl. Frătr-ě,	Frătr-îbūs.

129. VOCABULARY.

Brütüs, î,	Brutus, <i>a Roman consul.</i>
Caecüs, ă, ūm,	blind.
Consül, îs,	consul, <i>Roman chief magistrate.</i>
Finîrě,	to finish.
Frătër, trîs.	brother.
Lücērě,	to shine.
Mülïēr, ěrîs,	woman.
Sĕnătör, örîs,	senator.
Sîrĕn, îs, <i>f.</i>	siren.
Scl, îs, <i>m.</i>	sun.
Sörör, örîs,	sister.

* With the radical vowel lengthened (126, REM.).

130. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Agricōla labōrem finiēbat. 2. Mulier sorōres accusābit. 3. Brutum consūlem occidēbat. 4. Senatōres Caesārem occidēbant.

5. Bonus puer caput aperiet. 6. Servi capīta aperiēbant. 7. Sirēnes cantābant. 8. Sol lucēbat. 9. Caeci solem non vident. 10. Pastōres aurum magni aestīmant.

(b) 1. The boy accuses his brother. 2. They accuse their brothers. 3. The consuls were waging war. 4. The senators fear the consul. 5. The consuls fear the senators. 6. The shepherd values his dog *at a high (price)*.² 7. They will finish their labor.

8. They fear the sirens. 9. Good boys uncover their heads. 10. The blind boy does not see the sun. 11. The blind do not see the sun. 12. The good woman loves (her) beautiful daughters. 13. Good daughters love their mothers. 14. Good mothers instruct their daughters.

LESSON XXIV.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class II.

131. CLASS II. comprises nouns of the third declension in *a*, *o*, and a few in *i*. These form the root by adding a letter to the nominative singular.

1) Nouns in *a*, and a few in *i*, add *t*: as, *poēmā*, a poem; root, *poēmāt*: *hydrōmēlī*, mead; root, *hydrōmēlīt*.

2) Nouns in *o* add *n*: as, *leō*, a lion; root, *leōn*.

REM. 1.—*O* is long in the root.

REM. 2.—Nouns in *do* and *go* change *o* into *ī*, before *n* in the root: as, *virgo*, a virgin; root, *virgīn*.

PARADIGMS.

1. Poēma, *n.*, a poem : root, *poēmāt* (131, 1).*Singular.*

N. Poēmā,
G. Poēmāt-īs,
D. Poēmāt-ī,
A. Poēmā,
V. Poēmā,
A. Poēmāt-ē,

Plural.

N. Poēmāt-ā.
G. Poēmāt-ūm.
D. Poēmāt-ībūs, *or* īs.*
A. Poēmāt-ā.
V. Poēmāt-ā.
A. Poēmāt-ībūs, *or* īs.*

2. Sermō, *m.*, a discourse.(root, *sermōn* [131, 2].)*Singular.**Plural.*

N. Sermō, Sermōn-ēs.
G. Sermōn-īs, Sermōn-ūm.
D. Sermōn-ī, Sermōn-ībūs.
A. Sermōn-ēm, Sermōn-ēs.
V. Sermō, Sermōn-ēs.
A. Sermōn-ē, Sermōn-ībūs.

3. Virgō, *f.*, a virgin.(root, *virgīn* [131, 2. REM. 2].)*Singular.**Plural.*

N. Virgō, Virgīn-ēs.
G. Virgīn-īs, Virgīn-ūm.
D. Virgīn-ī, Virgīn-ībūs.
A. Virgīn-ēm, Virgīn-ēs.
V. Virgō, Virgīn-ēs.
A. Virgīn-ē, Virgīn-ībūs.

132. VOCABULARY.

Accipītēr, trīs, <i>m.</i>	hawk.	
Hōmō, īnīs,	man.	
Optiō, ōnīs, <i>f.</i>	choice	(optional).
Orātiō, ōnīs, <i>f.</i>	oration.	
Orātōr, ōrīs,	orator.	
Pāvō, ōnīs, <i>m.</i>	peacock.	
Poēmā, tīs, <i>n.</i>	poem.	
Sermō, ōnīs, <i>m.</i>	discourse	(sermon).
Tīmīd-ūs, ā, ūm,	timid.	
Virgō, īnīs,	maiden, virgin	(virgin).

* Nouns in *a* generally take the ending *īs* instead of *ībūs* in the dat. and abl. plural.

133. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Pater tuus poemāta legēbat. 2. Poēta sermōnem tuum laudābit. 3. Timīdae puellae pavōnem timent. 4. Virgīnes homīni viam monstrābunt.

5. Bonus puer fratri optiōnem dabit. 6. Puēri homīnes timent. 7. Indocti sapientiam *parvi*³ aestimābunt. 8. Puellae sorōres suas amant.

(b) 1. My brother is reading your discourse. 2. The boys will kill the peacock. 3. They will kill the beautiful peacocks. 4. Your mother is reading the poem. 5. The girls are reading poems. 6. The doves fear the hawk. 7. The hawk will kill your dove.

8. The hawks will kill the beautiful doves. 9. Mothers feel real sorrow. 10. The unlearned will laugh at the orator. 11. The poet will hear the oration. 12. The learned prize wisdom *highly*.² 13. The avaricious think *little*³ of wisdom.

LESSON XXV.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class III.

134. CLASS III. comprises nouns of the third declension in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, *x* (= *cs* or *gs*), *is*, *ys*, *e*, *i*. few in *i*,* and a few in *es*. They form the root by dropping the nominative ending.

- 1) Nouns in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, and *ys*, drop *s*: as, *urbs*, a city; root, *urb*; *hiems*, winter; root, *hiēm*.
- 2) Nouns in *x* (= *cs* or *gs*) drop the *s* in *x*: as, *vox* (*cs*), a voice; root, *vōc*; *rex* (*gs*), a king; root, *rēg*.

* Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin: most of these are indeclinable; a few form the root by dropping *i*, and a few by adding *t* (131, 1).

- 3) Nouns in *is*, *e*, and a few in *es*, drop those endings; as, *hostīs*, an enemy; root, *host*: *nūbēs*, a cloud; root, *nūb*: *mārē*, a sea; root, *mār*.

PARADIGMS.

1. Urbs, <i>f.</i> , a city. (root, <i>urb</i> [134, 1].)	2. Mārē, <i>n.</i> , a sea. (root, <i>mār</i> [134, 3].)
<i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i>
N. Urb-s, Urb-ēs.	N. Mār-ē, Mār-iā.†
G. Urb-īs, Urb-iūm.*	G. Mār-īs, Mār-iūm.†
D. Urb-ī, Urb-ībūs.	D. Mār-ī, Mār-ībūs.
A. Urb-ēm, Urb-ēs.	A. Mār-ē, Mār-iā.
V. Urb-s, Urb-ēs.	V. Mār-ē, Mār-iā.
A. Urb-ē, Urb-ībūs.	A. Mār-ī,† Mār-ībūs.
3. Arx (cs), <i>f.</i> , a citadel. (root, <i>arc</i> [134, 2].)	4. Rex (gs), <i>m.</i> , a king. (root, <i>rēg</i> [134, 2].)
<i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i>
N. Arx, Arc-ēs.	N. Rex, Rēg-ēs.
G. Arc-īs, Arc-iūm.*	G. Rēg-īs, Rēg-ūm.
D. Arc-ī, Arc-ībūs.	D. Rēg-ī, Rēg-ībūs.
A. Arc-ēm, Arc-ēs.	A. Rēg-ēm, Rēg-ēs.
V. Arx, Arc-ēs.	V. Rex, Rēg-ēs.
A. Arc-ē, Arc-ībūs.	A. Rēg-ē, Rēg-ībūs.
5. Hostīs, <i>c.</i> , an enemy. (root, <i>host</i> [134, 3].)	6. Nūbēs, <i>f.</i> , a cloud. (root, <i>nūb</i> [134, 3].)
<i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i>
N. Host-īs, Host-ēs.	N. Nūb-ēs, Nūb-ēs.
G. Host-īs, Host-iūm.	G. Nūb-īs, Nūb-iūm.
D. Host-ī, Host-ībūs.	D. Nūb-ī, Nūb-ībūs.
A. Host-ēm, Host-ēs.	A. Nūb-ēm, Nūb-ēs.
V. Host-īs, Host-ēs.	V. Nūb-ēs, Nūb-ēs.
A. Host-ē, Host-ībūs.	A. Nūb-ē, Nūb-ībūs.

* Monosyllables in *s* or *x*, preceded by a consonant, have *iūm* in the genitive plural. See 141, 3.

† See 127.

135. VOCABULARY.

Arx, arcĭs, <i>f.</i>	citadel, tower.	
Civĭs, ĭs, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	citizen	(<i>civil</i>).
Frŭtex, ĭcĭs, <i>m.</i>	shrub.	
Greġ, ěġĭs, <i>m.</i>	flock, herd	(<i>gregarious</i>).
Hostĭs, ĭs, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	enemy	(<i>hostile</i>).
Jŭdex, ĭcĭs,	judge	(<i>judicial</i>).
Pax, pácĭs, <i>f.</i>	peace	(<i>pacific</i>).
Reŭs, ĭ,	criminal.	
Servārĕ,	to keep, observe	(<i>serve</i>).
Viölārĕ,	to violate.	

136. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius leges violābit. 2. Regīna urbem condēbat. 3. Puĕri magnam urbis portam claudunt. 4. Pastōres arcem condent. 5. Reus judĭcis vocem timet.

6. Cives regem accusābant. 7. Consŭles hostes vincēbant. 8. Pastor gregem *magni*² aestĭmat. 9. Boni cives pacem *magni* aestĭmant. 10. Filii patrem vindicābunt. 11. Servus frutĭcem in horto reperiēbat. 12. Impii patriam auro vendunt. 13. Rei judĭcis vocem timēbunt. 14. Prodĭtor patriam *parvi*³ aestĭmat. 15. Proditōres patriam *parvi* aestimabunt. 16. Agricōla labōrem finiēbat.

(b) 1. The boys will not observe the law. 2. Good citizens observe the laws. 3. They will guard the city. 4. Soldiers will guard the cities. 5. They accuse the judge. 6. The criminals will accuse their judges. 7. The king is violating the law.

8. Slaves fear their masters. 9. Slaves fear the voices of their masters. 10. The king will conquer the enemy (*pl.*). 11. The shepherd will guard his flock. 12. Shepherds guard their flocks. 13. The poet will

praise the judge. 14. They praise the judges. 15. Christians will observe the laws of the city. 16. He does not observe the laws of the city. 17. Good citizens will not violate the laws. 18. The boy is accusing his sister. 19. They are accusing their fathers. 20. Traitors will sell their country for gold. 21. They think *little*³ of ¹ virtue. 22. They prize money *highly*.²

LESSON XXVI.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class IV.

137. CLASS IV. comprises nouns of the third declension in *as*, *os*, *us*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*. These form the root by changing *s* into *r*, *t*, or *d*.

- 1) Nouns in *as*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*, generally change *s* into *t*: *as*, *piētās*, piety; root, *piētāt*: *mons*, a mountain; root, *mont*: *ābiēs*, a fir-tree; root, *ābiēt*: *mīlēs*, a soldier; root, *mīlit*. (See REM. 2, below.)

REM. 1.—Masculines in *as*, of Greek origin, insert *n* before *t* in the root: *as*, *ēlēphās*, an elephant; root, *ēlēphant*.

REM. 2.—Many nouns in *es* change *e* into *i*, before *t*, in the root: *as*, *mīlēs*; root, *mīlit*.

- 2) Nouns in *os* and *us* generally change *s* into *r* or *t*: *as*, *flōs*, a flower; root, *flōr*: *sācerdōs*, a priest; root, *sācerdōt*: *virtūs*, virtue; root, *virtūt*: *gēnūs*, a kind; root, *gēnēr*: *tempūs*, time; root, *tempōr*.

REM.—Most nouns in *us* change *s* into *r*, and *u* of the nominative becomes *ē* or *ō* in the root, as in these examples.

PARADIGMS.

1. Cīvītās, <i>f.</i> , a state. (root, <i>cīvītāt</i> [137, 1].)		2. Ars, <i>f.</i> , art. (root, <i>art</i> [137, 1].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Cīvītās,	Cīvītāt-ēs.	N. Ars,	Art-ēs.
G. Cīvītāt-īs,	Cīvītāt-ūm.	G. Art-īs,	Art-iūm.
D. Cīvītāt-ī,	Cīvītāt-ībūs.	D. Art-ī,	Art-ībūs.
A. Cīvītāt-ēm,	Cīvītāt-ēs.	A. Art-ēm,	Art-ēs.
V. Cīvītās,	Cīvītāt-ēs.	V. Ars,	Art-ēs.
A. Cīvītāt-ē,	Cīvītāt-ībūs.	A. Art-ē,	Art-ībūs.
3. Mīlēs, <i>c.</i> , a soldier. (root, <i>mīlīt</i> [137, 1, REM. 2].)		4. Corpūs, <i>n.</i> , a body. (root, <i>corpōr</i> [137, 2].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Mīlēs,	Mīlīt-ēs.	N. Corpūs,	Corpōr-ā.
G. Mīlīt-īs,	Mīlīt-ūm.	G. Corpōr-īs,	Corpōr-ūm.
D. Mīlīt-ī,	Mīlīt-ībūs.	D. Corpōr-ī,	Corpōr-ībūs.
A. Mīlīt-ēm,	Mīlīt-ēs.	A. Corpūs,	Corpōr-ā.
V. Mīlēs,	Mīlīt-ēs.	V. Corpūs,	Corpōr-ā.
A. Mīlīt-ē,	Mīlīt-ībūs.	A. Corpōr-ē,	Corpōr-ībūs.

138. The Latin, like every other language, has certain forms of expression peculiar to itself, called *Idioms*:* e. g.,

Aliquīd † tempōris,	{ something of time	(<i>Lat. Idiom</i>).
	{ some time	(<i>Eng. Idiom</i>).
Multū † bōnī,	{ much of good	(<i>Lat. Idiom</i>).
	{ much good	(<i>Eng. Idiom</i>).
Quantū † vōluptātis,	{ how much of pleasure	(<i>Lat. Idiom</i>).
	{ how much pleasure	(<i>Eng. Idiom</i>).
Nihīl stābilitātis,	{ nothing of stability	(<i>Lat. Idiom</i>).
	{ no stability	(<i>Eng. Idiom</i>).

REM.—These (†) are neuter adjectives used as nouns; they govern the genitive by the rule already given (65).

* These should be carefully compared with the corresponding English. A table presenting the *Differences of Idiom* between the Latin and English is inserted in this volume for the benefit of the learner. See p. 275.

139. VOCABULARY.

Aliquid,	something.	
Amittērē,	to lose.	
Avāritiā, ae,	avarice.	
Civitās, ātis, f.	state.	
Corpūs, ōris, n.	body	{ (corporal). (corporeal).
Elēphas, antīs, m.	elephant.	
Figūrā, ae,	figure.	
Hābērē,	to have.	
Imprōbūs, ā, ūm,	bad, wicked.	
Multūm (neut. adj.),	much.	
Multūm bonī,	much good.	
Multūm tempōris,	much time.	
Nihil (indec.),	nothing.	
Perdērē,	to waste	(perdition).
Quantūm (neut. adj.),	how much?	
Sācerdōs, ōtis, m. and f.	priest, priestess.	
Stābilitās, ātis, f.	firmness, stability	(stability).
Tempūs, ōris, n.	time.	
Vōluptās, ātis, f.	pleasure	(voluptuous).

140. Exercises.

(a) 1. Avaritia nihil habet voluptātis.⁴ 2. Multum tempōris perdēbat. 3. Figūra nihil habet stabilitātis. 4. Imprōbi leges civitātis violābunt. 5. Servus elephantis corpus puēro monstrābat.

6. Imprōbi virtūtem parvi³ aestīmant. 7. Milītes urbem custodient. 8. Sacerdōtes bonam legem non violābunt. 9. Discipūli multum tempōris perdunt. 10. Indocti multum voluptātis amittunt.

(b) 1. The boy will waste much time.⁴ 2. They will lose much pleasure. 3. The state will observe its laws. 4. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state. 5. The king will punish the soldiers.

6. The priests were praising the queen. 7. The good queen will praise the priests. 8. The soldiers will fear the enemy. 9. The good value wisdom *highly*.² 10. He will laugh at^r the unlearned. 11. He is losing *much time*. 12. The unlearned lose *much pleasure*.

LESSON XXVII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.—Genitives in iŭm.—Gender.

141. It has already been mentioned (128, REM.) that some nouns of the third declension have the genitive *iŭm* instead of *ŭm*. These are,

- 1) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*: as, *măřě*, *măřiiŭm*; *ănĭmăľ*, *ănĭmăľiiŭm*.
- 2) Nouns in *is* and *es* of Class III.: as, *hostĭs*, *hostiŭm*; *nŭbĕs*, *nŭbiŭm*.
- 3) All monosyllables in *s* or *x* preceded by a consonant: as, *urbs*, *urbiŭm*; *arx*, *arciŭm*.
- 4) Nouns in *ns* and *rs* (though in these *ŭm* is sometimes used): as, *cliens*, *clientiŭm*; *cohors*, *cohortiŭm*.

REM.—The use of *iŭm* in words not included in the above classes must be learned from observation.

142. The gender of nouns of the third declension, when not determined by their signification (40, 44), may generally be ascertained from their *endings*, by the following

RULES FOR GRAMMATICAL GENDER.

- 1) *Masculines*.—Most nouns in *er*, *or*, *os*, *es*, increasing in the genitive, and *o*, except *do*, *go*,

and *io*, are masculine; e. g., *āēr*, air; *hōnōr*, honor; *flōs*, a flower; *pēs* (gen. *pēdis*), a foot; *sermō*, a discourse.

2) *Feminines*.—Most nouns in *do*, *go*, *io*, *as*, *is*, *ys*, *aus*, *s* preceded by a consonant, *x*, and *es* not increasing in the genitive, are feminine; e. g., *ārundō*, a reed; *īmāgō*, an image; *ōrātiō*, an oration; *aestās*, summer; *turrīs*, a tower; *laus*, praise; *hiems*, winter; *lex*, a law; *nūbēs* (gen. *nūbīs*), a cloud.

3) *Neuters*.—Most nouns in *a*, *e*, *i*, *y*, *c*, *l*, *n*, *t*, *ar*, *ur*, and *us*, are neuter; e. g., *mārē*, a sea; *poēmā*, a poem; *lāc*, milk; *ānīmāl*, an animal; *flūmēn*, a river; *cāpūt*, a head, &c.

For exceptions, see *Table of Genders* (579).

143. VOCABULARY.

Amīcūs, ī,*	friend	(amicable).
Anīmūs, ī,	mind, soul.	
Carpērē,	to gather, to pluck.	
Flōs, ōris,	flower	(floral).
Ignāvūs, ā, ūm,	indolent, cowardly.	
Magnītūdō, īnīs,	greatness, size	(magnitude).

144. Exercises.

(a) 1. Veram anīmi magnitudīnem laudābunt. 2. Christiāni leges bonas non violābunt. 3. Puēri *multum tempōris*⁴ perdunt. 4. Puer caput aperiet.

5. Servus urbis portas claudit. 6. Servi domīnum suum vindicābunt. 7. Puer patris vocem audit. 8.

* Gender, when not given, must be determined by previous rules.

Puëri patrum voces audient. 9. Lupus haedum dila-
niābat. 10. Haedi lupos timent.

(b) 1. The boys are gathering flowers. 2. He will
pluck the beautiful flower. 3. The dog will fear the
lion. 4. Dogs fear lions. 5. The girl will waste *much*
time.⁴ 6. Your father will lose *much time*. 7. The in-
dolent lose *much pleasure*. 8. The priests are praising
the king.

9. The queen will not violate the laws. 10. The
king's son was violating the laws of the state. 11. My
friend will not disregard my sorrow. 12. Your friends
will not disregard your sorrow.

LESSON XXVIII.

*Nouns.—Third Declension.—Formation of Cases from
each other.*

145. 1) IN any noun of the third declension, all
the cases, except the nominative and vocative
singular (and the accusative sing. in neuters),
can be readily formed from each other, by a
simple change of the endings: thus, the accu-
sative sing. *hōnōrēm* gives (by a change of end-
ing) the dat. *hōnōrī*, or the dat. and abl. plur.
hōnōribūs, or any other case which may be
desired.

2) The *nominative* and *vocative singular* (and *acc.*
sing. in neuters) can generally be formed from
any other case, in some one of the following
ways:

a) By dropping the ending of the given case: as, *hōnōrēm*,* Nom. *hōnōr*.†

REM. 1.—This applies to many nouns whose root ends in *l*, *n*, or *r*, and to a few with the root in *it*.

REM. 2.—*I* is changed before *t* into *ŭ*, and before *n* into *ě*; and *ě* is inserted before *r* when preceded by *t* or *b* (126, 1); e. g., Gen. *căpîtis*; root, *căpît*; Nom. *căpăt*. Gen. *flūmînis*; root, *flumîn*; Nom. *flūmĕn*. Gen. *patrîs*; root, *patr*; Nom. *pătĕr*.

b) By changing the ending of the given case into *s*, *ēs*, *is*, *ōr*, and (for neuters) *ě*: as, *urbîs*, Nom. *urbs*; *nūbĕm*, Nom. *nūbēs*, &c.

REM. 1.—This applies to most nouns of this declension.

REM. 2.—*T*, *d*, or *r*, at the end of the root, is dropped before *s*, and *ŭ* is changed into *ě*; *cs* or *gs* will of course be written *x*; e. g., *piĕtătĕm*, Nom. *piĕtās* (*t* dropped before *s*); *mîlĭtĕm*, Nom. *mîlēs* (*t* dropped before *s*, and *ŭ* changed into *ě*); *rĕgĕm*, Nom. *rex* (regs. = rex).

c) By changing the ending of the given case, together with *ěr* or *ōr*, as the last syllable of the root, into *ūs*: as, *gĕnĕrĭs*, Nom. *gĕnūs*.

REM.—This applies only to a few of those words whose root ends in *ěr* or *ōr*.

146. The predicate of a proposition may be modified by a noun denoting the *manner* or *cause* of its action, or the *means* or *instrument* employed; e. g.,

Irām meām dōnō plācābĭt.

(*Anger my with a gift he will appease.*)

He will appease my anger *with a gift*.

147. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The *cause* or *manner* of an

* The *acc. sing.* is used here, though any other case would do equally well.

† The *nom.* and *voc.*, it will be remembered, are the same in form.

action, and the *means* or *instrument* employed, are expressed by the *ablative*.

REM.—In the above example, *dōnō* expresses the means employed, and is accordingly in the ablative.

148. VOCABULARY.

Altūs, ā, ūm,	high, lofty	(<i>altitude</i>).
Cătēnă, ae,	chain.	
Cingērē,	to surround.	
Complērē,	to fill	(<i>complement</i>).
Cunctūs, ā, ūm,	all (as a whole).	
Dōnūm, ī,	gift	(<i>donation</i>).
Flūmēn, īnīs,	river.	
Glădiūs, ī,	sword.	
Illustrārē,	{ to illumine to illuminate	{ (<i>illustrate</i>)
Iră, ae,	anger	{ (<i>ire</i>). (<i>irascible</i>).
Lux, lūcis,	light	(<i>lucid</i>).
Mūliēr, ēris,	woman.	
Plăcārē,	to appease	(<i>placable</i>).

149. Exercises.

(a) 1. Miles regem gladio occidēbat. 2. Regem catēna vinciēbat. 3. Sol urbem magnam sua luce illustrat. 4. Iram dono placant. 5. Cives regis iram donis placābunt. 6. Flumen urbem cingit.

7. Mulier bona epistōlas scribit. 8. Agricōla urbis portas claudet. 9. Poetārum filiae cantant. 10. Pulchrae pastōrum filiae saltābunt. 11. Caii animum donis placābunt.

(b) 1. The soldiers will bind the king with chains. 2. The river will surround the beautiful city. 3. The boy surrounds his head with a garland. 4. He will surround his sister's head with garlands. 5. He will

give a beautiful garland to his sister. 6. They will give beautiful garlands to their brothers.

7. They were building a wall. 8. They will surround the city with a high wall. 9. The sun illumines all (things) with its light. 10. The sun fills all (things) with its light. 11. The blind do not see the sun. 12. The blind do not see the light of the sun.

LESSON XXIX.

Adjectives.—Third Declension.

150. ADJECTIVES of the third declension may be divided into three classes, viz :

- 1) Those which have three different forms in the nominative singular (one for each gender).
- 2) Those which have two (the *masc.* and *fem.* being the same).
- 3) Those which have but one (the same for all genders).

151. Adjectives of the third declension are declined in their several genders like nouns of the same *declension*, *gender*, and *ending*. It must, however, be observed,

- 1) That those which have only one form in the nominative singular have the abl. sing. in *ě* or *ĩ*, and the rest, with the exception of comparatives, in *ĩ* only.
- 2) That all except comparatives have, in the plural, the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc. neuter* in *iã*, and the *genitive* in *iũm*.

CLASS I.—THREE TERMINATIONS.

152. Adjectives of the first class have in the nominative singular the masculine in *ēr*, the feminine in *īs*, and the neuter in *ě*.

PARADIGM.

Acěr, <i>sharp</i> .			
SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	Acěr,	ācr-īs,	ācr-ě.
G.	Acr-īs,	ācr-īs,	ācr-īs.
D.	Acr-ī,	ācr-ī,	ācr-ī.
A.	Acr-ēm,	ācr-ēm,	ācr-ě.
V.	Acěr,	ācr-īs,	ācr-ě.
A.	Acr-ī,	ācr-ī,	ācr-ī.
PLURAL.			
N.	Acr-ēs,	ācr-ēs,	ācr-īā.
G.	Acr-iŭm,	ācr-iŭm,	ācr-iŭm.
D.	Acr-ībŭs,	ācr-ībŭs,	ācr-ībŭs.
A.	Acr-ēs,	ācr-ēs,	ācr-īā.
V.	Acr-ēs,	ācr-ēs,	ācr-īā.
A.	Acr-ībŭs,	ācr-ībŭs,	ācr-ībŭs.

CLASS II.—TWO TERMINATIONS.

153. Adjectives of the second class have both the masculine and feminine in *īs*, and the neuter in *ě*, except comparatives,* which have the masculine and feminine in *iŏr*, and the neuter in *iŭs*.

* The use of comparatives will be illustrated in connection with the comparison of adjectives.

PARADIGMS.

1. Tristîs, *sad*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Trist-îs,	trist-ě.	N. Trist-ēs,	trist-iă.
G. Trist-îs,	trist-îs.	G. Trist-iŭm,	trist-iŭm.
D. Trist-î,	trist-î.	D. Trist-îbŭs,	trist-îbŭs.
A. Trist-ēm,	trist-ě.	A. Trist-ēs,	trist-iă.
V. Trist-îs,	trist-ě.	V. Trist-ēs,	trist-iă.
A. Trist-î,	trist-î.	A. Trist-îbŭs,	trist-îbŭs.

2. Tristiŏr (*comparative*), *more sad*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Tristiŏr,	tristiŭs.	N. Tristiŏr-ēs,	tristiŏr-ă.
G. Tristiŏr-îs,	tristiŏr-îs.	G. Tristiŏr-ŭm,	tristiŏr-ŭm.
D. Tristiŏr-î,	tristiŏr-î.	D. Tristiŏr-îbŭs,	tristiŏr-îbŭs.
A. Tristiŏr-ēm,	tristiŭs.	A. Tristiŏr-ēs,	tristiŏr-ă.
V. Tristiŏr,	tristiŭs.	V. Tristiŏr-ēs,	tristiŏr-ă.
A. Tristiŏr-ě (î),	tristiŏr-ě (î).	A. Tristiŏr-îbŭs,	tristiŏr-îbŭs.

CLASS III.—ONE TERMINATION.

154. All other adjectives of this declension have *only one* form in the nominative singular for all genders.

PARADIGMS.

1. Fēlix, *happy*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Fēlix,	fēlix.	N. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iă.
G. Fēlic-îs,	fēlic-îs.	G. Fēlic-iŭm,	fēlic-iŭm.
D. Fēlic-î,	fēlic-î.	D. Fēlic-îbŭs,	fēlic-îbŭs.
A. Fēlic-ēm,	fēlix.	A. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iă.
V. Fēlix,	fēlix.	V. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iă.
A. Fēlic-ě (î),	fēlic-ě (î).	A. Fēlic-îbŭs,	fēlic-îbŭs.

PARADIGMS,—*continued.*

2. Prudens, <i>prudent.</i>			
SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Prūdēns,	prūdēns.	N. Prūdēt-ēs,	prūdēt-iā.
G. Prūdēt-īs,	prūdēt-īs.	G. Prūdēt-iūm,	prūdēt-iūm.
D. Prūdēt-i,	prūdēt-i.	D. Prūdēt-ībūs,	prūdēt-ībūs.
A. Prūdēt-ēm,	prūdēns.	A. Prūdēt-ēs,	prūdēt-iā.
V. Prūdēns,	prūdēns.	V. Prūdēt-ēs,	prūdēt-iā.
A. Prūdēt-ē (ī),	prūdēt-ē(ī).	A. Prūdēt-ībūs,	prūdēt-ībūs.

155. VOCABULARY.

Acēr, acrīs, acrē,	sharp, severe	(<i>acrid</i>).
Fidelīs, ē,	trusty, faithful	(<i>fidelity</i>).
Fortīs, ē,	brave	(<i>fortitude</i>).
Glōriā, ae,	glory.	
Māculārē,	to blemish, to stain	(<i>maculate</i>).
Maxīmī,	at a very high (price), very highly.	
Maxīmī aestimārē,	to prize very highly.	
Pausānias, ae,	Pausanias,	
	<i>a distinguished Spartan general.</i>	
Prūdēns, entīs,	prudent, cautious.	
Turpīs, ē,	base, disgraceful	(<i>turpitude</i>).
Sāpiēns, entīs,	wise.	
Splendēns, entīs,	shining	(<i>splendid</i>).

156. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Pater meus fidēlem servum vindicābat. 2. Fidēles servi domīnos suos vindicābunt. 3. Sol splendens cuncta suā luce illustrābat. 4. Sapientes virtūtem *maxīmī*² aestimant.

5. Sapiens leges acres non violābit. 6. Christiāni virtūtem laudant. 7. Boni virtūtem *magnī* aestimābant. 8. Pausanias gloriam turpi morte maculābat. 9. Pausanias magnam belli gloriam turpi morte maculābat.

(b) 1. The brave soldier will fight. 2. The brave king will conquer the enemy (*pl.*). 3. The brave will

conquer the cowardly. 4. Wise (men) will not stain their glory by a base death.

5. The good prize the laws of the state *very highly*.²
6. Kind masters do not punish faithful slaves. 7. A prudent (man) will not violate the laws of his country.
8. The prudent do not violate severe laws.

LESSON XXX.

Adjectives, continued.—Nouns.—Fourth Declension.

157. ADJECTIVES are either of the *first* and *second declension*, or of the *third only*: those of the first and second declension are declined in the *masculine* and *neuter* like nouns of the *second* declension, and in the *feminine* like nouns of the *first*; those of the third declension are declined throughout like nouns of the *third*. (See Lesson XXIII.)

158. Endings of adjectives of the first and second declension.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			A few† have Sing. thus:		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
	2.*	1.	2.	2.	1.	2.			
N.	ūs, ěr,†	ā,	ŭm.	ī,	ae,	ǎ.	ūs, ěr,	ǎ,	ŭm.
G.	ī,	ae,	ī.	ōrŭm,	ārŭm,	ōrŭm.	iūs,	iūs,	iūs.
D.	ō,	ae,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.	ī,	ī,	ī.
A.	ŭm,	ām,	ŭm.	ōs,	ās,	ǎ.	ŭm,	ām,	ŭm.
V.	ě, ěr,†	ā,	ŭm.	ī,	ae,	ǎ.	ě, ěr,	ǎ,	ŭm.
A.	ō,	ā,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.	ō,	ā,	ō.

* The declensions of the different genders are here indicated by numerals.

† In adjectives in ěr, the *masc. nom. sing.* is generally the root (ě is sometimes dropped): ěr, therefore, is not properly a *case-ending*; it is given merely to show the termination of the *nom.* and *voc. sing.*, without regard to the root (107).

† See list, 113, REM.

159. Endings of adjectives of the Third Declension.

	THREE TERM.			TWO TERM.		COMPARATIVES.		ONE TERM.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N.	ēr,*	īs,	ě.	īs,	ě.	ōr,†	ūs.	various.	
G.	īs,	īs,	īs.	īs,	īs.	ōr†-īs,	ōr-īs.	īs.	
D.	ī,	ī,	ī.	ī,	ī.	ōr-ī,	ōr-ī.	ī.	
A.	ēm,	ēm,	ě.	ēm,	ě.	ōr-ēm,	ūs.	ēm.‡	
V.	ēr,*	īs,	ě.	īs,	ě.	ōr,	ūs.	like nom.	
A.	ī,	ī,	ī.	ī,	ī.	ōr-ě (ōr-ī), ōr-ě (ōr-ī).		ě (ī).	
N.	ēs,	ēs,	iā.	ēs,	iā.	ōr-ēs,	ōr-ā.	ēs,	iā.
G.	iūm,	iūm,	iūm.	iūm,	iūm.	ōr-ūm,	ōr-ūm.	iūm,	iūm.
D.	ibūs,	ibūs,	ibūs.	ibūs,	ibūs.	ōr-ibūs,	ōr-ibūs.	ibūs,	ibūs.
A.	ēs,	ēs,	iā.	ēs,	iā.	ōr-ēs,	ōr-ā.	ēs,	iā.
V.	ēs,	ēs,	iā.	ēs,	iā.	ōr-ēs,	ōr-ā.	ēs,	iā.
A.	ibūs,	ibūs,	ibūs.	ibūs,	ibūs.	ōr-ibūs,	ōr-ibūs.	ibūs,	ibūs.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

160. Nouns of the *Fourth Declension* have the genitive singular in *ūs*, and the nominative in *ūs* and *ū*.

161. In this declension, nouns in *ūs* (with a few exceptions) are *masculine*, and those in *ū* are *neuter*.

162. The root is found by dropping the *nominative ending*: as, *fructūs*, fruit; root, *fruct*: *cornū*, a horn; root, *corn*.

163. Nouns in *ūs* (of the fourth declension) are declined with the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing	ūs,	ūs,	uī,	ūm,	ūs,	ū.
Plur.	ūs,	uūm,	ibūs (ūbūs‡),	ūs,	ūs,	ibūs (ūbūs‡).

* The remark on this ending, in adjectives of the first and second declension, is also applicable here (See 158, REM. 2.)

† The *ōr* here given in connection with the case-endings belongs to the root; in the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.* of the *neut. sing.*, it is changed into *ūs*.

‡ Neut. like nom.

§ This ending is used only in a few words

164. Neuters in *ū*, though formerly considered indeclinable in the singular, are found to have the genitive in *ūs*, and are declined with the following

NEUTER CASE-ENDINGS.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing. <i>ū</i>	<i>ūs</i> ,	<i>ū</i> ,	<i>ū</i> ,	<i>ū</i> ,	<i>ū</i> .
Plur. <i>uā</i> ,	<i>uūm</i> ,	<i>ībūs</i> (<i>ūbūs*</i>),	<i>uā</i> ,	<i>uā</i> ,	<i>ībūs</i> (<i>ūbūs*</i>).

PARADIGMS.

1. <i>Fructūs, m., fruit.</i> (root, <i>fruct.</i>)		2. <i>Cornū, n., a horn.</i> (root, <i>corn.</i>)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Fruct-ūs</i> ,	<i>Fruct-ūs</i> .	N. <i>Corn-ū</i> ,	<i>Corn-uā</i> .
G. <i>Fruct-ūs</i> ,	<i>Fruct-uūm</i> .	G. <i>Corn-ūs</i> ,	<i>Corn-uūm</i> .
D. <i>Fruct-uī</i> ,	<i>Fruct-ībūs</i> .	D. <i>Corn-ū</i> ,	<i>Corn-ībūs</i> .
A. <i>Fruct-ūm</i> ,	<i>Fruct-ūs</i> .	A. <i>Corn-ū</i> ,	<i>Corn-uā</i> .
V. <i>Fruct-ūs</i> ,	<i>Fruct-ūs</i> .	V. <i>Corn-ū</i> ,	<i>Corn-uā</i> .
A. <i>Fruct-ū</i> .	<i>Fruct-ībūs</i> .	A. <i>Corn-ū</i> ,	<i>Corn-ībūs</i> .

165. VOCABULARY.

<i>Currūs, ūs</i> ,	chariot.	
<i>Dux, dūcīs, m. and f.</i>	leader, guide	(<i>duke</i>).
<i>Et</i> ,	and.	
<i>Exerūciārē</i> ,	to torture	(<i>excruciate</i>).
<i>Exercītūs, ūs</i> ,	army.	
<i>Innōcens, entīs</i> ,	innocent.	
<i>Luctūs, ūs</i> ,	grief, sadness.	
<i>Mānūs, ūs, f.</i>	hand	(<i>manacle</i>).
<i>Mētūs, ūs</i> ,	fear.	
<i>Nescīrē</i> ,	not to know, to be ignorant of.	
<i>Sīnūs, ūs</i> ,	bosom	(<i>sinuous</i>).
<i>Sullā, ae</i> ,	<i>Sulla, a man's name.</i>	

* This ending is used only in a few words.

166. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Sinus metum nescit. 2. Luctus animum ex-
cruciat. 3. Rex hostium (141, 2) currus videt. 4.
Hostes regis currum audient. 5. Duces exercitui viam
monstrābunt. 6. Puella epistolam sua manu scribit.

7. Caius epistolas sua manu scribēbat. 8. Servi Sul-
lae domum evertēbant. 9. Servus domīni mortem
vindicābit. 10. Pastōris filius mortem non timet. 11.
Luctus et metus animum excruciant (612, REM.).

(b) 1. The innocent (man) knows not fear. 2. The
innocent know not fear. 3. The bosom of the inno-
cent knows not fear. 4. The boy's mother will write
the letter with her own hand. 5. The father is writing
the letters with his own hand.

6. The slave will show the beautiful chariot to his
master. 7. The father will avenge the death of his
son. 8. Fear tortures the cowardly. 9. Fear does not
torture the brave. 10. The cowardly fear death. 11.
Brave soldiers do not fear the enemy.

LESSON XXXI.

Nouns.—Fifth Declension.

167. NOUNS of the *Fifth Declension* have the genitive
singular in *ēi*,* and the nominative in *ēs*.

168. Nouns of this declension are feminine, except
diēs, a day, masculine and feminine in the singular,

* In the ending of the gen. and dat. sing. *e* is long, except in *spēi*
(where it is short), *fidei*, and *rei* (where it is common).

and masculine only in the plural; and *měřīdiēs*, mid-day, masculine.

REM.—The fifth declension comprises only a few words, and of these few, only two,—*diēs*, a day, and *rēs*, a thing, are complete in the plural.

169. The root is formed by dropping the nominative ending: as, *diēs*, a day; root, *dī*.

170. Nouns of this declension are declined with the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	ēs,	ēī,*	ēī,*	ēm,	ēs,	ē.
Plur.	ēs,	ērūm,	ēbūs,	ēs,	ēs,	ēbūs.

PARADIGMS.

<i>Rēs, f., a thing.</i>			<i>Diēs, m. and f., a day.</i>		
(root, <i>r</i> .)			(root, <i>dī</i> .)		
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
N. R-ēs,	R-ēs.		N. Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.	
G. R-ēī,	R-ērūm.		G. Di-ēī,	Di-ērūm.	
D. R-ēī,	R-ēbūs.		D. Di-ēī,	Di-ēbūs.	
A. R-ēm,	R-ēs.		A. Di-ēm,	Di-ēs.	
V. R-ēs,	R-ēs.		V. Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.	
A. R-ē,	R-ēbūs.		A. Di-ē,	Di-ēbūs.	

171. VOCABULARY.

Aciēs, ēī, line of battle.

Aciēm instruērē, to draw up an army in order of battle.

Cōpiaē,† arām, forces (copious).

Dīēs, ēī, day.

* See note on page 78.

† *Cōpiaē* is of the first declension, plural; the singular is not used with this signification.

Edūcērē,	to lead forth	(<i>educē</i>).
Emērē,	to purchase.	
Equitātūs, ūs,	cavalry.	
Fidēs, ēī,	faith, one's word	(<i>fidelity</i>).
Instruērē,	to arrange, to array	(<i>instruct</i>).
Omnīs, ē,	all, every.	
Proximūs, ā, ūm,	nearest, next	(<i>proximate</i>).
Rēducērē,	to lead back	(<i>reduce</i>).
Servārē,	to keep, to observe	(<i>serve</i>).
Spēs, ēī,	hope.	

172. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Christiānus fidem suam servat. 2. Boni fidem suam non violant. 3. Dies veniet. 4. Proximo die (88) Caesar copias suas reducēbat. 5. Proximo die Caesar aciem instruēbat.

6. Caesar equitātum omnem educēbat. 7. Puellan regis currum vidēbat. 8. Hostium (141, 2) copias vidēbunt. 9. Tullia puellis viam monstrābit. 10. Tullia epistōlam sua manu scribit.

(b) 1. The king will keep his word. 2. The queen will not break her word. 3. All (men) prize hope *very highly*.² 4. They do not purchase hope with gold. 5. The wise will not sell hope for gold (122).

6. He prizes his cavalry *very highly*. 7. The king thinks *highly* of^t his whole army. 8. The soldiers will observe the laws. 9. The citizens will observe all the laws of the state. 10. The wise value true greatness of mind *very highly*. 11. The avaricious value money *very highly*.

LESSON XXXII.

Nouns.—Five Declensions.—Greek Nouns.—Gender.

173. TERMINATIONS of Substantives.

SINGULAR.									
Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		Dec. V.		
F.	M.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	N.	F.		
N. ā.	ūs, ěr, ĭr.	ŭm.	various.		ūs.	ŭ.	ēs.		
G. ae.	ī.		īs.		ūs.		ēī.*		
D. ae.	ō.		ī.		uī.	ŭ.	ēī.*		
A. ām.	ŭm.		ěm (ĭm). like nom.		ŭm.	ŭ.	ēm.		
V. ā.	ě, ěr, ĭr.	ŭm.	like nom.		ūs.	ŭ.	ēs.		
A. ā.	ō.		ě (ī).		ŭ.		ē.		

PLURAL.									
N. ae.	ī.	ā.	ēs,	ā, or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.		
G. ārŭm.	ōrŭm.		ŭm (iŭm).		uŭm.		ērŭm.		
D. ĩs.	īs.		ībŭs.		ībŭs (ŭbŭs).		ēbŭs.		
A. ās.	ōs.	ā.	ēs.	ā, or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.		
V. ae.	ī.	ā.	ēs.	ā, or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.		
A. ĩs.	īs.		ībŭs.		ībŭs (ŭbŭs).		ēbŭs.		

REM.—The above table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek. The only *nominative endings* not already noticed, are *e*, *as*, and *es*, in the first declension, and *os* and *on* in the second.

174. The following are specimens of the declension of Greek nouns.

* See 167, REM.

DECLENSION I.

1. Aenēās (
- a man's name*
-). 2. Anchīsēs (
- a man's name*
-).

N. Aenē-ās,
G. Aenē-ae,
D. Aenē-ae,
A. Aenē-ām (ān),
V. Aenē-ā,
A. Aenē-ā.

N. Anchīs-ēs,
G. Anchīs-ae,
D. Anchīs-ae,
A. Anchīs-ēn,
V. Anchīs-ē (ā),
A. Anchīs-ē (ā).

3. Epitome, *an abridgment*.*Singular.*

N. Epītōm-ē,
G. Epītōm-ēs,
D. Epītōm-ae,
A. Epītōm-ēn,
V. Epītōm-ē,
A. Epītōm-ē,

Plural.

Epītōm-ae.
Epītōm-ārūm.
Epītōm-īs.
Epītōm-ās.
Epītōm-ae.
Epītōm-īs.

DECLENSION II.

1. Ilion,
- n. (name of a city)*
- . 2. Delos,
- f. (name of an island)*
- .

N. Ili-ōn,
G. Ili-ī,
D. Ili-ō,
A. Ili-ōn,
V. Ili-ōn,
A. Ili-ō.

N. Dēl-ōs,
G. Dēl-ī,
D. Dēl-ō,
A. Dēl-ōn,
V. Dēl-ē,
A. Dēl-ō.

DECLENSION III.

1. Pericles (
- a man's name*
-). 2. Hērōs,
- a hero*
- .

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. Pērīcl-ēs,
G. Pērīcl-īs,
D. Pērīcl-ī,
A. Pērīcl-ēm (eā),
V. Pērīcl-ēs (ē),
A. Pērīcl-ē.

N. Hērō-s, Hērō-ēs.
G. Hērō-īs, Hērō-ūm.
D. Hērō-ī, Hērō-ībūs.
A. Hērō-ēm (ā), Hērō-ēs (ās).
V. Hērō-s, Hērō-ēs.
A. Hērō-ē, Hērō-ībūs.

175. Table of Genders of Nouns as determined by Nom. Ending.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Dec. I.	ās and ēs.	ā and ē.	
Dec. II.	ēr, ĩr, ūs (and os*).		ŭm (and on*).
Dec. III.	er, or, os, es, increasing in gen. and o, <i>except</i> do, go, and io.	do, go, io, as, is, ys, aus, s impure,† x and es not increasing in gen.	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and us
Dec. IV.	ūs.		ū.
Dec. V.		ēs.	

(For exceptions see Table of Genders [579]).

176. VOCABULARY.

Accĭpĕrĕ,†	to receive, to accept.
Achillēs,‡ ĩs,	Achilles, <i>a Grecian hero.</i>
Aenĕās, ae,	Aeneas, <i>a Trojan prince.</i>
Anchĭsēs, ae,	Anchises, <i>the father of Aeneas.</i>
Ascāniūs, ĩ,	Ascanius, <i>the son of Aeneas.</i>
Carthāgŏ, ĩnĭs,	Carthage, <i>a city in the northern part of Africa.</i>

* The inclosed endings belong to Greek nouns, many of which, being proper names (of men and women), have natural gender.

† Preceded by a consonant.

‡ Accĭpĕrĕ forms its imperfect and future tenses like verbs of the fourth conjugation. (See 270, 271.)

§ Achillēs, being a Greek noun. is declined like Pericles (174).

Dīdō,* ūs, or ōnīs,	Dido, <i>queen of Tyre and afterwards the foundress of Carthage.</i>	
Epītōmē, ēs,	abridgment	(<i>epitome</i>).
Hērōs, ōis,	hero.	
Histōriā, ae,	history.	
Industriā, ae,	industry.	
Nostēr, trā, trūm,	our.	
Rēgnūm, ī,	kingdom, government.	
Rōmā, ae,	Rome, <i>city of Italy, on the river Tiber.</i>	
Trōjānūs, ā, ūm,	Trojan.	

177. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Aenēas, Anchīsae filius, urbem condēbat. 2. Ascanius, Aenēae filius, regnum accīpit. 3. Dido Carthagīnem condēbat. 4. Epitōmen oratiōnis suae scribet.

5. Caesar milītes omnes educēbat. 6. Industria *multum voluptātis* habet. 7. Labōrem suum finiet. 8. Horti nostri multos flores habent. 9. Servus puēros vocābit.

(b) 1. Aeneas was founding Rome. 2. The son of Anchises was founding Rome. 3. Aeneas, the son of Anchises, was founding the city of Rome (the city Rome). 4. The Trojan hero loves queen Dido. 5. They will kill the Trojan hero.

6. They are reading an abridgment of the history. 7. The soldiers praise Caesar. 8. Aeneas praises his father Anchises. 9. The Trojans fear Achilles. 10. Achilles was slaying the Trojans. 11. The soldier is showing his sword to the boy. 12. They will show their swords to the boys.

* Dido is sometimes declined regularly, as a Latin noun of the third declension, and sometimes has the genitive in *ūs*, and all the other cases like the nom.

LESSON XXXIII.

Verbs.—Essě, *to be.* *Predicate, Essě, with a Noun or an Adjective.*

178. Essě, *to be*, is an irregular verb (i. e., it does not belong to either of the four conjugations already noticed), and gives us in the *third persons* of the *present, imperfect, and future tenses*, the following

PARADIGM.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Present.	Est, he, she, or it is,	Sunt, they are,
Imperfect.	Erăt, “ “ “ was,	Erant, “ were,
Future.	Erit, “ “ “ will be.	Erunt, “ will be.

179. The predicate of a proposition is sometimes expressed by the verb *essě* (to be), with a noun or an adjective; e. g.,

1. Terră est rötundă.

The earth is round.

REM. 1.—In this example, the predicate is not simply *est*, but *est rötundă*; for the assertion is not that the earth *is* (i. e. exists), but that the earth *is round*.

REM. 2.—The adjective *rötundă* agrees with the *subject terră* in *gender, number, and case*, by the rule already given. (114).

2. Plūrīmae stellae sölēs sunt.

(*Very many stars suns are.*)

Very many stars are suns.

REM.—Here the predicate is *sölēs sunt*.

180. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun in the predicate after *essě* is put in the same case as the subject when it denotes the same person or thing.

REM.—In example 2, *sölēs* is in the nominative by this rule.

181. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The adjectives *dignūs*, *indignūs*, *contentūs*, *praeditūs*, *frētūs*, and *libēr*, take the ablative ; e. g.,

Virtūs parvō contentā est.

(*Virtue with little content is.*)

Virtue is content with little.

REM.—*Parvō* in this example is a neut. adj. used as a noun ; it is put in the *ablative* after *contentā*, by the rule just given.

182. VOCABULARY.

Arbōr, ōrīs, <i>f.</i>	tree	(<i>arbor</i>).
Beātūs, ā, ūm,	happy	(<i>beatitudo</i>)
Candīdūs, ā, ūm,	white	(<i>candid</i>).
Contentūs, ā, ūm,	content, contented.	
Culpā, ae,	blame, fault	(<i>culpable</i>).
Dignūs, ā, ūm,	worthy	(<i>dignity</i>).
Essē,	to be.	
Est,	is, it is.	
Fācērē,*	to do, to make.	
Flōrērē,	to flourish.	
Frētūs, ā, ūm,	relying on.	
Indignūs, ā, ūm,	unworthy	(<i>indignity</i>).
Laus, dīs,	praise	(<i>laud</i>).
Libēr, ērā, ērūm,	free	(<i>liberty</i>).
Nēmō (inis,†)	nobody, no one.	
Nix, nīvis,	snow.	
Nurquām,	never.	
Parvūm (<i>neut. adj.</i>),	little, a little.	
Praeditūs, ā, ūm,	endued with.	
Quām,	how.	
Quām multī, ae, ā,	how many.	
Sempēr,	always.	
Vīrēs, vīriūm, <i>plur. of vīs</i> ,	strength.	
Vitā, ae,	life	ot (<i>vital</i>).

* This verb, together with some others of the third conjugation, has the imperfect and future like verbs of the fourth conjugation.

† The genitive *neminis* and ablative *nemine* are not in good use.

183. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Nix est candida. 2. Bonus est beātus. 3. Boni sunt beāti. 4. Sapientes parvo contenti sunt. 5. Servus laude dignus est. 6. Patris mei servus laude indignus est.

7. Caius patriam auro vendēbat. 8. Caius, homo vita indignus, patriam auro vendet. 9. Quam multi indigni luce sunt! 10. Arbor florēbat. 11. Balbus multi laude florēbat.

(b) 1. No-one is always happy. 2. The avaricious (man) will never be contented. 3. The avaricious are not contented. 4. Caius is not free from blame. 5. Caius is unworthy of praise.

6. Balbus praises my fidelity. 7. Balbus, a man endowed with great virtue, was praising my fidelity. 8. Balbus does *much good*.⁴ 9. Caius is unworthy of life. 10. Caius, a man unworthy of life, does *no good*.⁴ 11. Caius, relying on his strength, does not fear the lion. 12. The slaves are not free from blame. 13. Christians are contented with little.

LESSON XXXIV.

Verbs.—Infinitive as Subject.—Genitive with Esse in the Predicate.

184. AN *infinitive mood* (with the words belonging to it) (9) may be used as a noun, and thus become the subject of a verb. When thus used it is in the neuter gender (44, 3), and of course takes the adjectives in agreement with it in the same gender; e. g.,

Difficīlē est jūdicārē.
(*Difficult (it) is to judge.*)

It is difficult *to judge*, or, *To judge* is difficult.

REM.—Here *jūdicārē* (to judge) is the subject of the proposition, for it is that of which the predicate *difficile est* (is difficult) is affirmed. It is in the nominative case, and subject of the verb *est*, and the adjective *difficīlē* agrees with it.

185. When the noun in the predicate after *essē* does not denote the same person or thing as the subject, it is put in the *genitive*; e. g.,

Christiānī est nēmīnēm viōlārē.
(*Of a Christian it is nobody to wrong.*)

It is the duty (or part) of a Christian to wrong nobody.

REM. 1.—In this example the subject is *nēmīnēm viōlārē*, and the predicate, *Christiānī est*.

REM. 2.—Combining articles 180 and 185 we have the following

186. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun in the predicate, after the verb *essē*, is put,

- 1) In the same case as the subject when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., *Cicērō ērāt consūl*, *Cicero was consul*.
- 2) In the *genitive* when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., *Christiānī est nēmīnēm viōlārē*, *it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody*.

187. In rendering into English, when a genitive follows any part of the verb *essē* (as *est*, *ērāt*, *ērīt*, &c.), such a substantive as *duty*, *part*, *mark*, *business*, &c., must be supplied.

<i>English Idiom.</i>	<i>Latin Idiom.</i>
It is the part	It is of a wise man.
“ duty	
“ business	
“ mark	
“ character	

188. VOCABULARY.

Difficilis, ě,	difficult.	
Errare,	to err.	
Facilis, ě,	easy	(facility).
Fidem violare,	to break one's word.	
Humanus, a, um,	human, natural to man.	
Magnū est,	it is a great thing.	
Peccare,	to sin, to do wrong.	
Turpis, ě,	base, disgraceful	(turpitude).
Violare,	{ to offend against, to wrong, to } { break a law, one's word, &c. } (violate).	

189. Exercises.

(a) 1. *Humānum*⁶ est peccare. 2. *Humānum* est errare. 3. *Turpe* est fidem suam violare. 4. *Patris*⁷ est filium suum docere. 5. *Regis* est regnare.

6. *Matris* est filias suas docere. 7. *Servi* est viam monstrare. 8. *Turpe* est poëtae domum evertere. 9. *Matres* filias laudant. 10. *Boni* est fidem servare. 11. *Impii* est fidem violare.

REM. 1.—In English, when an infinitive mood is the subject of a proposition, the pronoun *it* is used before the verb *is*; hence, in translating such sentences into Latin, this pronoun *it*, which represents, as it were, the coming infinitive or clause, must be omitted.

REM. 2.—After *it is*, such a substantive as *part, duty, business, mark*, must be omitted in translating into Latin.

(b) 1. *It* is a great (thing) not to fear death.⁶ 2. *It* is easy to err. 3. *It* is (the duty)⁷ of a Christian to keep (his) word. 4. *It* is (the part) of a wise (man) to keep the laws.

5. *It* is disgraceful to neglect a son. 6. *It* is natural-to-man to prize money *very highly*. 7. *It* is the mark of an unlearned man *to think little* of wisdom. 8. *It* is the slave's *business* to shut the gates of the city. 9. *It* is difficult to shut the gates of the city. 10. *A*

good citizen will observe the laws of his country. 11. It is the *part*⁷ of a good citizen to observe the laws of his country.

LESSON XXXV.

Verbs.—Tenses for Completed Action.—First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations.

190. THE tenses which we have thus far used, viz., the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future*, represent the action of the verb as continuing (11), i. e., as *not completed*. There are also three tenses for *completed* action, viz.:

- 1) The *Perfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *present* time, i. e., as just completed; e. g., *āmāvit*, he has loved.
- 2) The *Pluperfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *past* time; as, *āmāverāt*, he had loved.
- 3) The *Future Perfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *future* time; as, *āmāverit*, he will have loved.

191. The tenses for *completed* action are not formed from the same root as those for action *not completed*, but from another called the *second root*. This is formed in various ways.

192. In the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *second root* is formed by adding *āv*, *ū*,* and *īv*, respectively, to the root† of the verb; e. g.:

* A very few verbs of the second conjugation add *ev*, which may be regarded as the full form for which *u* is a contraction (the *e* being dropped, and *v* changed to *u*).

† This we will now call the 1st root, to distinguish it from the 2d.

		<i>First Root.</i>	<i>Second Root.</i>
Conj. I.	Amāřě,	ăm,	ămāv.
Conj. II.	Mönēřě,	mön,	mönũ.
Conj. IV.	Audīřě,	aud,	audīv.

193. In verbs of all the conjugations, the *third persons singular* of the tenses for *completed* action are formed by adding to the *second root* the following *endings*:

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Future Perfect.</i>
īt,	ěřăt,	ěřīt.

PARADIGMS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Amāřě, to love: 1st root, *ăm*; 2d root, *ămāv*.

Perfect. Amāv-īt, he, she, or it has loved (*or* loved).*

Pluperf. Amāv-ěřăt, “ “ “ had loved.

Fut. Perf. Amāv-ěřīt, “ “ “ will have loved.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Mönēřě, to advise: 1st root, *mön*; 2d root, *mönũ*.

Perfect. Mönũ-īt, he, she, or it has advised (*or* advised).*

Pluperf. Mönũ-ěřăt, “ “ “ had advised.

Fut. Perf. Mönũ-ěřīt, “ “ “ shall have advised.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Audīřě, to hear: 1st root, *aud*; 2d root, *audīv*.

Perfect. Audīv-īt, he, she, or it has heard (*or* heard).*

Pluperf. Audīv-ěřăt, “ “ “ had heard.

Fut. Perf. Audīv-ěřīt, “ “ “ shall have heard.

194. In any regular verb, the third persons *plural*, in the tenses for completed action, are formed by simply

* The perfect in Latin corresponds sometimes to our *perfect indefinite*, and sometimes to our *perfect definite* (perfect with have); hence, *ămāvīt* may be translated either *he has loved*, or *he loved*.

inserting *n* before *t* in the ending of the third person singular (35), except in the perfect, where *it* must be changed into *erunt*; e. g.,

		<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Fut. Perfect.</i>
Conj. I.	{ Sing.	Amāv- <i>it</i> ,	āmāv- <i>ērāt</i> ,	āmāv- <i>ērīt</i> .
	{ Plur.	Amāv- <i>ērunt</i> ,	āmāv- <i>ērant</i> ,	āmāv- <i>ērint</i> .
Conj. II.	{ Sing.	Mōnu- <i>it</i> ,	mōnu- <i>ērāt</i> ,	mōnu- <i>ērīt</i> .
	{ Plur.	Mōnu- <i>ērunt</i> ,	mōnu- <i>ērant</i> ,	mōnu- <i>ērint</i> .
Conj. IV.	{ Sing.	Audīv- <i>it</i> ,	audīv- <i>ērāt</i> ,	audīv- <i>ērīt</i> .
	{ Plur.	Audīv- <i>ērunt</i> ,	audīv- <i>ērant</i> ,	audīv- <i>ērint</i> .

195. VOCABULARY.

Aestimārē, āv,*	to estimate, to value.	
Arārē, āv,	to plough	(<i>arable</i>).
Audīre, iv,	to hear	(<i>audible</i>).
Dilāniārē, āv,	to tear in pieces.	
Jūrārē, āv,	to swear.	
Laudārē, āv,	to praise	(<i>laudable</i>).
Monstrārē, āv,	to show.	
Plācārē, āv,	to appease	(<i>placable</i>).
Sēpēlirē, iv,	to bury.	
Servārē, āv,	to keep, to observe.	
Terrērē, u,	to terrify, to frighten.	

196. Exercises.

(a) 1. Puer juravērat. 2. Puēri juravērunt. 3. Agricōla aravērit. 4. Servi aravērint. 5. Vulpes puēros terruit. 6. Vulpes puēros terruērunt. 7. Poētae sapientiam *parvi* aestimāvit.

8. Veram virtūtem magni aestimavērat. 9. Christiānus pecuniam *parvi* aestimāvit. 10. Christiāni est pecuniam *parvi* aestimāre. 11. Magnam poētae sapi-

* The learner will readily form the *second* root from the *first*, by adding the endings here given.

entiam parvi aestimavěrant. 12. Pater filium sepelīvit. 13. Puěri patrem sepelivěrant.

(b) 1. The boy has heard a voice. 2. The boys had heard their father's voice. 3. The slave had shown the way to the shepherd. 4. They will have shown the house to their master.

5. Caius had praised his son. 6. He has praised his slaves. 7. The lion has torn the horse in pieces. 8. The fox had frightened the boy. 9. They had valued wisdom *at a low price*. 10. It is easy to keep (one's) word. 11. It is difficult to appease anger. 12. He has appeased the boy's anger with a gift.

LESSON XXXVI.

Third Conjugation.—Class I.—Second Root *the same as the First*.

197. Most verbs of the third conjugation may be divided into two classes, viz.:

1) Those which have the *second root* the same as the first.

2) Those which form it by the addition of *s*.

198. The *first class* comprises most verbs of this conjugation which have the first root in a vowel, together with a few which have it in a consonant; e. g.,

Suěřě, <i>to sew</i> :	1st root, sũ;	2d root, sũ.
Děfenděřě, <i>to defend</i> :	“ dēfend;	“ dēfend.

199. The manner in which the *third persons* of the tenses for *completed* action are formed from the second root, has already been explained. See 193, 194.

PARADIGM.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Dēfendĕrĕ, to defend: 1st root, *dēfend*; 2d root, *dēfend*.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Future Perfect.</i>
Dēfend-it,	dēfend-ērāt,	dēfend-ērīt.
Dēfend-ērunt,	dēfend-ērant,	dēfend-ērint.

200. The *Preposition* is the part of speech which expresses the various relations of objects; * e. g.,

Rex *pĕr* urbĕm ambŭlābāt.

(*The king through the city was walking.*)

The king was walking *through* the city.

REM.—In this example, *pĕr*, through, is a *preposition*.

201. PARTIAL RULE OF SYNTAX.—Some prepositions govern the *accusative*, and some the *ablative*.

REM. 1.—Whenever a preposition occurs in the exercises, its particular case will be given in the vocabularies.

REM. 2.—The *accusative*, *urbĕm*, in the above example, is governed by the preposition *pĕr*.

202. VOCABULARY.

Aedifĭciŭm, ĭ,	building, edifice.	
Ambŭlārĕ, āv,	to walk.	
Annuĕrĕ, annŭ,	to assent, to give assent.	
Conciliŭm, ĭ,	council, meeting.	
Conditĭō, ōnĭs,	condition, terms.	
Constituĕrĕ, constitŭ,	to arrange, to appoint	(<i>constitute</i>).
Dēfendĕrĕ, dēfend,	to defend.	
Dormĭrĕ, ĭv,	to sleep	(<i>dormant</i>).
Incendĕrĕ, incend,	to set on fire, to burn	(<i>incendiary</i>).
Lĕgiō, ōnĭs,	legion, body of foot-soldiers.	
Pĕr (<i>prep. with acc.</i>),	through.	
Proeliŭm, ĭ,	battle.	

* It will be remembered, however, that certain relations are sometimes expressed by the *cases* of nouns (63, 80, 86).

Privātūs, ā, ūm,	private, personal.	
Rēliquūs, ā, ūm,	remaining, the rest	(relic).
Respuērē, respū,	to reject.	
Rōmānī (adj. pl.),	Romans.	
Rōmānūs, ā, ūm,	Roman, belonging to Rome.	
Suērē, sū,	to sew, to stitch.	
Tīmērē, ū,	to fear	(timid).
Vestīs, īs,	garment	(vest).

203. Exercises.

(a) 1. Privātum aedificium incendit. 2. Relīqua privāta aedificia incendērant. 3. Puellae vestem suērunt. 4. Patres annuērant. 5. Milītes urbem defendērant. 6. Romāni urbem defendērunt.

7. Relīquas legiōnes in acie constituit. 8. Ursi in antro dormivērunt. 9. Agricōla per urbem ambulāvit. 10. Non respuit condiōnem Caesar. 11. Diem concilio constituērunt. 12. Diem concilio constituērit. 13. Servus viam monstravērat. 14. Puer mortem timuit. 15. *Humānum*⁶ est mortem timēre. 16. *Impiī*⁷ est fidem violāre.

(b) 1. The king has appointed a day for the battle. 2. They had appointed a day for the council. 3. The soldiers defended the building. 4. They had defended the poet's house. 5. The queen assented. 6. The king had not assented.

7. The good boy will walk in the city. 8. The poet's daughter had walked through the great city. 9. They will set the house of the poet on fire. 10. It is the duty⁷ of a good man to defend the house of a friend. 11. The avaricious (man) will build a small house. 12. They will not defend the house of the avaricious. 13. They will not reject the condition. 14. Caesar had rejected the terms. 15. He will have arranged his sol-

diers in order of battle. 16. They had arranged their soldiers in order of battle.

LESSON XXXVII.

Third Conjugation.—Class II.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.

204. VERBS of the third conjugation which have the first root in a consonant, generally form the second from it by the addition of *s*; e. g.,

Carpěřě, *to pluck*; 1st root, carp; 2d root, carps.

Rěpěřě, *to creep*; “ rěp; “ reps.

REM.—When *b* stands at the end of the first root, it is changed into *p* before *s* in the second; e. g.,

Scriběřě, *to write*; scrib; scrips (not scribs).

Nüběřě, *to marry*; nüb; nups (not nubs).

205. An adjective modifying the subject is sometimes used in Latin instead of an adverb modifying the verb; e. g.,

Portām *invītūs* claudět.

(*Lat. Id.*) The gate *unwilling* he will shut (*adj.*).

(*Eng. Id.*) He will shut the gate *unwillingly* (*adv.*).

206. VOCABULARY.

Carpěřě, carps,	to pluck, to card, to gather.
Děglüběřě, děglups,	to flay.
Lānā, ae,	wool.
Lūděřě, lūs,	to play.
Mālūs, ā, ūm,	bad.
Ovīs, īs,	sheep.
Scriběřě, scrips,	to write.
Uvā, ae,	grape.

207. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Caius epistolās sua manu scripsit. 2. Puella epistolam sua manu scripsērat. 3. Puēri lanam carpsērunt. 4. Malus pastor deglupsit oves.

5. Facīle est* lanam carpēre. 6. Pater meus fidem servavērat. 7. Turpe est fidem suam non servāre. 8. Sapientis est* virtūtem magni aestimāre. 9. Virtūtem magni aestimavērunt.

(b) 1. The boy has written a letter in his own hand. 2. The girl had written letters in her own hand. 3. They wrote letters. 4. The girl has plucked a flower. 5. The shepherd's daughter had gathered flowers with her own hand.

6. The boy will pluck the grape. 7. It is easy to pluck the grape. 8. The girls were gathering flowers. 9. They had gathered flowers. 10. It is easy to gather flowers. 11. The slaves will card the wool. 12. They will have carded the wool. 13. In winter the bear will sleep in the cave. 14. In summer the girls will play in the garden.

LESSON XXXVIII.

Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.

208. WHEN a *k*-sound (*c, g, h, qu*) stands at the end of the first root, it generally unites, in the second, with the *s* which is added, and forms *x* (i. e. *cs, gs, hs, or qus* becomes *x*); e. g.,

* What is the subject of *est*? (608, 2.)

Cingěřě, *to surround*; cing, cinx (*cings*).

Těgěřě, *to cover*; těg, tex (*tegs*).

Trahěřě, *to draw*; trah, trax (*trahs*).

Cöquěřě, *to cook*; cöqu, cox (*coqus*).

a) In a very few verbs *gu* and *v* must be treated as *k*-sounds in the formation of the second root; e. g.,

Exstinguěřě, *to extinguish*; exstingu, extinx.

Vivěřě, *to live*; vīv, vix.

b) *Fluěřě*, to flow, and *struěřě*, to build, together with their compounds, have the second root in *x*, as if the first ended in a *k*-sound, as probably it did originally.

c) The *k*-sound is sometimes dropped before *s* in the second root; e. g.,

Spargěřě, *to scatter*; sparg, spars.

Mergěřě, *to merge*; merg, mers.

Parcěřě, *to spare*; parc, pars.

209. VOCABULARY.

Cībūs, ī,	food.	
Cingěřě, cinx,	to surround.	
Complěřě, ēv,	to fill	(<i>complement</i>).
Cöquěřě, cox,	to cook, to bake, to ripen.	
Dicěřě, dix,	to say	(<i>diction</i>).
Hăběřě, habu,	to have	(<i>habit</i>).
Ilustrăřě, āv,	to illuminate, to enlighten.	
Mendăciūm, ī,	lie, falsehood	(<i>mendacious</i>).
Multă (<i>neut. pl.</i>),	many (things).	
Multūs, ā, ūm,	much, <i>pl.</i> many.	
Palliūm, ī,	cloak	(<i>to palliate</i>).
Peccărě, āv,	to sin, to do wrong.	
Prudentiă, ae,	prudence.	
Sīmŭlătiŭ, ōnīs,	assumed appearance, pretence	(<i>dissimulation</i>)
Stultitiă, ae,	folly	(<i>stultify</i>).

Summūs, ā, ūm,	highest, greatest	(<i>summit</i>).
Těgěřě, tex,	to cover.	
Viölarě, av,	to violate, to break	(<i>violation</i>).

210. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puer dixit. 2. Caius, homo vita indignus, dixērat. 3. Puellae dixērunt. 4. Flumen urbem cinxit. 5. Flumīna urbes cinxērunt. 6. Amīcus amīci corpus suo pallio texit.

7. Prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiae texērat. 8. Summam prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiae texērunt. 9. Christiāni non est mendacio culpam tegěre. 10. Turpe est peccāre. 11. Turpe est mendacio culpam tegěre. 12. Sol cuncta suā luce illustravērat. 13. Caius leges civitātis violavērit.

(b) 1. The woman has surrounded her head with a garland. 2. The slave has surrounded his head with a garland. 3. They had surrounded their heads with garlands. 4. The boy had said nothing. 5. The girl cooked the food. 6. They had cooked the food.

7. The king had surrounded the city with a wall. 8. They will surround the city with a wall. 9. They covered the fault with a lie. 10. It is disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie. 11. The slave had covered his master's body with a cloak. 12. The slave had said many (things). 13. The sun fills all things with its light. 14. It is the business of the slave⁷ to cook food for his master. 15. It is never useful to lose time. 16. He will lose much pleasure.⁴ 17. How much pleasure will he lose?

LESSON XXXIX.

Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.

211. WHENEVER a *t-sound* (*d* or *t*) stands at the end of the first root, it is generally dropped before *s* in the second, and the preceding vowel, if short, is lengthened; e. g.,

Claudĕrĕ, <i>to shut</i> ;	claud,	claus	(clauds).
Amittĕrĕ, <i>to lose</i> ;	āmitt,	amīs	(amitts).
Dīvidĕrĕ, <i>to divide</i> ;	dīvid,	dīvīs	(divids).

212. When a limiting noun denotes some *characteristic* or *quality* of the noun which it limits, it is always accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the *genitive* or *ablative*; e. g.,

Puĕr exĭmiae pulchrītūdīnīs.

Puĕr exĭmiā pulchrītūdīnĕ.

A boy of remarkable beauty.

213. Combining the above with the rule already given (65), we have the following

RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

- 1) In the same case as that noun, when it denotes the same person or thing; as, *Lātīnūs rex*, *Latinus the king*.
- 2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; as, *Rēgīs filiūs*, *the king's son*: except

(a) When it denotes *character* or *quality*; it is then accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the *genitive* or *ablative*; as, *Puĕr exĭmiae pulchrītūdīnīs*;

or, *Puēr exīmiā pulchrītūdīnē*, a boy of remarkable beauty.

214. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs of *accusing, convicting, acquitting, warning*, and the like, take the accusative of the person and the genitive of the crime, charge, &c.; e. g.,

Caiūm prōditiōnīs accūsant.

(*Caius of treachery they accuse.*)

They accuse Caius of treachery.*

REM.—Here *prōditiōnīs* is in the genitive, by the above rule.

215. (*Eng. Id.*) To condemn to death.

(*Lat. Id.*) To condemn of the head (*cāpītis*).†

216. VOCABULARY.

Accūsārē, āv,	to accuse.	
Ambītūs, ūs,	bribery.	
Amittērē, āmīs,	to lose.	
Cāpītis (<i>gen.</i>),	of the head, to death	(<i>capital</i>).
Claudērē, claus,	to shut	(<i>close</i>).
Damnārē, āv,	to condemn.	
Fāciēs, ēī,	face, appearance.	
Furtūm, ī,	theft	(<i>furtive</i>).
Ingēniūm, ī,	talent, ability	(<i>ingenious</i>).
Lūdērē, lūs,	to play.	
Nunquām,	never.	
Prōditiō, ōnīs,	treachery.	
Saltārē, āv,	to dance.	
Vīr, ‡ vīrī,	man, hero.	

* This genitive is not properly governed by the verb, but by a noun understood; thus, if we supply *crīmīnē* with *prōditiōnīs* in the example, the sense will not be changed; as, ‘They accuse Caius *with the charge* of treachery.’

† We may suppose that it was originally, “to condemn to the loss of the head;” or, “to the punishment of the head.”

‡ *Hōmo*, G. *hōmīnīs*, and *vīr* are both *man*: but *homo* is *man* as opposed to *other* animals; that is, a *human being*: whereas *vīr* is *man*

217. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. *Portas urbis clausērunt.* 2. *Caius multum tempōris amīsit.* 3. *Caius, vir summo ingenio, multum tempōris amīsit.* 4. *Balbus ambītus accusavērunt.* 5. *Puēri in prato lusērunt.*

6. *Balbus capītis damnābunt.* 7. *Christiāni est avaritiam damnāre.* 8. *Caium accusāvit.* 9. *Caium, summo ingenio virum, proditiōnis accusavērat.* 10. *Facīle est saltāre.* 11. *Difficīle est iram placāre.* 12. *Facīle est puēri anīmum dono placāre.* 13. *Ursus in antro dormīvit.* 14. *Hiēme ursi in antris dormiunt.* 15. *Nunquam utīle est peccāre.*

(b) 1. The slave has shut the gates of the city. 2. They will accuse the slave of treachery. 3. Caius had accused the slaves of theft. 4. He will have lost much time.⁴ 5. Balbus, a man of the greatest virtue, has praised the fidelity of the slave. 6. Balbus, a man endowed with the greatest virtue, has accused the boy of theft.

7. They have accused Balbus of bribery. 8. They had accused Balbus, a man of the greatest virtue, of bribery. 9. The sun had illuminated all things with its light. 10. The sun will have filled the world with its light. 11. They have written the letters with their own hands. 12. The queen had written a letter with her own hand. 13. He covered his face with his cloak. 14. They had covered their faces with their cloaks.

as opposed to *woman*.—When *men* means *human beings*, *men* generally (including *both sexes*), it should be translated by *homīnes*.—When *man* is used *contemptuously*, it should also be translated by *homo*, because that word says nothing better of a person than that he is a *human* being.—When *man* is used *respectfully*, with any praise, &c., it should be translated by *vīr*.

LESSON XL.

*Formation of the Second Root.—First Irregularity—
Radical vowel lengthened (and often changed).*

218. REGULAR Endings of the Second Root of Verbs.

Conj. I. āv.	Conj. II. u (or ēv).	Conj. III. s, or like 1st root.	Conj. IV. iv.
-----------------	-------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------

REM.—The above table presents only the *regular* endings of the second root; there are, however, several irregularities in the formation of that root which we must notice.

219. Some verbs in each* of the four conjugations form the second root by lengthening the vowel of the first; e. g.,

Jūvārē, <i>to assist</i> ;	jūv,	jūv.
Vīdērē, <i>to see</i> ;	vīd,	vīd.
Edērē, <i>to eat</i> ;	ēd,	ēd.
Vēnīrē, <i>to come</i> ;	vēn,	vēn.

1) In the third conjugation,

- a) If the first root has *ā*, the second will have *ē*.
b) *M* and *n* are often dropped before a final mute; e. g.,

Căpērē, <i>to take</i> ;	căp,	cēp	(<i>ā</i> changed to <i>ē</i>).
Frangērē, <i>to break</i> ;	frang,	frēg	{ (<i>n</i> dropped, and <i>a</i> changed to <i>ē</i>).
Rumpērē, <i>to burst</i> ;	rump,	rūp	(<i>m</i> dropped).
Vincērē, <i>to conquer</i> ;	vinc,	vīc	(<i>n</i> dropped).

* In the first and fourth conjugations, *jūvārē*, *lāvārē*, *vēnīrē*, and their compounds, are probably the only instances.

220. VOCABULARY.

Brāchiūm, ī,	arm.	
Cāpĕrĕ, cĕp,	to take, to receive.	
Cībūs, ī,	food.	
Emĕrĕ, ĕm,	to buy.	
Exercītūs, ūs,	army.	
Foedūs, ĕris,	treaty	(<i>federal</i>).
Frangĕrĕ, frĕg,	to break	(<i>fragile</i>).
Gallūs, ī,	{ a Gaul, an inhabitant of Gaul, now France.	
Lāvārĕ, lāv,		(<i>lave</i>).
Mĕl, mellīs,	honey.	
Milĕs, ĭtis,	soldier	(<i>military</i>).
Nĕmō, ĭnīs,*	nobody, no one.	
Quiā,	because.	
Rumpĕrĕ, rūp,	to break, to violate.	
Sempĕr,	always.	
Utilīs, ĕ,	useful	(<i>utility</i>).
Vĕnĭrĕ, vĕn,	to come.	
Vidĕrĕ, vĭd,	to see	(<i>visible</i>).
Vincŭlŭm, ī,	chain.	

221. Exercises.

(α) 1. Balbus manus lāvit. 2. Puĕri manus lāvĕrant. 3. Agricōla exercītum vĭdit. 4. Milĭtes vĕnĕrunt. 5. Caius brachium suum frĕgĕrat. 6. Quantum voluptātis cĕpĕrunt!

7. Nunquam ūtile est foedus rumpĕre. 8. Nunquam ūtile est fidem violāre, quia semper est turpe. 9. Facĭle est puerōrum anĭmos donis placāre. 10. Turpe est foedĕra negligĕre. 11. Galli negligĕbant foedĕra. 12. Nemo semper labōrat. 13. Culpas suas simulatiōne virtūtis textit. 14. Multum voluptātis cepĕrant. 15.

* The gen. *nĕmĭnīs* and abl. *nĕmĭnĕ* are not in good use.

Multum voluptātis amisērant. 16. Quantum cibi amisērunt!

(b) 1. Caius has broken his arm. 2. They had broken their arms. 3. The king had broken the treaty. 4. The Gauls had broken the treaty. 5. Caesar had seen the army. 6. The girls will have seen the queen. 7. Caesar conquered the Gauls. 8. The Gauls did not conquer Caesar.

9. It is disgraceful to break a treaty. 10. It is difficult to conquer the Gauls. 11. It is not easy to conquer the enemy. 12. He had appeased Balbus. 13. They will break their chains. 14. They had broken their chains. 15. It is easy to break (one's) arm. 16. They are losing much money. 17. They had lost much money. 18. They were losing much pleasure. 19. They will condemn Balbus to death (215). 20. He had conquered his enemies.

LESSON XLI.

Formation of the Second Root.—Second Irregularity—Reduplication.

222. A FEW verbs of the first, second, and third conjugations, form the second root by prefixing to the first their initial consonant, with the following vowel or with *e*; e. g.,

Dăřě, to give;	d,	děd.
Morděřě, to bite;	mord,	mōmord.
Currěřě, to run;	curr,	cūcurr.

REM.—The radical vowel is also sometimes changed; as, *căděřě*, to fall; 2d root, *cēcīd* (*ă* changed to *ī*).

223. VOCABULARY.

Ab (<i>prep. with abl.</i>),	from.
Auctumnŭs, ī,	autumn.
Barbā, ae,	beard.
Cōlōr, ōrīs,	color.
Currēre, cŭcurr,	to run.
Dārē, dēd,	to give.
Fīnīs, īs, <i>m. or f.</i>	end.
Hŭmērŭs, ī,	shoulder.
Mordērē, mōmord,	to bite.
Mūtārē, āv,	to change.
Nox, noctīs,	night.
Pendērē, pēpend,	to hang (<i>intrans.</i>).
Pēr (<i>prep. with accus.</i>),	through.
Sāgittā, ae,	arrow.
Tondērē, tōtond,	to shear, shave.

224. Exercises.

(a) 1. Equus per urbem cucurrit. 2. Sagittae ab humero pependērunt. 3. Nox proelio (648) finem dedit. 4. Malus pastor oves non totondit. 5. Malus pastor deglupsit oves; non totondit.

6. Boni pastōris⁷ est tondēre oves, non deglubēre. 7. Pastōres agricōlas risērunt. 8. Lupus boni pastōris ovem momordērit. 9. Boni canis⁷ non est oves mordēre. 10. Servus portas urbis clausērit. 11. Puēri regis sceptrum vidēbunt. 12. Lusciniae colōrem mutābunt. 13. Auctumno luscinae colōrem suum mutavērunt.

(b) 1. The dog has bitten the sheep. 2. Your dog had bitten the girl. 3. My horses have been running (have run). 4. Balbus has given his dog to your son. 5. They had given their dogs to the shepherd.

6. The wolf had bitten the sheep. 7. The shepherd will shear his sheep. 8. A shepherd does not shear

his sheep in the winter. 9. The wolves have bitten my dog. 10. Caius will shave (his) beard. 11. The cloak was hanging from (his) shoulder. 12. The dog has bitten the wolf. 13. They wrote the letter. 14. Balbus had shaved (his) beard. 15. The girls have plucked flowers in Caius's garden. 16. The girls will walk in the garden. 17. The queen was walking through the city. 18. They have surrounded the city with walls. 19. They have offended-against the laws of their country.

LESSON XLII.

Formation of the Second Root.—Third Irregularity—Second root after the analogy of other conjugations.

225. A FEW verbs in each conjugation form the second root according to the *analogy* of one or more of the other conjugations.

1) A few in the first conjugation follow the analogy of the second; e. g.,

Mîcărĕ, to *glitter*: 1st root, *mĭc*; 2d root, *mĭcŭ*.

2) A few in the second follow the analogy of the third; e. g.,

Rĭdĕrĕ, to *laugh*; 1st root, *rĭd*; 2d root, *rĭs* (rids).

Lŭgĕrĕ, to *mourn*; " *lŭg*; " *lŭx* (lugs).

3) A few in the third follow the analogy of the second or fourth; e. g.,

Cŏlĕrĕ, to *till*; 1st root, *cŏl*; 2d root, *cŏlŭ*.

Pĕtĕrĕ, to *seek*; " *pĕt*; " *pĕtĭv*.

- 4) A few in the fourth follow the analogy of the second or third ; e. g.,

Apĕrĭrĕ, *to open* ; 1st root, *ăpĕr* ; 2d root, *ăpĕrŭ*.

Vincĭrĕ, *to bind* ; “ *vinc* ; “ *vinx* (cs).

REM.—Verbs of the third conj. which have the 1st root in *sc*, together with a few others, generally change the consonant-ending of the 1st root into *v* in the 2d ; as, *crescĕrĕ*, *to increase* ; 1st root, *cresc* ; 2d, *crĕv*. Most of these verbs are supposed to have been derived from pure roots.

226. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Length of time is generally expressed by the accusative ; e. g.,

Caiŭs *annŭm ūnŭm* vixĭt.

(*Caius year one lived.*)

Caius lived *one year*.

227. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of a town (91) where any thing is or is done, if of the first or second declension, and singular number, is put in the genitive ; otherwise, in the ablative ; e. g.,

1. Caiŭs *annŭm ūnŭm Cortōnae* vixĭt.

Caius lived one year *at Cortona*.

2. Caiŭs *annŭm ūnŭm Tĭbŭrĕ* vixĭt.

Caius lived one year *at Tibur*.

REM.—In these examples, *Cortōnae* and *Tĭbŭrĕ* are names of towns ; the first is put in the *genitive*, because it is of the first declension, and sing. number, and the second in the *ablative*, because it is of the third declension.

228. VOCABULARY.

Amittĕrĕ, *amis*,

to lose.

Annŭs, *i*,

year.

Apĕrĭrĕ, *ăpĕrŭ*,

to open, to uncover.

Bienniŭm,

two years, space of two years.

Castigārĕ, *av*,

to chastise.

Inŭtŭs, ă, ŭm,	unwilling.
Lŭgĕrĕ, lux,	to grieve, mourn, weep for.
Mănĕrĕ, mans,	to remain.
Matrōna, ae,	matron.
Rōmă, ae,	Rome,
	<i>a city of Italy, on the Tiber.</i>
Tĭbŭr, ŭrĭs,	Tibur,
	<i>a town in Latium, in Italy.</i>
Tōtŭs, ă, ŭm (g. iŭs),	the whole, the entire.

229. Exercises.

(a) 1. Balbus multos annos Romae mansĕrat. 2. Biennium Carthagĭne mansĕrant. 3. Mater luxĕrit. 4. Matrōnae luxĕrunt. 5. Brutum Romānae matrōnae luxĕrunt. 6. Pastōres agricōlas risĕrunt. 7. Puĕri capĭta aperuĕrunt.

8. Domĭnus servi sui epistōlam aperiet. 9. Domĭnus servi sui epistōlas aperuĕrat. 10. Alĭquid tempōris⁴ inŭitus (205) amittet. 11. Christiāni est nemĭnem violāre. 12. Nemĭnem violāvit. 13. Biennium Romae manĕbit. 14. Biennium Carthagĭne manĕbunt.

(b) 1. They remained at Tibur many years. 2. Caius remained at Carthage for the space-of-two-years. 3. He has opened his father's letter. 4. They had opened the letters at Carthage.

5. My father will remain at Rome the whole winter. 6. He wrote the letters at Rome. 7. They are mourning for^f their son. 8. They have been in mourning two years. 9. The girls wore mourning for^f their mother. 10. My father values industry very highly. 11. Balbus has accused the shepherd's son of theft. 12. They have accused Caius of bribery.

LESSON XLIII.

Subjunctive Mood.

230. THE *Subjunctive Mood* represents the action or state expressed by the verb, not as a *fact*, but simply as a *possibility, wish, or conception of the mind*; e. g.,

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| 1. Scribāt, | { he may write,
may he write,
let him write. |
| 2. Vēnīt ūt scribāt, | { he has come <i>that he may write</i> ,
he has come <i>to write</i> . |

REM.—*Scribāt* in the above examples is in the present subjunctive.

231. The present subjunctive, when not preceded by *ūt*, generally expresses either a *wish* (to be translated by *may he*), or a *command* (to be translated by *let him, &c.*).

232. If the wish or command is to be expressed *negatively*, *nē* (never *nōn*) must be used with the subjunctive; e. g.,

Nē pūtēt, let him not think.

233. The tenses of the subjunctive mood* are the *present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect*.

234. The endings of the third persons sing. of the tenses of the subjunctive are as follows:

	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>
	(1st root.)	(1st root.)	(2d root.)	(2d root.)
Conj. I.	ēt,	ārēt,	ērīt,	issēt.
Conj. II.	ēāt,	ērēt,	ērīt,	issēt.
Conj. III.	āt,	ērēt,	ērīt,	issēt.
Conj. IV.	iāt,	irēt,	ērīt,	issēt.

* The subjunctive has no *futures*.

REM.—The third persons plural of the several tenses of the subjunctive are formed by inserting *n* before *t* in the ending of the third singular.

235. The English signs corresponding to the Latin subjunctive are as follows:

Present, *may* or *can*.

Imperfect, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*.

Perfect, *may have*.

Pluperfect, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should have*.

236. Partial Paradigm of the Subjunctive Mood.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Singular.

Pres. Am-ēt,	<i>he may or can love.</i>
Imp. Am-ārēt,	<i>he might, &c. love.</i>
Perf. Amāv-ērīt,	<i>he may have loved.</i>
Plup. Amāv-issēt,	<i>he might, &c. have loved.</i>

Plural.

Am-ent,	<i>they may or can love.</i>
Am-arent,	<i>they might, &c. love.</i>
Amāv-ērint,	<i>they may have loved.</i>
Amāv-issent,	<i>they might, &c. have loved.</i>

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Pres. Mön-eät,	<i>he may or can advise.</i>
Imp. Mön-ērēt,	<i>he might, &c. advise.</i>
Perf. Mönü-ērīt,	<i>he may have advised.</i>
Plup. Mönü-issēt,	<i>he might, &c. have advised.</i>

Mön-eant,	<i>they may advise.</i>
Mön-arent,	<i>they might, &c. advise.</i>
Mönü-ērint,	<i>they may have advised.</i>
Mönü-issent,	<i>they might, &c. have advised.</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Pres. Rëg-ät,	<i>he may rule.</i>
Imp. Rëg-ērēt,	<i>he might, &c. rule.</i>
Perf. Rex-ērīt,	<i>he may have ruled.</i>
Plup. Rex-issēt,	<i>he might, &c. have ruled.</i>

Rëg-ant,	<i>they may rule.</i>
Rëg-arent,	<i>they might, &c. rule.</i>
Rex-ērint,	<i>they may have ruled.</i>
Rex-issent,	<i>they might, &c. have ruled.</i>

PARADIGM—continued.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Pres. Aud-iāt, <i>he may hear.</i>	Aud-iant, <i>they may hear.</i>
Imp. Aud-irēt, <i>he might, &c. hear.</i>	Aud-irent, <i>they might, &c. hear.</i>
Perf. Audiv-ērīt, <i>he may have heard.</i>	Audiv-ērint, <i>they may have heard.</i>
Plup. Audiv-issēt, <i>he might, &c. have heard.</i>	Audiv-issent, <i>they might, &c. have heard.</i>

237. Exercises.

(a) 1. Scribat. 2. Ne scribant. 3. Servus claudat portas. 4. Puēri ne claudant portas. 5. Cantet puella. 6. Ludant Puēri. 7. Pater scribēret. 8. Scripsissent. 9. Filium suum sepeliret. 10. Sepeliat filium.

11. Placet puēri anīmum. 12. Ne multa discat. 13. Fidem suam servāvit. 14. Fidem suam servavissent. 15. Fidem suam invīti servavērunt. 16. Puērum in urbe sepelivērunt. 17. Patres filios suos docuērant.

(b) 1. Let the slaves shut the gates of the city. 2. Do not let the slave see the letter. 3. Let him write a letter. 4. He might have come. 5. They may have read the book. 6. He would have broken his arm. 7. Do not let the dog bite the boy.

8. Balbus has kept his word. 9. He would have broken his word. 10. Let him appease his father's anger. 11. He remained at Carthage many years. 12. They would have remained at Rome two years. 13. They had remained in the city one year. 14. Let fathers teach their sons.

LESSON XLIV.

Subjunctive Mood.—Purpose.

238. THE present and imperfect subjunctive in Latin are often used to express a *purpose*.

239. The infinitive often denotes purpose in English, but never in Latin; accordingly, in expressions of purpose, the idioms of the two languages are entirely distinct from each other, and should be carefully studied.

240. *Eng. Id.* { I have come *to see* you.
 { I came *to see* you.

Lat. Id. { I have come *that I may see* you.
 { I came *that I might see* you.

241. When a purpose is to be expressed affirmatively, *ut* is used with the subj., when negatively, *nē*; e. g.,

1. Balbŭm rŏgăt *ut* puērŭm dŏceăt.
(*Balbus he asks that the boy he may teach.*)
He asks Balbus *to teach* the boy.

2. Balbŭm rŏgăt *nē* puērŭm dŏceăt.
He asks Balbus *not to teach* the boy.

242. The subjunctive expressing purpose must be in the *present tense*; unless the verb on which it depends is in a *past tense* (*imperfect, perfect indefinite, or pluperfect*), and then it must be in the *imperfect*.

REM.—The perfect definite (193, REM.), or perfect with have (which denotes that the action *has been done* in a period of time *still present*), is considered a *present tense*, and followed by the *present subjunctive*.

243. EXAMPLES.

1. Vēnīt ūt portās claudāt.
(*He is coming that the gates he may shut.*)
He is coming to shut the gates.
2. Vēnīt (*indef.*) ūt portās claudērēt.
(*He came that the gates he might shut.*)
He came to shut the gates.
3. Vēnīt (*def.*) ūt portās claudāt.
(*He has come that the gates he may shut.*)
He has come to shut the gates.

REM. 1.—In the 1st example the subjunctive is in the *present* tense, because the verb *vēnīt*, on which it depends, is present; while in the 2d, it is in the *imperfect*, because its verb, *vēnīt* (came), is in the *perfect indefinite*.

REM. 2.—In the 3d example the subjunctive is in the *present*, because the verb *vēnīt* (has come) is in the *perfect definite*, and, though in form the same as in the 2d example, really expresses different time.

REM. 3.—The Latin perfect, when followed by the present subjunctive, must be translated into English with the sign *have*, as in example 3.

244. VOCABULARY.

Compārārē, āv,	to procure, to raise, to levy.	
Discērē, dīdīc,	to learn.	
Edēre, ēd,	to eat	(<i>edible</i>).
Evertēre, ēvert,	to overthrow, to pull down.	
Lēgērē, lēg,	to read	(<i>legible</i>).
Plūrīmūs, ā, ūm,	very much <i>or</i> great, <i>pl.</i> , very many.	
Quiescērē, quiēv,	to rest, be quiet	(<i>quiescent</i>).
Rōgārē, āv,	to ask, to entreat.	
Vivērē, vix,	to live	(<i>vivid</i>).

245. Exercises.

(Construe ūt and the *subjunctive* by the infinitive.)

- (a) 1. Lēgit ut discat. 2. Lēgit* ut discat. Lēgit ut disceret (242). 3. Edit ut vivat. 4. Edit ut vivēret.

* See 243, REM. 3.

5. Servi veniunt ut portas claudant. 6. Veniat servus ut portas urbis claudat. 7. Caium rogat ut veniat.

8. Venit ut copias compāret. 9. Romae plurimi vivunt ut edant. 10. Cantent puellae. 11. Quiescant servi. 12. Veniat Caius ut epistolam sua manu scribat. 13. Venērat Caius ut Balbi animum donis placāret.

(b) 1. He has come to read (241) your letter. 2. They came to read your book. 3. They will come to accuse the judge of theft. 4. The boy will come to give his sister a garland.

5. Let the slaves shut the gates. 6. Do not let your dog bite the boy. 7. They had come to raise forces. 8. The enemy will think *little*³ of your forces. 9. He had come to surround the girl's head with a beautiful garland. 10. Let boys prize wisdom *very highly*.

LESSON XLV.

Persons of Verbs.—Indicative Mood.—First Conjugation.

246. It will be remembered that verbs have *three persons* (12): these are distinguished from each other by certain terminations called *Personal Endings*.

247. The three persons may be formed in the perfect indicative (which is somewhat irregular) by changing *it*, of the third person singular, into the following

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.	1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.
ī,	istī,	it.	imūs,	istīs,	ērunt (or ērē).

248. In all the tenses* of the indicative and subjunctive moods, except the perfect indicative, the three persons may be formed by changing *t* of the third singular into the following

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.	1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.
m, ō,	s,	t.	mūs,	tīs,	nt.

a) The ending *o*, for the first person singular, belongs to the *indicative present, future perfect*, and, in the first and second conjugations, to the *future*. The vowel which stands before *t* in the third person is dropped before *o* in the first person, except in the present of the second and fourth conjugations (and in a few verbs of the third); e. g.,

	<i>3d Person.</i>	<i>1st Person.</i>
Pres. 1st Conj.	Amāt, <i>he loves,</i>	āmō (<i>ā</i> dropped), <i>I love.</i>
" 2d "	Mōnēt, <i>he advises,</i>	mōneō (<i>ē</i> not dropped), <i>I advise.</i>
" 3d "	Rēgīt, <i>he rules,</i>	rēgō (<i>ī</i> dropped), <i>I rule.</i>
" 4th "	Audit, <i>he hears,</i>	audiō (<i>ī</i> not dropped), <i>I hear.</i>

b) The ending *m*, for the first person singular, belongs to the *indicative imperfect, pluperfect*, and, in the third and fourth conjugations, to the *future*, and to the *subjunctive* throughout all its tenses. In the future of the third and fourth conjugations, the vowel *ē*, which stands before *t* in the third person, is changed into *ā* before *m* in the first person; e. g.,

	<i>3d Person.</i>	<i>1st Person.</i>
Imperf.	Amābāt, <i>he was loving,</i>	āmābām, <i>I was loving.</i>
Pluperf.	Amāvērāt, <i>he had loved,</i>	āmāvērām, <i>I had loved.</i>
Fut. 3d Conj.	Rēgēt, <i>he will rule,</i>	rēgām, <i>I will rule.</i>
" 4th "	Audiēt, <i>he will hear,</i>	audiām, <i>I will hear.</i>

* We of course speak only of the *active* voice, as the *passive* has not yet been noticed.

c) In the *present* and *future* tenses of the *indicative*, if *i* stands before *t* in the third singular, it is changed into *iu* in the third plural, in the fourth conjugation, and into *u* in the other conjugations; e. g.,

*Singular.**Plural.*

Fut. 1st Conj. Amābīt, <i>he will love,</i>	āmābunt, <i>they will love.</i>
“ 2d “ Mōnēbīt, <i>he will advise,</i>	mōnēbunt, <i>they will advise.</i>
Pres. 3d “ Rēgīt, <i>he rules,</i>	rēgunt, <i>they rule.</i>
“ 4th “ Audīt, <i>he hears,</i>	audiunt, <i>they hear.</i>

249. The vowel before the personal endings *mūs* and *tīs*, is *long* in the imperfect and pluperfect of the indicative, and in all the tenses of the subjunctive, except the perfect, in which it is common* (*long* or *short*).

250. Paradigm of the Indicative Mood—First Conjugation.

Amāre, *to love*: 1st root, *ām*; 2d, *āmāv*.

PRESENT (1st root).

Singular

1. Am-ō, *I love.*
2. Am-ās, *thou lovest.*
3. Am-āt, *he loves.*

Plural.

1. Am-āmūs, *we love.*
2. Am-ātīs, *ye or you love.*
3. Am-ant, *they love.*

IMPERFECT (1st root).

- Am-ābām, *I was loving.*
 Am-ābās,
 thou wast loving.
 Am-ābāt, *he was loving.*

- Am-ābāmūs, *we were loving.*
 Am-ābātīs,
 ye or you were loving.
 Am-ābānt, *they were loving.*

FUTURE (1st root).

- Am-ābō, *I shall love.*
 Am-ābīs, *thou wilt love.*
 Am-ābīt, *he will love.*

- Am-ābīmūs, *we shall love.*
 Am-ābītīs, *ye or you will love.*
 Am-ābunt, *they will love.*

* The vowel is also generally considered common before these endings in the *future perfect*; the old grammarians, however, make it *long*.

PARADIGM—*continued*.

PERFECT (2d root).

Amāv-ī, <i>I loved or have loved.</i>	Amāv-īmūs, <i>we loved or have loved.</i>
Amāv-istī, <i>thou lovedst or hast loved.</i>	Amāv-istīs, <i>ye or you loved or have loved.</i>
Amāv-īt, <i>he loved or has loved.</i>	Amāv-ērunt (ērē), <i>they loved or have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT (2d root).

Amāv-ērām, <i>I had loved.</i>	Amāv-ērāmūs, <i>we had loved.</i>
Amāv-ērās, <i>thou hadst loved.</i>	Amāv-ērātīs, <i>ye or you had loved.</i>
Amāv-ērāt, <i>he had loved.</i>	Amāv-ērant, <i>they had loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT (2d root).

Amāv-ērō, <i>I shall have loved.</i>	Amāv-ērīmūs, <i>we shall have loved.</i>
Amāv-ērīs, <i>thou wilt have loved.</i>	Amāv-ērītīs, <i>ye or you will have loved.</i>
Amāv-ērīt, <i>he will have loved.</i>	Amāv-ērint, <i>they will have loved.</i>

251. VOCABULARY.

Ad (<i>prep. with acc.</i>),	to.
Ducērē, dux,	to lead (duke).
Hesternūs, ā, ūm,	of yesterday.
Incōlūmīs, ē,	safe, uninjured.
Lēgātūs, ī,	ambassador (legate).
Mittērē, mīs,	to send. (mission).
Praemittērē,	to send before.
Prīmūs, ā, ūm,	first (prime).

252. Exercises.

(a) 1. Violābas legem. 2. Violavisti leges. 3. Balbum vocāvi. 4. Hesterno die Balbum vocavimus. 5. Urbem servāvi. 6. Cives incolūmes servavimus. 7. Caium, summo ingenio (213) virum, ambītus accusaverātis. 8. Balbum capītis damnabitis.

9. Legātos ad Caesārem mittunt. 10. Prima luce omnem equitātum praemīsīt. 11. Christiānus nemīnem violābit. 12. Nemīnem violavisti. 13. Multos annos regnābis. 14. Balbus parvo (181) contentus est. 15. Servus multa laude dignus est.

(b) 1. You have kept your word. 2. I will not break my word. 3. You (*pl.*) have violated the laws of the state. 4. You (*pl.*) prize money very highly. 5. We shall condemn avarice. 6. I have never accused the queen. 7. We shall accuse the priest of treachery.

8. They appeased the anger of Caesar. 9. We will appease your anger. 10. Caesar thought very highly of his army. 11. We will send ambassadors to the king. 12. It is the duty of a Christian⁷ to keep his word. 13. It is the part of a wise man to be content with little.

LESSON XLVI.

Indicative Mood.—Four Conjugations.—Personal Pronouns.

253. PARADIGM of the Indicative Mood.

PRESENT (1st root), *am, is, &c., loving.*

	<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
S. 1.	Am-ō,	Mōn-eō,	Rēg-ō,	Aud-iō,
2.	Am-ās,	Mōn-ēs,	Rēg-īs,	Aud-īs,
3.	Am-āt ;	Mōn-ēt ;	Rēg-īt ;	Aud-īt ;
P. 1.	Am-amūs,	Mōn-emūs,	Rēg-imūs,	Aud-imūs,
2.	Am-ātis,	Mōn-ētis,	Rēg-ītis,	Aud-ītis,
3.	Am-ant.	Mōn-ent.	Rēg-unt.	Aud-iunt.

PARADIGM—*continued.*IMPERFECT (1st root), *was, did.*

	<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
S. 1.	Am-ābām,	Mōn-ēbām,	Rēg-ēbām,	Aud-iēbām,
2.	Am-ābās,	Mōn-ēbās,	Rēg-ēbās,	Aud-iēbās,
3.	Am-ābāt ;	Mōn-ēbāt ;	Rēg-ēbāt ;	Aud-iēbāt ;
P. 1.	Am-ābāmūs,	Mōn-ēbāmūs,	Rēg-ēbāmūs,	Aud-iēbāmūs,
2.	Am-ābātīs,	Mōn-ēbātīs,	Rēg-ēbātīs,	Aud-iēbātīs,
3.	Am-ābant.	Mōn-ēbant.	Rēg-ēbant.	Aud-iēbant.

FUTURE (1st root), *shall or will.*

S. 1.	Am-ābō,	Mōn-ēbō,	Rēg-ām,	Aud-iām,
2.	Am-ābīs,	Mōn-ēbīs,	Rēg-ēs,	Aud-iēs,
3.	Am-ābīt ;	Mōn-ēbīt ;	Rēg-ēt ;	Aud-iēt ;
P. 1.	Am-ābīmūs,	Mōn-ēbīmūs,	Rēg-ēmūs,	Aud-iēmūs,
2.	Am-ābītīs,	Mōn-ēbītīs,	Rēg-ētīs,	Aud-iētīs,
3.	Am-ābunt.	Mōn-ēbunt.	Rēg-ent.	Aud-ient.

PERFECT (2d root), *have.*

S. 1.	Amāv-ī,	Mōnu-ī,	Rex-ī,	Audiv-ī,
2.	Amāv-istī,	Mōnu-istī,	Rex-istī,	Audiv-istī,
3.	Amāv-it ;	Mōnu-it ;	Rex-it ;	Audiv-it ;
P. 1.	Amāv-īmūs,	Mōnu-īmūs,	Rex-īmūs,	Audiv-īmūs,
2.	Amāv-istīs,	Mōnu-istīs,	Rex-istīs,	Audiv-istīs,
3.	Amāv-ērunt or ērē.	Mōnu-ērunt or ērē.	Rex-ērunt or ērē.	Audiv-ērunt or ērē.

PLUPERFECT (2d root), *had.*

S. 1.	Amāv-ērām,	Mōnu-ērām,	Rex-ērām,	Audiv-ērām,
2.	Amāv-ērās,	Mōnu-ērās,	Rex-ērās,	Audiv-ērās,
3.	Amāv-ērāt ;	Mōnu-ērāt ;	Rex-ērāt ;	Audiv-ērāt ;
P. 1.	Amāv-ērāmus,	Mōnu-ērāmus,	Rex-ērāmus,	Audiv-ērāmus,
2.	Amāv-ērātīs,	Mōnu-ērātīs,	Rex-ērātīs,	Audiv-ērātīs,
3.	Amāv-erant.	Mōnu-erant.	Rex-erant.	Audiv-erant.

FUTURE PERFECT (2d root), *shall or will have.*

S. 1.	Amāv-ērō,	Mōnu-ērō,	Rex-ērō,	Audiv-ērō,
2.	Amāv-ērīs,	Mōnu-ērīs,	Rex-ērīs,	Audiv-ērīs,
3.	Amāv-erit ;	Mōnu-erit ;	Rex-erit ;	Audiv-erit ;
P. 1.	Amāv-erīmūs,	Mōnu-erīmūs,	Rex-erīmūs,	Audiv-erīmūs,
2.	Amāv-erītīs,	Mōnu-erītīs,	Rex-erītīs,	Audiv-erītīs,
3.	Amāv-erint.	Mōnu-erint.	Rex-erint.	Audiv-erint.

PRONOUNS.

254. *Pronouns* are words which supply the place of nouns; as, *ěgō*, I; *tū*, thou, &c.

255. Pronouns are divided into two classes; viz.,

1) *Substantive Pronouns*; as, *ěgō*, *tū*, &c.

2) *Adjective Pronouns*; as, *hīc*, this; *illě*, that.

256. Substantive Pronouns are three in number, viz.: *ěgō*, I (*which is of course of the first person*); *tū*, thou (*second person*); and *suī*, of himself (*third person*). These from their signification are often called *Personal Pronouns*.

257. Substantive Pronouns are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			
	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
N.	<i>Egō</i> , I.	<i>Tū</i> , thou.	
G.	<i>Meī</i> , of me.	<i>Tuī</i> , of thee.	} <i>Suī</i> , of himself, herself, itself.
D.	<i>Mihī</i> , to or for me.	<i>Tibī</i> , to or for thee.	
A.	<i>Mē</i> , me.	<i>Tē</i> , thee.	<i>Sibī</i> , to himself, &c.
V.		<i>Tū</i> , O thou.	<i>Sē</i> , himself.
A.	<i>Mē</i> , with, &c. me.	<i>Tē</i> , with thee.	<i>Sē</i> , with himself.
PLURAL.			
N.	<i>Nōs</i> , we.	<i>Vōs</i> , ye or you.	
G.	<i>Nostrūm</i> , } of us.	<i>Vestrūm</i> , } of you.	<i>Suī</i> , of themselves.
	or <i>Nostrī</i> , }	or <i>Vestrī</i> , }	
D.	<i>Nōbīs</i> , to us.	<i>Vōbīs</i> , to you.	<i>Sibī</i> , to themselves.
A.	<i>Nōs</i> , us.	<i>Vōs</i> , you.	<i>Sē</i> , themselves.
V.		<i>Vōs</i> , O ye or you.	
A.	<i>Nōbīs</i> , with us.	<i>Vōbīs</i> , with you.	<i>Sē</i> , with themselves.

258. As the ending of the verb shows the person of its subject, the nominative of pronouns is seldom expressed as the subject, except for the sake of *emphasis* or *contrast*.

259. VOCABULARY.

Agĕrĕ, ĕg,	to drive, to lead, to do.	
Dĕ (<i>prep. with abl.</i>),	from, concerning.	
Dĕdĕrĕ, dĕdĭd,	to surrender.	
Dĕmonstrārĕ, av,	to show, to demonstrate	(<i>demonstration</i>).
Egŏ,	I.	
Errārĕ, av,	to err	(<i>error</i>).
Expŏnĕrĕ, expŏsŭ,	to set forth, to explain	(<i>expose</i>).
Făcĕrĕ, (iŏ), fĕc,	to make, to do, to act.	
Grătiă, ae,	gratitude, favor, <i>pl.</i> thanks.	
Grătiās āĕĕrĕ,	to give thanks.	
Itĕr, itĭnĕris, <i>n.</i>	journey, route	(<i>itinerant</i>).
Jŭdicārĕ, av,	to judge	(<i>judicature</i>).
Occultārĕ, av,	to conceal	(<i>occultation</i>).
Poscĕrĕ, pŏpose,	to demand.	
Rĕs, rĕi,	thing, affair, subject.	
Sĕd,	but.	
Sensŭs, ŭs,	feeling, perception	(<i>sense</i>).
Tŭ,	thou, you.	

260. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Rem omnem exposui. 2. Errāvi. 3. Ego de meo sensu judico. 4. Ego misi viros: puĕros tu misisti. 5. Hesterno die Balbum ad me vocāvi. 6. Vos judicavistis. 7. Nos judicabĭmus. 8. Mihi gratias egistis.

9. Caius itinĕra nostra servābat. 10. Fidem suam invĭti servavĕrunt. 11. Agricŏlae est laborāre. 12. Caius, ut demonstravĭmus, itinĕra nostra servābat. 13. Caesar servos poposcit. 14. Nos servos non poposcĭmus.

(b) 1. We have read your letters. 2. *You* were playing, but *I* was writing. 3. He has given me a beautiful book. 4. He will give you (*to you*) thanks. 5. We shall thank you. 6. I had called the boy to me.

7. Yesterday you called the girls to you. 8. We have never opened your letters.

9. I have kept my word. 10. You have never broken your word. 11. They have accused you of theft. 12. The judge has condemned us to death (215). 13. We will not accuse you of treachery. 14. We shall not remain in the city.

LESSON XLVII.

Subjunctive Mood.—Four Conjugations.

261. PARADIGM of the Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT (1st root), *may* or *can*.

<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
Am-ēm,	Mön-eām,	Rëg-ām,	Aud-iām,
Am-ēs,	Mön-eās,	Rëg-ās,	Aud-ias,
Am-ët ;	Mön-eāt ;	Rëg-āt ;	Aud-iāt ;
Am-ēmūs,	Mön-eāmūs,	Rëg-āmūs,	Aud-iamūs,
Am-ētīs,	Mön-eātīs,	Rëg-ātīs,	Aud-iātīs,
Am-ent.	Mön-eant.	Rëg-ant.	Aud-iant.

IMPERFECT (1st root), *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*.

Am-ārēm,	Mön-ērēm,	Rëg-ërēm,	Aud-irēm,
Am-ārēs,	Mön-ērēs,	Rëg-ërēs,	Aud-irēs,
Am-ārët ;	Mön-ërët ;	Rëg-ërët ;	Aud-irët ;
Am-ārēmūs,	Mön-ērēmūs,	Rëg-ërēmūs,	Aud-irēmūs,
Am-ārētīs,	Mön-ërētīs,	Rëg-ërētīs,	Aud-irētīs,
Am-ārent,	Mön-ērent.	Rëg-ērent.	Aud-irent.

PERFECT (2d root), *may have*.

Amāv-ërīm,	Mönu-ërīm,	Rex-ërīm,	Audiv-ërīm,
Amāv-ërīs,	Mönu-ërīs,	Rex-ërīs,	Audiv-ërīs,
Amāv-ërīt ;	Mönu-ërīt ;	Rex-ërīt ;	Audiv-ërīt ;
Amāv-ërīmūs,	Mönu-ërīmūs,	Rex-ërīmūs,	Audiv-ërīmūs,
Amāv-ërītīs,	Mönu-ërītīs,	Rex-ërītīs,	Audiv-ërītīs,
Amāv-ërint.	Mönu-ërint,	Rex-ërint.	Audiv-ërint.

PARADIGM—continued.

PLUPERFECT (2d root), *might, could, would, or should have.*

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Amāv-issēm,	Mōnu-issēm,	Rex-issēm,	Audīv-issēm,
Amāv-issēs,	Mōnu-issēs,	Rex-issēs,	Audīv-issēs,
Amāv-issēt;	Mōnu-issēt;	Rex-issēt;	Audīv-issēt;
Amāv-issēmūs,	Mōnu-issēmūs,	Rex-issēmūs,	Audīv-issēmūs,
Amāv-issētīs,	Mōnu-issētīs,	Rex-issētīs,	Audīv-issētīs,
Amāv-issent.	Mōnu-issent.	Rex-issent.	Audīv-issent.

REM.—It will be observed that throughout the subjunctive the 1st person sing. ends in *m*.

262. The subjunctive with *ūt* is used to express a *result*; e. g.,

Tantūm est frīgūs ūt nix nōn līquescāt.

The cold is so great that the snow does not melt.

263. The subjunctive with *ūt*, denoting result, generally depends upon a proposition which contains some word signifying *so, such, so great, &c.*; thus, in the above example, it depends upon *tantūm* (*so great, or such*).

264. Hence, in turning English into Latin, *that* after *so, such, so great, &c.*, must be translated by *ūt*, and the verb which follows must be put in the subjunctive. (See example above.)

265. When the subjunctive depends upon a verb in the *present, perfect definite, or future*, it must be put in the *present* tense, unless it represents its action as *completed* at the time denoted by the principal verb; and then it must be in the *perfect*; e. g.,

1. Tantă est puērī industriă ūt multă discăt.

The boy's industry is so great that he learns much.

2. Nesciō quid dixērīt.

I do not know what he has said.

REM.—In the first example, the subjunctive *discāt* (learns) is in the *present* tense, because the time of its action is the same as that of *est* (*pres.*) on which it depends, and in the second example *dixērīt* (he has said) is in the *perfect*, because it represents its action as *completed* at the time denoted by *nesciō* (i. e. *pres.*).

266. When the subjunctive depends upon a verb in the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, it must be put in the *imperfect* tense, unless it represents its action as completed at the time denoted by the principal verb, and then it must be in the *pluperfect*; e. g.,

1. Tantă ērăt puērī industriă ūt multă discērēt.

The boy's industry *was* so great that he *learned* much.

2. Nescīvī quid dixissēt.

I *did* not know what he *had* said.

REM.—The imperf. *discērēt* represents its action as *not completed*, while the pluperfect *dixissēt* represents its action as *completed*.

266. A few adjectives in Latin are often used merely to specify some particular part of the nouns to which they belong; e. g.,

In summō { on the highest mountain (*Lat. Id.*).

montē, { on the top of the mountain (*Eng. Id.*).

In mediīs { in the middle waters (*Lat. Id.*).

ăquīs, { in the middle (or midst) of the waters
(*Eng. Id.*).

268. VOCABULARY.

Alpēs, Alpiūm,

Alps.

Conservārē, āv,

to preserve

(*conservative*).

Frangērē, frēg,

to break.

Frīgūs, ōrīs,	cold	(<i>frigid</i>).
Ibī,	there.	
Līquescēre, licū,	to melt	(<i>liquid</i>).
Mēdiūs, ā, ūm,	middle, midst of, middle of (267).	
Nāre, av,	to swim.	
Nondūm,	not yet.	
Piscīs, īs, <i>m.</i> ,	fish.	
Summūs, ā, ūm,	highest, top (267)	(<i>summit</i>).
Tantūs, ā, ūm,	so great.	

269. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Venit ut me audiat. 2. Veni ut vos audiam. 3. Venērunt ut nos audiant. 4. Venērunt ut te audirent. 5. Ne violētis fidem. 6. In summo monte tantum est frigus ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat.

7. In summis Alpībus tantum erat frigus ut nix ibi nunquam liquesceret. 8. Venit ut patriam auro vendat. 9. Venisti ut patriam auro vendēres. 10. Avis in summa arbōre cantābat. 11. Multum voluptātis cepēram.

(b) 1. The cold is so great that the snow does not melt (265). 2. The cold has been so great that the snow has not yet melted (265). 3. The cold was so great on the top of the mountain that the snow did not melt there (266). 4. The cold was so great on the top of the Alps that the snow did not melt there (266). 5. I have come to learn. 6. You have come to play.

7. Let him keep his word. 8. Do not break your word. 9. Do not sell your country for gold. 10. On the top¹⁰ of the mountain the snow never melts. 11. On the top of the Alps the snow never melts. 12. The fish is swimming in the middle¹⁰ of the water.

LESSON XLVIII.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Verbs in io of the Third Conjugation.—Demonstrative Pronouns.

270. A FEW verbs of the third conjugation are inflected (i. e. form their tenses, numbers, and persons) in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and in the present subjunctive, like verbs of the fourth conjugation. The following is an example.

REM. In the present, first and second persons plural, the *i* in the penult is short; as, *căpîmûs, căpîtiis*.

271. Paradigm of Verbs in *iô* of the Third Conjugation.

Căpěre, to take; 1st root, căp; 2d, cěp.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Căp-iô, I take.</i>	<i>Cap-îmûs, we take.</i>
<i>Căp-îs, thou takest.</i>	<i>Cap-îtis, ye or you take.</i>
<i>Căp-ît, he takes.</i>	<i>Cap-iunt, they take.</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>Căp-iěbăm, I was taking.</i>	<i>Căp-iěbămûs, we were taking.</i>
<i>Căp-iěbăs, thou wast taking.</i>	<i>Căp-iěbătis, ye or you were taking.</i>
<i>Căp-iěbăt, he was taking.</i>	<i>Căp-iěbant, they were taking.</i>

FUTURE.

<i>Căp-iăm, I shall take.</i>	<i>Căp-iēmûs, we shall take.</i>
<i>Căp-iēs, thou wilt take.</i>	<i>Căp-iētis, ye or you will take.</i>
<i>Căp-iět, he will take.</i>	<i>Căp-ient, they will take.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Căp-iăm, I may take.</i>	<i>Căp-iāmûs, we may take.</i>
<i>Căp-iās, thou mayest take.</i>	<i>Căp-iătis, ye or you may take.</i>
<i>Căp-iăt, he may take.</i>	<i>Căp-iant, they may take.</i>

REM.—The remaining parts of the indicative and subjunctive moods, in verbs in *iō*, are entirely regular.

272. It has been stated (255) that pronouns are divided into two classes, viz., *Substantive Pronouns* and *Adjective Pronouns*.

273. Adjective pronouns are so called, because they are sometimes used as *pronouns to supply the place of nouns*, and sometimes as *adjectives to qualify nouns*. These are divided into several classes.

274. *Demonstrative Pronouns*, so called because they point out or specify the objects to which they refer, are *hic, illē, istē, is*, and *their compounds*, and are declined as follows:

1. Hīc, <i>this</i> .					
<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Hīc,	haec,	hōc.	Hī,	hae,	haec.
G. Hujūs,	hujūs,	hujūs.	Hōrūm,	hārūm,	hōrūm.
D. Huīc,	huīc,	huīc.	Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.
A. Hunc,	hanc,	hōc.	Hōs,	hās,	haec.
V.					
A. Hōc,	hāc,	hōc.	Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.
2. Illē, <i>he or that</i> .					
<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Illē,	illā,	illūd.	Illī,	illae,	illā.
G. Illiūs,	illiūs,	illiūs.	Illōrūm,	illārūm,	illōrūm.
D. Illī,	illī,	illī.	Illīs,	illīs,	illīs.
A. Illūm,	illām,	illūd.	Illōs,	illās,	illā.
V.					
A. Illō,	illā,	illō.	Illīs,	illīs,	illīs.
3. Istē, <i>that</i> .					
Istē, <i>that</i> , is declined like <i>illē</i> . It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.					

PARADIGMS—continued.

4. Is, *he or that.*(Less specific than *illē*.)

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Is,	eā,	īd.	Ī,	eae,	eā.
G. Ejūs,	ejūs,	ejūs.	Eōrūm,	eārūm,	eōrūm.
D. Eī,	eī,	eī.	Īis or eīs,	īis or eīs,	īis or eīs.
A. Eūm,	eām,	īd.	Eōs,	eās,	eā.
V.					
A. Eō,	eā,	eō.	Īis or eīs,	īis or eīs,	īis or eīs.

5. Idēm, *the same.*(Formed by annexing *dēm* to *īs*.)

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Idēm,	eādēm,	īdēm.	Idēm,	eaedēm,	eādēm.
G. Ejusdēm,	ejusdēm,	ejusdēm.	Eōrundēm,	eārundēm,	eōrundēm.
D. Eidēm,	eīdēm,	eīdēm.	Eīsdēm, or	eīsdēm, or	eīsdēm, or
A. Eundēm,	eandēm,	īdēm.	īisdēm,	īisdēm,	īisdēm.
V.			Eōsdēm,	eāsdēm,	eādēm.
A. Eōdēm,	eādēm,	eōdēm.	Eīsdēm, or	eīsdēm, or	eīsdēm, or
			īisdēm,	īisdēm,	īisdēm.

275. VOCABULARY.

Ab (<i>prep. with abl.</i>),	from.
Castră, ōrūm (<i>plur.</i>),	camp.
Cělērītēr,	quickly.
Clēmētiă, ae,	mildness, clemency.
Confūgērē (iō), confūg,	to flee for refuge.
Cūm (<i>prep. with abl.</i>),	with.
Dīmīttērē, dīmīs,	dismiss.
Ex (<i>prep. with abl.</i>),	from.
Impētūs, ūs,	attack (<i>impetus</i>).
Impērātă, ōrūm,	commands.
Lōcūs, ī,	place, position (<i>local</i>).
Mōvērē, mōv,	to move, to put in motion.

Postĕră, ūm (<i>mas. not used</i>),	next, following.
Postŭlarĕ, āv,	to demand.
Prōmittĕrĕ, prōmĭs,	to promise.
Prōmōvĕrĕ, prōmōv,	to move forward, to advance.
Vĕrō,	indeed, truly.

276. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Postĕro die castra ex eo loco movent. 2. Idem facit Caesar. 3. Idem faciēbant. 4. Ego vero istud non postŭlo. 5. Veni ut legĕrem. 6. Haec promistis. 7. Eōdem die castra promōvit.

8. Hi primi (205) cum gladiis impĕtum fecērunt. 9. Illi imperāta celerĭter fecērunt. 10. Ibi me non occidisti. 11. Eum ab se dimittit. 12. Venisti ut eum vidĕres. 13. Hunc capĭtis damnābunt. 14. Illos proditionis invĭti accusaverātis.

(b) 1. I will give you this book. 2. We prize these beautiful books very highly. 3. They think very little of those beautiful books. 4. You have condemned this man to death. 5. I will entreat him not to do (that he may not do) this.

6. I have unwillingly condemned him to death. 7. We will not accuse you of treachery. 8. You have accused him of bribery. 9. We entreated him not to accuse his son. 10. We did not make the attack. 11. They asked us to make an attack.

LESSON XLIX.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Intensive Pronoun.

277. THE *Intensive Pronoun*, *ipsĕ*, himself, is so called because it is used to render an object *emphatic*;

it is also called an *adjunctive* pronoun, because it is usually joined to a noun, or to some other pronoun; as, *Rōmŭlŭs ipsē*, Romulus himself; *tū ipsē*, you yourself.

278. *Ipsē*, when joined to a noun or pronoun, may sometimes be translated by *very*; as, *hōc ipsūm*, this *very* thing.

279. *Ipsē* is declined as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Ipsē,	ipsā,	ipsūm.	Ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsā.
G. Ipsīūs,	ipsīūs,	ipsīūs.	Ipsōrūm,	ipsārūm,	ipsōrūm.
D. Ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsī.	Ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.
A. Ipsūm,	ipsām,	ipsūm.	Ipsōs,	ipsās,	ipsā.
V.					
A. Ipsō,	ipsā,	ipsō.	Ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.

REM.—The substantive pronouns are rendered *intensive* by annexing the syllable *mēt*; as, *ēgōmēt*, I myself. In the substantive pronoun of the third person, *sēsē* is used *intensively* in the accusative and ablative of both numbers.

280. VOCABULARY.

Accēdērē, access,	to approach	(<i>access</i>).
At,	but, yet.	
Fortūnā, ae,	fortune.	
Fŭgā, ae,	flight.	
Gēnūs, gēnērīs,	kind, nature.	
Justūs, ā, ūm,	just, fair.	
Nŭmērūs, ī,	number	(<i>numerous</i>).
Occultārē, āv,	to conceal	(<i>occult</i>).
Respondērē, respond,	to answer	(<i>respond</i>).
Usquē,	as far as; <i>usque ad</i> , even to.	

281. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ipse fuga mortem vitavērat. 2. Ipse ad castra hostium accessit. 3. Ipsi usque ad castra hostium

accessērant. 4. Caius sese occultābat. 5. Servi nostri sese occultābunt. 6. Ipse dixit. 7. Hoc ipsum justum est. 8. At te eādem tua fortūna servāvit. 9. Caesar haec promīsit. 10. Ad haec legāti respondērunt.

(b) 1. He himself accused the son of the king. 2. We shall accuse the king himself. 3. You yourself gave me this book. 4. They will read this very (*ipsē*) book. 5. We ourselves will go to see the queen. 6. They have gone to see the queen herself.

7. You promised this. 8. We will ourselves do the same. 9. You have said nothing of (*de*) the nature of the war. 10. We shall say nothing of the war itself. 11. They had come to condemn me to death.

LESSON L.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.

282. THE *Relative Pronoun*, *quī*, who, is so called, because it always relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent. It is declined as follows :

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Quī,	quae,	quōd.	Quī,	quae,	quae.
G. Cujūs,	cujūs,	cujūs.	Quōrūm,	quārūm,	quōrūm.
D. Cuī,	cuī,	cuī.	Quībūs,	quībūs,	quībūs.
A. Quēm,	quām,	quōd.	Quōs,	quās,	quae.
V.					
A. Quō,	quā,	quō.	Quībūs,	quībūs,	quībūs.

283. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The relative agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*; as, Puēr quī scribīt, *the boy who writes*.

REM.—Quī is in the masculine singular, to agree with its antecedent puēr; but it is in the *nominative* because it is the subject of scribīt, and not because its antecedent is in the nominative.

284. The *Interrogative* Pronouns, quīs and quī, are so called because they are used in asking questions. Quī (which? what?) is used *adjectively*, and is declined like the relative. Quīs (who? which? what?) is generally used *substantively*, and is declined like the relative, except the forms quīs, quīd, as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Quīs,	quae,	quīd.	Quī,	quae,	quae.
G. Cujūs,	cujūs,	cujūs.	Quōrūm,	quārūm,	quōrūm.
D. Cuī,	cuī,	cuī.	Quībūs,	quībūs,	quībūs.
A. Quēm,	quām,	quīd.	Quōs,	quās,	quae.
V.					
A. Quō,	quā,	quō.	Quībūs,	quībūs,	quībūs.

285. VOCABULARY.

Ampliūs (<i>comp. adv. from ample</i>),	more, further.
Cōgītārē, āv,	to think, to think about.
Cōgnoscērē, cōgnōv,	to ascertain.
Cōrām,	openly, in person.
Exspectārē, āv,	to await, expect.
Nuntiūs, ī,	messenger.
Parvūs, ā, ūm.	little, small.
Perspīcērē, perspex,	to perceive, to see.
Plānē,	plainly.
Vōcārē, āv,	to call.

286. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Quis nos vocābit? 2. Quid dixisti? 3. Quid cogitas? 4. Quid times? 5. Quis tibi hunc librum dedit? 6. Eādem quae ex nuntiis cognovērat, coram perspīcit. 7. In qua urbe vivimus? 8. Illi, quod nemo fecērat, fecērunt. 9. Quid est quod amplius expectes? 10. Quam urbem habēmus? 11. Quis Caium proditionis (214) accūsāt? 12. Quem ambītus accusavisti? 13. Carthagīne invītus manēbo. 14. Bien-nium Romae invīti manēbant. 15. Summam prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiae texistis.

(b) 1. Whom do you love? 2. I see the slave whom you punished. 3. Who has sold his country for gold? 4. Who gave the boy this beautiful book? 5. Who will show me the way? 6. I will show you the house which my father built.

7. Which book were you reading? 8. I was reading the book which you gave me. 9. We all read to learn (that we may learn). 10. You have remained at Rome many years. 11. How much time you have lost!

LESSON LI.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Interrogative Particles.

287. *Nē* and *mūm* are interrogative particles; and when a question has no interrogative pronoun (284) or interrogative adverb, one of these particles must be used.

288. If *ně* is used, it must *follow* and be joined to some other word; and, if there is a *not* in the sentence, it must be joined to the *nōn* (not), making *nonně*; e. g.,

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Scribit <i>ně</i> Caiūs? | Is Caius writing? |
| 2. Non <i>ně</i> scribīt? | Is not he writing? |
| 3. Nū <i>m</i> scribīt Caiūs? | Is Caius writing? [No.] |

REM.—A question *with* *ně* and *without* *nōn* asks for information (Ex. 1), with *nōn* expects the answer *yes* (Ex. 2), and with *nūm* expects the answer *no* (Ex. 3); thus, *Nūm scribīt Caiūs*, means, *Caius is not writing, is he?*

289. VOCABULARY.*

Aspergĕrĕ, aspers, <i>sprinkle</i> .	accus., <i>to, into, against</i> ; with
Arā, ae, <i>altar</i> .	abl., <i>in</i> .
Auctumnūs, ī, <i>autumn</i> .	Nīdūs, ī, <i>nest</i> .
Construĕrĕ, construx, <i>to build</i> ,	Pĕriculōsūs, ā, ū <i>m</i> , <i>dangerous</i> .
<i>construct</i> .	Sanguis, īnis, <i>m., blood</i> .
Immergĕrĕ, immers, <i>to plunge</i>	Sēmĕn, īnis, <i>seed</i> .
<i>into</i> .	Spargĕrĕ, spars, <i>to scatter, to sow</i> .
In (<i>prep. with</i> accus. or abl.), with	Victimā, ae, <i>victim</i> .

290. Exercises.

(In construing, omit the *ně* or *nūm*, but make the sentence a question.)

- (a) 1. Scripsitne Caius?† 2. Num scripserātis? 3. Num rex portas urbis sua manu claudet? 4. Quid rides?

* It has been thought unnecessary longer to insert *key-words* in the Vocabularies, but it is hoped the pupil will still continue to accustom himself to associate with his Latin at least some of the more common English words which have been derived from it.

† In construing a question, the auxiliary verb (*does, do, did, has, have*) must be put before the subject; as, *Scripsitne puer*, *Has the boy written?* or, *Did the boy write?*

5. Caius se in flumen immersit. 6. Periculōsum est hiēme se in flumen immergēre. 7. Puer se in flumen immergat. 8. *Agricolārum est*⁷ semīna auctumno spargēre. 9. Nonnē in *summīs Alpibus* tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat? 10. Sacerdos victimārum sanguīne aram aspersit. 11. Nonnē boni est pastōris⁷ tondēre oves, non deglubēre?

(b) 1. Does he live to eat? [No.] 2. Does not he eat to live? 3. The husbandman has scattered seeds. 4. Have not the husbandmen scattered seeds? 5. He has plunged the body into *the middle of the waters*. 6. Let fish swim in the *midst of the waters*. 7. They *have come* to condemn (239) you *to death*.⁸ 8. Can he swim in the *middle of the waters*?¹⁰ [No.] 9. The boy's industry is so-great, that he can learn all things. 10. Has not a wolf bitten the sheep? 11. Are you shearing the sheep?

LESSON LII.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Pronouns, Indefinite and Possessive.

291. *Indefinite Pronouns* are so called because they do not definitely specify the objects to which they refer; e. g., *quīdām*, a certain one; *āliquis*, some one; *quisquē*, every one; *siquis*, if any, &c.

292. The *indefinite pronouns* are compounds either of *quis* or *quī*, and are declined in nearly the same manner as the simple pronouns.

293. *Quīdām*, compounded of *quī* and *dām*, is declined like *quī*, except in the neuter singular, where it

takes *quīd* (instead of *quōd*) when used *substantively* and in the accusative singular and genitive plural, where *m* before *d* is changed into *n*; as, *quendām* (not *quem-dām*), *quōrundām* (not *quōrumdām*).

294. *Aliquīs*, compounded of *aliūs* and *quīs*, is declined like *quīs*, except in the neuter singular, nominative and accusative, where it has *āliquōd* adjective, and *āliquīd* substantive; and in the feminine singular and neuter plural, where it has *āliquā*. It is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	<i>Aliquīs,</i>	<i>āliquā,</i>	<i>āliquōd or āliquīd.</i>
G.	<i>Aliqujūs,</i>	<i>ālicujūs,</i>	<i>ālicujūs.</i>
D.	<i>Alicuī,</i>	<i>ālicuī,</i>	<i>ālicuī.</i>
A.	<i>Aliquēm,</i>	<i>āliquām,</i>	<i>āliquōd or āliquīd.</i>
V.			
A.	<i>Aliquō,</i>	<i>āliquā,</i>	<i>āliquō.</i>
PLURAL.			
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	<i>Aliquī,</i>	<i>āliquae,</i>	<i>āliquā.</i>
G.	<i>Aliquōrūm,</i>	<i>āliquārūm,</i>	<i>āliquōrūm.</i>
D.	<i>Aliquībūs,</i>	<i>āliquībūs,</i>	<i>āliquībūs.</i>
A.	<i>Aliquōs,</i>	<i>āliquās,</i>	<i>āliquā.</i>
V.			
A.	<i>Aliquībūs,</i>	<i>āliquībūs,</i>	<i>āliquībūs.</i>

295. The *Possessive Pronouns* (so called because they denote possession), *meūs, meā, meūm*; *tuūs, tuā, tuūm*; *suūs, suā, suūm*; *nostēr, nostrā, nostrūm*; *vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm*, are declined, as we have already seen (114, REM. 3), like adjectives of the first and second declension.

296. VOCABULARY.

A (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), <i>from.</i>	Indicĕrĕ, indix, <i>to declare (as war).</i>
Argentŭm, ī, <i>silver.</i>	Infligĕrĕ, inflix, <i>inflict.</i>
Conciliŭm, ī, <i>council.</i>	Sī, <i>if.</i>
Continĕrĕ, ū, <i>to restrain, confine.</i>	Ullŭs, ā, ūm (113, REM.), <i>any.</i>
Culpā, ae, <i>fault.</i>	Vulnŭs, ĕris, <i>wound.</i>

297. Exercises.

(a) 1. Alīquid tempōris invītus amittes. 2. Non est tua ulla culpa, si te alīqui timuērunt. 3. Alīquis est in horto tuo. 4. Caesar suos a proelio continēbat. 5. Legātos ad Caesārem misit. 6. Legāti ad concilium venērunt. 7. Christianōrum est fidem suam servāre. 8. Turpe est patriae tuae leges violāre. 9. Rex urbi bellum indīcet. 10. Anguis agricōlae vulnus infligēbat. 11. Tanta est industria tua, ut multa discas. 12. Tanta fuit industria tua ut multa discĕrēs.

(b) 1. Some one has accused you of bribery. 2. They have accused certain persons of theft. 3. He will condemn some one to death. 4. We have lost some time. 5. The shepherd has sold his dog for gold. 6. It is the duty of a father to instruct his sons. 7. Who has accused you of theft? 8. No one has accused me of theft. 9. Some one has accused you of treachery. 10. Who has accused me of treachery? 11. The king himself has accused you of treachery.

LESSON LIII.

Verb.—Essĕ.

298. THE verb *essĕ*, to be, is called a substantive verb, except when used as an auxiliary in the passive

voice (not yet examined) of other verbs. Its conjugation is quite irregular.

299. Paradigm of the verb Essě.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*am*).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Sŭm, <i>I am.</i>	Sŭmŭs, <i>we are.</i>
Es, <i>thou art.</i>	Estis, <i>you are.</i>
Est, <i>he is.</i>	Sunt, <i>they are.</i>

IMPERFECT (*was*).

Erām, <i>I was.</i>	Erāmŭs, <i>we were.</i>
Erās, <i>thou wast.</i>	Erātis, <i>you were.</i>
Erāt, <i>he was.</i>	Erant, <i>they were.</i>

FUTURE (*shall or will be*).

Erō, <i>I shall be.</i>	Erimŭs, <i>we shall be.</i>
Erīs, <i>thou wilt be.</i>	Eritis, <i>you will be.</i>
Erīt, <i>he will be.</i>	Erunt, <i>they will be.</i>

PERFECT (*have been or was*).

Fuī, <i>I have been.</i>	Fuīmŭs, <i>we have been.</i>
Fuistī, <i>thou hast been.</i>	Fuistis, <i>you have been.</i>
Fuīt, <i>he has been.</i>	Fuērunt, <i>they have been.</i>
	Fuērē, <i>they have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT (*had been*).

Fuērām, <i>I had been.</i>	Fuērāmŭs, <i>we had been.</i>
Fuērās, <i>thou hadst been.</i>	Fuērātis, <i>you had been.</i>
Fuērāt, <i>he had been.</i>	Fuērant, <i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall or will have been*).

Fuērō, <i>I shall have been.</i>	Fuērīmŭs, <i>we shall have been.</i>
Fuērīs, <i>thou wilt have been.</i>	Fuērītis, <i>you will have been.</i>
Fuērīt, <i>he will have been.</i>	Fuērint, <i>they will have been.</i>

PARADIGM—continued.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*may or can be*).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Sim, <i>I may be.</i>	Simūs, <i>we may be.</i>
Sīs, <i>thou mayest be.</i>	Sītīs, <i>you may be.</i>
Sīt, <i>he may be.</i>	Sint, <i>they may be.</i>

IMPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should be*).

Essēm, <i>I might be.</i>	Essēmūs, <i>we might be.</i>
Essēs, <i>thou mightest be.</i>	Essētīs, <i>you might be.</i>
Essēt, <i>he might be.</i>	Essent, <i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT (*may have been*).

Fuērīm, <i>I may have been.</i>	Fuērīmūs, <i>we may have been.</i>
Fuērīs, <i>thou mayest have been.</i>	Fuērītīs, <i>you may have been.</i>
Fuērīt, <i>he may have been.</i>	Fuērint, <i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should have been*).

Fuissēm, <i>I might have been.</i>	Fuissēmūs, <i>we might have been.</i>
Fuissēs, <i>thou mightest have been.</i>	Fuissētīs, <i>you might have been.</i>
Fuissēt, <i>he might have been.</i>	Fuissent, <i>they might have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.*

Es, or estō, <i>be thou.</i>	Estē or estōtē, <i>be ye.</i>
Estō, <i>let him be.</i>	Suntō, <i>let them be.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT,	Essē, <i>to be.</i>
PERFECT,	Fuissē, <i>to have been.</i>
FUTURE,	Fūtūrūs (ā, ūm) essē, <i>to be about to be.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE,	Fūtūrūs, ā, ūm, <i>about to be.</i>
---------	-------------------------------------

* The remaining forms are given here in order to complete the Paradigm of the verb *essē*, although the nature and use of the *imperative* and *infinitive* moods, and of the *participles*, have not yet been examined; a word of explanation will be sufficient for this place.

300. The *Imperative Mood* denotes a command, and of course is never used in the first person.

301. The *Infinitive Mood*, as we have already seen (9), represents simply the meaning of the verb, without person or number. It has three tenses, *present*, *perfect*, and *future*.

302. The *Participle* is that part of the verb which has the form and inflection of an adjective; thus, the participle *fūtūrŭs*, *ā*, *ŭm*, is declined like the adjective *bŏnŭs*, *ā*, *ŭm* (112).

303. VOCABULARY.

Absolvĕrĕ, absolvi, *to acquit*.

Admirātiŏ, ōnĭs, *admiration*.

Brĕvĭs, ĕ, *short*.

Dĭgnŭs, ā, ŭm, *worthy*.

Ferrŭm, ĭ, *iron*.

Hābitārĕ, āv, *to dwell, to inhabit*.

Hŏnŏr, ōrĭs, *honor*.

Incertŭs, ā, ŭm, *uncertain*.

Indĭgnŭs, ā, ŭm, *unworthy*.

Mens, tĭs, *mind, reasoning faculty*.

Opŭs, ĕrĭs, *work*.

Tranquillŭs, ā, ŭm, *calm, tranquil*.

Utilis, ĕ, *useful*.

304. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mens sapientis semper erit tranquilla. 2. Est tuum* iter facĕre. 3. Puer in horto fuĕrat. 4. His honorĭbus (181) digni sitis. 5. Caius vita indĭgnus est. 6. Ferrum et aurum sunt utilia. 7. Haec opĕra sunt admiratiŏne digna. 8. Vita est brevis et incerta. 9. Improbŏrum⁷ est malos laudāre. 10. Venĭmus ut patriae tuae leges violārĕmus. 11. Veniant servi ut portas urbis claudant. 12. Multos annos Romae habitaverātis.

(b) 1. The good will be happy. 2. May you be happy. 3. We all might have been happy. 4. It is

* Est tuŭm, it is yours; i. e., your duty.

my duty to keep the laws of my country. 5. May he ever be worthy of this honor. 6. He would have been unworthy of his father.

7. He had been king many years. 8. We will never praise the bad. 9. They will condemn us to death. 10. We will never accuse the good. 11. He had broken his arm at Athens. 12. Virtue is the highest wisdom. 13. We will acquit you of bribery (214.)

LESSON LIV.

Verb Essē, continued.—Comparison of Adjectives.

305. ADJECTIVES in Latin, as in English, may express different degrees of the quality which they denote; e. g.,

Altūs,	altiōr,	altissimūs.
High,	higher,	highest.

REM.—In this example, *altūs* (high) is said to be in the *positive degree*; *altiōr*, in the *comparative*; and *altissimūs*, in the *superlative*.

306. In Latin, adjectives are compared by adding to the root of the positive the following endings:

<i>Comparative.</i>			<i>Superlative.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
iōr,	iōr,	iūs.	issimūs,	issimā,	issimūm.
<i>Examples.</i>	<i>Root.</i>		<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>	
Altūs (<i>high</i>),	alt.		altiōr (iōr, iūs),	altissimūs (ā, ūm).	
Mītis (<i>mild</i>),	mīt.		mītiōr (iōr, iūs),	mītissimūs (ā, ūm).	

REM. 1.—Adjectives in *ēr* add *rimūs* (ā, ūm) to the positive, to form the superlative; e. g.,

Pulchēr,	pulchriōr,	pulcherrimūs.
----------	------------	---------------

REM. 2.—A few adjectives in *lis* form the superlative by adding *līmūs* to the root of the positive; e. g.,

REM.—The superlative may often be best translated by *very* instead of *most*; as, *mons altissimŭs*, a very high mountain.

310. VOCABULARY.

Amplŭs, ă, ŭm, <i>extensive, great.</i>	Ignorātiŏ, ōnīs, <i>ignorance.</i>
Argentŭm, ī, <i>silver.</i>	Mălŭm, ī, <i>an evil.</i>
Cēlēbēr, brīs, brē, <i>celebrated.</i>	Prētiŏsŭs, ă, ŭm, <i>valuable.</i>
Cīcērŏ, ōnīs, <i>Cicero.</i>	Quām, <i>than.</i>
Divīnŭs, ă, ŭm, <i>divine.</i>	Quām maxīmŭs, ă, ŭm, <i>as great</i>
Fūtūrŭs, ă, ŭm, <i>future.</i>	<i>as possible.</i>
Grāvīs, ě, <i>heavy.</i>	Rātiŏ, ōnīs, <i>reason.</i>
Impendērē, <i>to overhang, to</i>	Scientiă, ae, <i>knowledge.</i>
<i>threaten.</i>	Turrīs, īs, <i>tower.</i>

311. Exercises.

(a) 1. Aurum gravius est argento. 2. Ignoratio futurŏrum malŏrum utilior est quam scientia. 3. Difficillī-mum est iram placāre. 4. In summīs montībus ¹⁰ acer-rimum est frigus.

5. Vēniunt ut copias compărent. 6. Vēnit ut quam maxīmas⁹ copias comparāret. 7. Turris est altior muro. 8. Quid est in homīne ratiŏne divinius? 9. Mons al-tissīmus impendēbat. 10. Cicēro erat orătŏr celeberrīmus. 11. Romāni ampliŏres copias expectābant.

(b) 1. Gold is very heavy. 2. Gold is more valua-ble than silver. 3. Wisdom is more valuable than gold and silver. 4. You are building a very high wall. 5. You have your wall higher than your tower. 6. We shall raise very large forces. 7. You have raised larger forces than the king himself.

8. We have come to raise as large forces as possible.⁹ 9. Let them raise as large forces as possible. 10. It is⁶ very easy to keep one's word. 11. It is easier to keep one's word than to appease anger. 12. Who was more celebrated than Cicero? 13. He was a very cele-brated orator.

LESSON LV.

Compounds of Essě.—Comparison of Adverbs.—Numeral Adjectives.

312. THE compounds of *essě* (except *possě*, to be able, which is irregular, and will be noticed hereafter) are conjugated like the simple *essě*. *prōdessě*, however (compounded of *prō*, for, and *essě*, to be), inserts *d* after *prō* in those parts which in the simple verb begin with *e*; as,

Pres. Prōsūm, prōdēs, prōdest, prōsūmūs, prōdestīs, prōsunt, &c.

313. The compounds of *essě* (except *possě*) are followed by the dative, as they take *only* an indirect object (82 and 643, 2); e. g.,

Mihĭ prōfuĭt.

It profited me (*did good to me*).

REM.—Here it is plain that *mihĭ* (to me) is not a *direct*, but only an *indirect* object.

314. Most adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison: the comparative of the adverb being the same as the neuter comparative of the adjective, and the superlative being formed from that of the adjective by changing the ending *ūs* into *ē*; as,

Adj. Altūs, altiōr (iūs *neut.*), altissīmūs.

Adv. Altē, altiūs, altissimē.

NUMERALS.

315. Numerals comprise,

(a) Numeral adjectives, consisting of three distinct classes; viz.,

- 1) *Cardinals*, which denote simply the *number* of objects; as, *ūnūs*, one; *duō*, two, &c.
- 2) *Ordinals*, which denote the *position* of any object in a *series*; as, *prīmūs*, first; *secundūs*, second.
- 3) *Distributives*, which denote the *number* of objects which are taken *at a time*; as, *singŭlī*, one by one; *bīnī*, two by two.

(b) Numeral adverbs; as, *sēmēl*, once; *bīs*, twice.
(See Numerals, 583.)

316. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs; e. g., *Milēs fortītēr pŭgnāt*, *the soldier fights bravely*. *Haud diffīcīlis*, *not difficult*.

317. (a) The first three cardinals, *ūnūs*, *duō*, and *trēs*, are declined as follows:

1. Paradigm of *ūnūs*, *one*.

N. Unūs,	ūnā,	ūnūm.	Unī,	ūnae,	ūnā.
G. Unīūs,	ūnīūs,	ūnīūs.	Unōrŭm,	ūnārŭm,	ūnōrŭm.
D. Unī,	ūnī,	ūnī.	Unīs,	ūnīs,	ūnīs.
A. Unūm,	ūnām,	ūnūm.	Unōs,	ūnās,	ūnā.
V. Unē,	ūnā,	ūnūm.			
A. Unō,	ūnā,	ūnō.	Unīs,	ūnīs,	ūnīs.

REM.—The plural of *ūnūs*, as a numeral, is used only with nouns which have no singular.

2. Paradigms of *duō*, *two*, and *trēs*, *three*.

N. Duō,	duae,	duō.	Trēs (m. & f.),	triā.
G. Duōrŭm,	duārŭm,	duōrŭm.	Triŭm,	triŭm.
D. Duōbŭs,	duābŭs,	duōbŭs.	Tribŭs,	tribŭs.
A. Duōs and } duō,	duās,	duō.	Trēs,	triā.
V. Duō,	duae,	duō.	Trēs,	triā.
A. Duōbŭs,	duābŭs,	duōbŭs.	Tribŭs,	tribŭs.

REM.—Trēs is declined like the plural of tristis (153).

(b) Cardinal numbers, from four to one hundred, are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bōnūs* (112); e. g., *dūcentī*, ae, ā, *two hundred*.

318. Ordinals are declined like *bōnūs*. Distributives are declined like the plural of *bōnūs*.

319. Whenever the same noun belongs to both members of a comparison in Latin, it is generally expressed in the first and omitted in the second; in English, however, it is expressed in the first, and represented in the second by the pronoun *that* or *those*; e. g.,

Mārīs sūpĕrfīciēs majōr est quā̄m terrae.

The sea's surface is greater than (*that**) of the land.

REM.—Hence, in translating English into Latin, *that*, *those*, after *than*, should be omitted.

320. VOCABULARY.

Concertārē, āy, <i>to contend, quarrel.</i>	Omnīnō, <i>altogether, in all.</i>
Contīnuūs, ā, ūm, <i>successive.</i>	Prōdessē, prōfu, <i>to do good, to profit.</i>
Dēcēm, <i>ten.</i>	Prōducērē, prōdux, <i>to lead forward or out.</i>
Dēcīmūs, ā, ūm, <i>tenth.</i>	Quartūs, ā, ūm, <i>fourth.</i>
Duō, duae, duō, <i>two.</i>	Quinquē, <i>five.</i>
Intēressē, interfu, <i>to be engaged in.</i>	Sūpĕrfīciēs, ēī, <i>surface.</i>
Mārē, īs, <i>sea.</i>	Terrā, ae, <i>earth.</i>
Obessē, obfu, <i>to be prejudicial to.</i>	

321. Exercises.

(a) 1. Milītes fortīter pignant. 2. Romāni fortius quam hostes pugnavērunt. 3. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit. 4. Erant omnīno itinēra duo. 5. Caesar *quam max-*

* Here *that* stands for *the surface*.

imas copias comparaverat. 6. Caius, vir summo ingenio praeditus, Romae habitat. 7. Servus meus proelio interfuit. 8. Fides plurimis profuit. 9. Christianorum est⁷ avaritiam damnare. 10. Caius multis proeliis interfuerat. 11. Terrae superficies minor est quam maris. 12. Caesar decimam legionem misit.

(b) 1. They will fight bravely. 2. You fought more bravely than the Romans. 3. The king himself was engaged in the battle. 4. He fought very bravely. 5. Ten legions were engaged in the first battle. 6. The soldiers of the tenth legion fought more bravely than those^h of the fourth. 7. Anger has often *been prejudicial* to states. 8. It is the part of a Christian to do good to as many as possible. 9. Caesar raised the greatest forces possible. 10. Many states relying on their strength will raise forces.

LESSON LVI.

Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for continued Action.

322. A TRANSITIVE verb (72) may represent its subject,

- 1) As acting upon some object; as, *Pătěr fīliūm dōcēt*, *the father teaches his son*; it is then said to be in the *Active Voice*.
- 2) As acted upon by some other person or thing; as, *Fīliūs ā pătrē dōcētūr*, *the son is taught by his father*; it is then said to be in the *Passive Voice*.

REM.—The forms which have been used in the previous exercises all belong to the active voice: we shall now consider the formation and use of the passive.

323. The third persons (singular and plural) of the tenses for continued action (190), both in the indicative and subjunctive moods, are formed in the passive voice, by adding the ending *ūr* to the corresponding forms of the active.

a) But observe that the vowel before the *t* in the singular is long, except from *ūt* in the third conjugation, and from *ābūt* and *ēbūt*.

324. The following table presents the formation of the third persons of the passive in the moods and tenses just mentioned.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (1st root), *is, are loved, &c.*

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Am-āt,	Mön-ēt,	Rëg-īt,	Aud-īt,
Am-ātūr.	Mön-ētūr.	Rëg-ītūr.	Aud-ītūr.
Am-ant,	Mön-ent,	Rëg-unt,	Aud-iunt,
Am-antūr.	Mön-entūr.	Rëg-untūr.	Aud-iuntūr.

IMPERFECT (1st root), *was, were loved, &c.*

Am-ābāt,	Mön-ēbāt,	Rëg-ēbāt,	Aud-iēbāt,
Am-ābātūr.	Mön-ēbātūr.	Rëg-ēbātūr.	Aud-iēbātūr.
Am-ābant,	Mön-ēbant,	Rëg-ēbant,	Aud-iēbant,
Am-ābantūr.	Mön-ēbantūr.	Rëg-ēbantūr.	Aud-iēbantūr.

FUTURE (1st root), *shall or will be loved.*

Am-ābīt,	Mön-ēbīt,	Rëg-ēt,	Aud-iēt,
Am-ābītūr.	Mön-ēbītūr.	Rëg-ētūr.	Aud-iētūr.
Am-ābunt,	Mön-ēbunt,	Rëg-ent,	Aud-ient,
Am-ābuntūr.	Mön-ēbuntūr.	Rëg-entūr.	Aud-ientūr.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (1st root), *may or can be loved.*

Am-ēt,	Mön-eāt,	Rëg-āt,	Aud-iāt,
Am-ētūr.	Mön-eātūr.	Rëg-ātūr.	Aud-iātūr.
Am-ent,	Mön-eant,	Rëg-ant,	Aud-iant,
Am-entūr.	Mön-eantūr.	Rëg-antūr.	Aud-iantūr.

PARADIGM—*continued.*IMPERFECT (1st root), *might, could, &c., be loved.*

Am-ārēt,	Mōn-ērēt,	Rēg-ērēt,	Aud-īrēt,
Am-ārētūr.	Mōn-ērētūr.	Rēg-ērētūr.	Aud-īrētūr.
Am-ārent,	Mōn-ērent,	Rēg-ērent,	Aud-īrent,
Am-ārentūr.	Mōn-ērentūr.	Rēg-ērentūr.	Aud-īrentūr.

325. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Passive verbs are followed by the same cases as the active, except the direct object, which becomes the subject of the passive (322); e. g.,

Act. Illī Balbūm furtī accūsant.
They accuse Balbus of theft.

Pass. Balbūs āb illīs furtī accūsātūr.
Balbus is accused of theft by them.

REM.—Observe that the agent is put in the ablative with *āb* (ab illis); *a*, however, is often used before a consonant.

326. VOCABULARY.

Cōlērē, ū, <i>to cultivate, to practise.</i>	Rhēnūs, ī, <i>Rhine, a river.</i>
Dēmōstrārē. āv, <i>to show.</i>	Rēl'quīs, ā, ūm, <i>the rest, the other.</i>
Interficērē (iō), interfēc, <i>to kill, to slay.</i>	Sex, <i>six.</i>
Mittērē, mīs, <i>to send.</i>	Sūprā, <i>above.</i>
Prō (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), <i>for, before.</i>	Tangērē, tētīg, <i>to touch, reach.</i>
	Unūs, ā, ūm, <i>one, single, single one.</i>

327. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius filios docet. 2. Filii a Caio docentur. 3. Legātos ad Caesārem mittent. 4. Legāti ad Caesārem mittentur. 5. Mittantur legāti. 6. Relīquas sex legiōnes pro castris in acie constituet. 7. Caium capītis damnābunt. 8. Caius capītis damnabitur. 9. Haec civitas Rhenum tangit. 10. Haec civitas Rhenum, ut supra demonstravīmus, tangit. 11. Virtus ab omnībus colātur.

(b) 1. Balbus will kill Caius. 2. He will be killed by Balbus. 3. Caius accuses me of theft. 4. I am accused of theft by Caius. 5. Let him be accused of bribery. 6. Let them be condemned to death. 7. They are killed in the first battle. 8. Let not the king be condemned to death. 9. The law will be broken. 10. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men)? 11. Let not the laws of the city be broken by us.

LESSON LVII.

Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Completed Action.

328. THE tenses for completed action in the passive voice are called *Compound Forms*, and consist of the perfect participle with certain parts of the verb *essē* (299). We must accordingly notice here the formation of this participle.

329. The perfect participle is formed from what is called the *third root*, by the addition of the ending *ūs* (ă, ūm), and is declined like *bōnūs*.

330. The third root is formed from the first,

- 1) In the first, second, and fourth conjugations by the addition of the respective endings, *āt*, *īt*, and *īt*; e. g.,

Amārē,	ăm,	ămāt.
Mōnērē,	mōn,	mōnīt.
Audīrē,	aud,	audīt.

- 2) In the third conjugation, by the addition of *t*, or sometimes *s* (especially to the *t*-sounds).

- a) Any *p*-sound before *t* is *p* (i. e., *pt* or *bt* becomes *pt*).
 b) Any *k*-sound before *t* is *c* (i. e., *ct*, *gt*, or *qut* becomes *ct*).
 c) *D*, and sometimes *g*, is dropped before *s* (see 208, c, and 211).

Scribĕrĕ,	scrib,	script (<i>b</i> changed to <i>p</i>).
Rĕgĕrĕ,	rĕg,	rect (<i>g</i> changed to <i>c</i>).
Claudĕrĕ,	claud,	claus (<i>d</i> dropped).

331. The third persons singular of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of the passive indicative are formed respectively from the third singular of the present, imperfect, and future* of the indicative of the verb *essĕ* and the perfect participle; and the plural is formed in the same way, by using the plural of the participle and verb.

332. The third persons of the perfect and pluperfect passive subjunctive, are formed by a similar combination of the perfect passive participle with the third persons of the present and imperfect† subjunctive of *essĕ*.

PARADIGM.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Amāre.	Mōnĕrĕ.	Rĕgĕrĕ.	Audirĕ.
1st root, <i>ām</i> ,	1st root, <i>mōn</i> ,	1st root, <i>rĕg</i> ,	1st root, <i>aud</i> ,
3d " <i>āmāt</i> .	3d " <i>mōnīt</i> .	3d " <i>rect</i> .	3d " <i>audīt</i> .
INDICATIVE MOOD.			
PERFECT (<i>has been or was loved, &c.</i>).			
S. | Amātūs† est,	Mōnītūs est,	Rectūs est,	Audītūs est,
P. | Amātī† sunt.	Mōnītī sunt.	Rectī sunt.	Audītī sunt.

* Instead of the present, imperfect, and future, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect are sometimes used.

† Instead of the present and imperfect, the perfect and pluperfect are sometimes used.

‡ These participles, which, it must be remembered, are declined like *bōnūs* (302), are always of the same gender and number as the subject of the verb, thus:

PARADIGM—*continued.*PLUPERFECT (*had been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amātūs ērāt,	Mōnītūs ērāt,	Rectūs ērāt,	Auditūs ērāt,
P.	Amāti ērant.	Mōnītī ērant.	Rectī ērant.	Auditī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall or will have been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amātūs ērit,	Mōnītūs ērit,	Rectūs ērit,	Auditūs ērit,
P.	Amāti ērunt.	Mōnītī ērunt.	Rectī ērunt.	Auditī ērunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PERFECT (*may have been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amātūs sīt,	Mōnītūs sīt,	Rectūs sīt,	Audit. s sīt,
P.	Amāti sint.	Mōnītī sint.	Rectī sint.	Auditī sint.

PLUPERFECT (*might have been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amātūs essēt,	Mōnītūs essēt,	Rectūs essēt,	Auditūs essēt,
P.	Amāti essent.	Mōnītī essent.	Rectī essent.	Auditī essent.

333. VOCABULARY.

Aestīmārē, āv, āt, <i>to value, to prize.</i>	Interficērē (iō), fēc, fect, <i>to kill.</i>
Collōquiūm, ī, <i>conference, meeting.</i>	Intērīm, <i>in the mean time, meanwhile.</i>
Conspicērē (iō), conspex, conspect, <i>to see, discover.</i>	Lēnis, ē, <i>mild, merciful.</i>
Dēcernērē, dēcrēv, dēcrēt, <i>to decree.</i>	Lītērae, ārūm (pl.), <i>letter, epistle.</i>
Dicērē, dix, dict, <i>to say, speak, name.</i>	Mittērē, mīs, miss, <i>to send.</i>
Fācērē (iō), fēc, fact, <i>to do, make, perform.</i>	Pārārē, āv, āt, <i>to prepare.</i>
Frangērē, frēg, fract, <i>to break, to violate.</i>	Quintūs, ā, ūm, <i>fifth.</i>
	Sēcundūs, ā, ūm, <i>second.</i>
	Sententiā, ae, <i>sentiment.</i>
	Supplicātiō, ōnis, <i>thanksgiving.</i>
	Vīgintī, <i>twenty.</i>

Amātūs est, *he has been loved.*

Amātā est, *she has been loved.*

Amātūm est, *it has been loved.*

Amātī sunt, *they (men) have been loved.*

Amātae sunt, *they (women) have been loved.*

Amātā sunt, *they (things) have been loved.*

334. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Supplicatio decreta est. 2. Mors omnibus parata est. 3. Dies colloquio dictus erat ex eo die quintus. 4. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt. 5. Faciam id quod est lenius et utilius. 6. Mittuntur ad Caesarem a Balbo litterae. 7. Interim milites legionum duarum ab hostibus conspiciebantur. 8. Milites legionum duarum conspecti sunt.

(b) 1. A thanksgiving had been decreed to Caesar. 2. Twenty soldiers of the tenth legion had been killed in the second battle. 3. Money has ever been valued very highly. 4. Has not money always been valued very highly? 5. Were not the laws broken at Athens? 6. The laws had been broken at Rome. 7. We will appoint the tenth day for a conference. 8. Messengers had been sent to the king. 9. A soldier was sent to the king.

LESSON LVIII.

Indicative Mood of the Passive Voice.

335. THE persons of the tenses for continued action in the indicative and subjunctive moods may be formed from the corresponding parts of the active, as follows:

- a) The first persons, by dropping the final consonant (when there is one), and adding *r*; e. g.,

Amō (*act.*), amōr (*pass. r added*).

Amābām (*act.*), amābār (*pass. m dropped, r added*).

- b) The second persons, by changing *s* (*sing.*) into *rīs* (or *rē*), and *tīs* (*plur.*) into *mīnī*; e. g.,

Amās (*act.*), ămārīs (or rē) (*pass. s changed to rīs or rē*).

Amātīs (*act.*), ămāmīnī (*pass. tīs “ “ mīnī*).

c) The third persons, by adding ūr (323); e. g.,

Amăt (*act.*), ămătūr (*pass. ūr added*).

Amant (*act.*), ămantūr (*pass. ūr added*).

336. The personal endings of the tenses for continued action, in the indicative and subjunctive moods, active and passive, are as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Act.	ō, m,	s,	t,	mūs,	tīs,	nt,
Pass.	r.	rīs, rē.	tūr.	mūr.	mīnī.	ntūr.

337. The first and second persons of the passive may accordingly be formed directly from the third (as already obtained), by changing its ending into those of the first and second, and observing the same principles for vowel changes as apply to the active (248); e. g.,

	<i>3d Pers.</i>	<i>1st Pers.</i>	<i>2d Pers.</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	Amătūr,	ămōr (<i>vowel changed</i>)	ămārīs (rē).
<i>Plur.</i>	Amantūr,	ămāmūr,	ămāmīnī.

338. The first and second persons of the tenses for completed action may be obtained directly from the third person, by simply changing the third person of the proper tense of *esse* into the first and second; e. g.,

<i>Sing.</i>	Amătūs est,	ămătūs sūm,	ămătūs ēs.
<i>Plur.</i>	Amătī sunt,	amătī sūmūs,	ămătī estīs.

339. Paradigm of the Indicative Passive.

PRESENT (1st root), <i>am loved, &c.</i>			
Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Am-ör,	Mön-eör,	Rëg-ör,	Aud-iör,
Am-är̄is (rë),	Mön-ēr̄is (rë),	Rëg-ēr̄is (rë),	Aud-iēr̄is (rë),
Am-ā'ūr ;	Mön-ētūr ;	Rëg-i'ūr ;	Aud-i'tūr ;
Am-āmūr,	Mön-ēmūr,	Rëg-īmūr,	Aud-i'mūr,
Am-āmīnī,	Mön-ēmīnī,	Rëg-imīnī,	Aud-i'mīnī,
Am-antūr.	Mön-entūr.	Rëg-untūr.	Aud-juntūr.
IMPERFECT (1st root), <i>was loved, &c.</i>			
Am-ābär,	Mön-ēbär,	Rëg-ēbär,	Aud-iēbär,
Am-ābār̄is (rë),	Mön-ēbār̄is (rë),	Rëg-ēbār̄is (rë),	Aud-iēbār̄is (rë),
Am-ābā'ūr ;	Mön-ēbā'ūr ;	Rëg-ēbā'ūr ;	Aud-iēbā'ūr ;
Am-ābāmūr,	Mön-ēbāmūr,	Rëg-ēbāmūr,	Aud-iēbāmūr,
Am-ābāmīnī,	Mön-ēbāmīnī,	Rëg-ēbāmīnī,	Aud-iēbāmīnī,
Am-ābantūr.	Mön-ēbantūr.	Rëg-ēbantūr.	Aud-iēbantūr.
FUTURE (1st root), <i>shall or will be loved.</i>			
Am-ābör,	Mön-ēbör,	Rëg-är,	Aud-iär,
Am-ābēr̄is (rë),	Mön-ēbēr̄is (rë),	Rëg-ēr̄is (rë),	Aud-iēr̄is (rë),
Am-ābī'ūr ;	Mön-ēbī'ūr ;	Rëg-ētūr ;	Aud-iē'ūr ;
Am-ābīmūr,	Mön-ēbīmūr,	Rëg-ēmūr,	Aud-iēmūr,
Am-ābīmīnī,	Mön-ēbīmīnī,	Rëg-ēmīnī,	Aud-iēmīnī,
Am-ābuntūr.	Mön-ēbuntūr.	Rëg-entūr.	Aud-iēntūr.
PERFECT (3d root, <i>perf. part. and sūm*</i>), <i>was or have been loved.</i>			
Amāt-ūs sūm,*	Mönīt-ūs sūm,	Rect-ūs sūm,	Audīt-ūs sūm,
Amāt-ūs ës,	Mönīt-ūs ës,	Rect-ūs ës,	Audīt-ūs ës,
Amāt-ūs est ;	Mönīt-ūs est ;	Rect-ūs est ;	Audīt-ūs est ;
Amāt-i sūmūs,	Mönīt-i sūmūs,	Rect-i sūmūs,	Audīt-i sūmūs,
Amāt-i estīs,	Mönīt-i estīs,	Rect-i estīs,	Audīt-i estīs,
Amāt-i sunt.	Mönīt-i sunt.	Rect-i sunt.	Audīt-i sunt.
PLUPERFECT (3d root, <i>perf. part. and ērām†</i>), <i>had been loved.</i>			
Amāt-ūs ērām,†	Mönīt-ūs ērām,	Rect-ūs ērām,	Audīt-ūs ērām,
Amāt-ūs ērās,	Mönīt-ūs ērās,	Rect-ūs ērās,	Audīt-ūs ērās,
Amāt-ūs ērāt ;	Mönīt-ūs ērāt ;	Rect-ūs ērāt ;	Audīt-ūs ērāt ;
Amāt-i ērāmūs,	Mönīt-i ērāmūs,	Rect-i ērāmūs,	Audīt-i ērāmūs,
Amāt-i ērātīs,	Mönīt-i ērātīs,	Rect-i ērātīs,	Audīt-i ērātīs,
Amāt-i ērant.	Mönīt-i ērant.	Rect-i ērant.	Audīt-i ērant.

* *Fui* is sometimes used instead of *sūm* (331, N.).† *Fuērām* is sometimes used instead of *ērām* (331, N.).

PARADIGM—*continued.*

FUTURE PERFECT (3d root, *perf. part. and* ěřǫ*), *shall or will have been loved, &c.*

Amāt-ūs ěřǫ,*	Mōnit-ūs ěřǫ,	Rect-ūs ěřǫ,	Audit-ūs ěřǫ,
Amāt-ūs ěřis,	Mōnit-ūs ěřis,	Rect-ūs ěřis,	Audit-ūs ěřis,
Amāt-ūs ěřit;	Mōnit-ūs ěřit;	Rect-ūs ěřit;	Audit-ūs ěřit;
Amāt-ī ěřimūs,	Mōnit-ī ěřimūs,	Rect-ī ěřimūs,	Audit-ī ěřimūs,
Amāt-ī ěřit's,	Mōnit-ī ěřit's,	Rect-ī ěřit's,	Audit-ī ěřit's,
Amāt-ī ěřunt.	Mōnit-ī ěřunt.	Rect-ī ěřunt.	Audit-ī ěřunt.

340. VOCABULARY.

Accūsārě, āv, āt, *to accuse.*

Admōnērě, u, ět, *to admonish, warn.*

Běně, *well.*

Carthāgīniēsis, ěs, *a Carthaginian.*

Clipeūs, ī, *shield.*

Damnārě, āv, āt, *to condemn.*

Discērě, didic, *to learn.*

Dōnārě, āv, āt, *to give, present.*

Excītārě, āv, āt, *to excite, arouse.*

Fīnīrě, ěv, ět, *to finish.*

Graecī, ōrūm, *the Greeks.*

Hastā, ae, *spear.*

Laudārě, āv, āt, *to praise.*

Mēsis, ěs, *m., month.*

Mūtārě, āv, āt, *to change.*

Nōvemběr, brīs (*abl. ī*), *November.*

Pūgnārě, āv, āt, *to fight.*

Pūnīrě, ěv, ět, *to punish.*

Sūpěrārě, āv, āt, *to surpass, conquer, to go over.*

341. Exercises.

(a) 1. Tempōra mutantur et nos mutāmur in illis. 2. Finītur labor agricōlae mense Novembri. 3. Vos laudamīni, puēri qui bene didicistis. 4. Donābor clipeo et hasta, si bene pro patria pūgnavēro. 5. Admonebēris, ne iram excītes.¹ 6. Graeci a Romānis superāti sunt. 7. Eōdem anno Carthaginienses et Graeci a Romānis superāti sunt. 8. Prodițiōnis accusāti estis. 9. Ambītus accusāti sumus.

(b) 1. You will be punished. 2. Has he not been punished? 3. We have been admonished not to ac-

* Fuērǫ is sometimes used instead of ěřǫ (331, N.).

cuse the king. 4. Has the queen been condemned to death? (No.) 5. Who will be condemned to death? 6. Who have been accused of treason? 7. We shall be presented with two beautiful books. 8. Have you not been presented with a very fine dog? 9. Had not the Greeks been conquered by the Romans? 10. By whom were the Romans conquered? 11. We shall be conquered by the enemy.

LESSON LIX.

Subjunctive Mood of the Passive Voice.

342. PARADIGM of the Subjunctive Passive.

PRESENT (1st root), *may or can be loved, &c.*

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Am-ēr,	Mōn-eār,	Rēg-ār,	Aud-iār,
Am-ērīs (rē),	Mōn-eārīs (rē),	Rēg-ārīs (rē),	Aud-iārīs (rē),
Am-ē'tūr ;	Mōn-eātūr ;	Rēg-ātūr ;	Aud-iātūr ;
Am-ēmūr,	Mōn-eāmūr,	Rēg-āmūr,	Aud-iāmūr,
Am-ēmīnī,	Mōn-eāmīnī,	Rēg-āmīnī,	Aud-iāmīnī,
Am-entūr.	Mōn-eantūr.	Rēg-antūr.	Aud-iantūr.

IMPERFECT (1st root), *might, could, &c., be loved, &c.*

Am-ārēr,	Mōn-ērēr,	Rēg-ērēr,	Aud-irēr,
Am-ārērīs (rē),	Mōn-ērērīs (rē),	Rēg-ērērīs (rē),	Aud-irērīs (rē),
Am-ārētūr ;	Mōn-ērētūr ;	Rēg-ērētūr ;	Aud-irētūr ;
Am-ārēmūr,	Mōn-ērēmūr,	Rēg-ērēmūr,	Aud-irēmūr,
Am-ārēmīnī,	Mōn-ērēmīnī,	Rēg-ērēmīnī,	Aud-irēmīnī,
Am-arentūr.	Mōn-erentūr.	Rēg-erentūr.	Aud-irentūr.

PERFECT (3d root—*perf. part. and sim or fuērīm*), *may have been loved, &c.*

Amāt-ūs sīm,	Mōnīt-ūs sīm,	Rect-ūs sīm,	Audit-ūs sīm,
Amāt-ūs sīs,	Mōnīt-ūs sīs,	Rect-ūs sīs,	Audit-ūs sīs,
Amāt-ūs sīt,	Mōnīt-ūs sīt ;	Rect-ūs sīt ;	Audit-ūs sīt ;
Amāt-ī sīmūs,	Mōnīt-ī sīmūs,	Rect-ī sīmūs,	Audit-ī sīmūs,
Amāt-ī sīt's,	Mōnīt-ī sīt's,	Rect-ī sīt's,	Audit-ī sīt's,
Amāt-ī sint.	Mōnīt-ī sint.	Rect-ī sint.	Audit-ī sint.

PARADIGM—*continued.*

PLUPERFECT (3d root—*perf. part. and* *essēm or fuissēm*), *might have been loved, &c.*

Amāt-ūs essēm,	Mōnīt-ūs essēm,	Rect-ūs essēm,	Audit-ūs essēm,
Amāt-ūs essēs,	Mōnīt-ūs essēs,	Rect-ūs essēs,	Audit-ūs essēs,
Amāt-ūs essēt;	Mōnīt-ūs essēt;	Rect-ūs essēt;	Audit-ūs essēt;
Amāt-ī essēmūs	Mōnīt-ī essēmūs	Rect-ī essēmūs	Audit-ī essēmūs
Amāt-ī essētīs,	Mōnīt-ī essētīs,	Rect-ī essētīs,	Audit-ī essētīs,
Amāt-ī essent.	Mōnīt-ī essent.	Rect-ī essent.	Audit-ī essent.

343. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs signifying *to separate from*, or *deprive of*, are followed by the *ablative* in addition to the *accusative* of the direct object; e. g.,

Mē lūcē prīvant.

They deprive me of light.

344. VOCABULARY.

Adulatiō, ōnīs, *flattery.*

Contra (*prep. with acc.*), *against.*

Dēcipērē (iō), dēcēp, dēcēpt, *to deceive.*

Fraudārē, āv, āt, *to defraud.*

Fūgērē (iō), fūg, fūgīt, *to flee.*

Grānūm, ī, *grain, grain of corn.*

Imprūdēns, tīs, *inconsiderate, imprudent.*

Nēquidēm,* *not even.*

Paupēr, ěrīs, *a poor man.*

Perfūgiūm, ī, *refuge.*

Praebērē, ū, īt, *to furnish, offer.*

Praepārārē, āv, āt, *to prepare.*

Princeps, principīs, *chief, leader.*

Prīvārē, āv, āt, *to deprive.*

Sancirē, sanx, sanct, *to enact, confirm.*

Sēnectūs, ūtīs, *f. old age.*

Servārē, āv, āt, *to observe, keep.*

Spēciosūs, ā, ūm, *plausible, specious.*

Tām, *so.*

Verbūm, ī, *word.*

Vivērē, vix, vict, *to live.*

345. Exercises.

(a) 1. Non sum tam imprūdēns ut verbis speciōsis decipiar.¹ 2. Bonae leges a principībus sanciantur. 3.

* The emphatic word is generally written between the two parts of this word; thus, *nē grānō quidēm*, not even a grain.

Praeparētur animus contra omnia. 4. Praebeātur se-
nectūti perfugium. 5. Ne me luce privētis. 6. Ne
grano quidem uno paupĕres fraudētis. 7. Paupĕres ne
grano quidem uno fraudentur. 8. Invitus⁵ te furti
accusaverat. 9. Caius, vir summo ingenio, Romae vivit.

(b) 1. Be not deceived. 2. Let him not be deceived.
3. I was so imprudent as to be deceived (that I was
deceived) by specious words. 4. You will not be so
imprudent as to be deceived by flattery. 5. Let all
good laws be observed by the citizens. 6. The boys
fled that they might not be punished. 7. Do not de-
fraud the poor. 8. Let not the poor be defrauded.
9. May they never be defrauded by you. 10. You
shall never be defrauded of even a single grain by us.

LESSON LX.

Imperative Mood—Active and Passive.

346. THE *Imperative* mood expresses a *command*, an
exhortation, or *entreaty*. It is used only in the present
tense, and in the second and third persons.

347. If a negative accompanies the imperative, it
must be expressed in Latin by *nē* (instead of *nōn*) ; e. g.,

Nē peccātē, *do not sin.*

REM.—It will be remembered that a command or exhortation may
also be expressed by the present subjunctive (231).

348. The imperative is formed from the first root by
the addition of the following endings :

ACTIVE.

	<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
S. 2.	ā or ātō,	ē or ētō,	ě or itō,	ī or itō.
3.	ātō,	ētō,	itō,	itō.
P. 2.	ātē, ātōtē,	ētē, ētōtē,	itē. itōtē,	itē, itōtē.
3.	antō,	entō,	untō,	iuntō.

PASSIVE.

S. 2.	āre or ātōr,	ēre or ētōr,	ěre or itōr,	īre or itōr.
3.	ātōr,	ētōr,	itōr,	itōr.
P. 2.	āmīnī,	ēmīnī,	imīnī,	imīnī.
3.	antōr,	entōr,	untōr,	iuntōr.

349. Paradigm of the Imperative Mood.

CONJUGATION I.

	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
S. 2.	Am-ā or ām-ātō, <i>love thou, do thou love.</i>	Am-āre or ām-ātōr, <i>be thou loved.</i>
3.	Am-ātō, <i>let him love.</i>	Am-ātōr, <i>let him be loved.</i>
P. 2.	Am-ātē or ām-ātōtē, <i>love ye, do ye love.</i>	Am-āmīnī, <i>be ye loved.</i>
3.	Am-antō, <i>let them love.</i>	Am-antōr, <i>let them be loved.</i>

CONJUGATION II.

S. 2.	Mōn-ē or mōn-ētō, <i>advise thou.</i>	Mōn-ēre or mōn-ētōr, <i>be thou advised.</i>
3.	Mōn-ētō, <i>let him advise.</i>	Mōn-ētōr, <i>let him be advised.</i>
P. 2.	Mōn-ētē or mōn-ētōtē, <i>advise ye</i>	Mōn-ēmīnī, <i>be ye advised.</i>
3.	Mōn-entō, <i>let them advise.</i>	Mōn-entōr, <i>let them be advised.</i>

CONJUGATION III.

S. 2.	Rēg-ě or rēg-itō,	Rēg-ěre or rēg-itōr,
	<i>rule thou.</i>	<i>be thou ruled.</i>
3.	Rēg-itō, <i>let him rule.</i>	Rēg-itōr, <i>let him be ruled.</i>
P. 2.	Rēg-itē or rēg-itōtē, <i>rule ye.</i>	Rēg-imīnī, <i>be ye ruled.</i>
3.	Rēg-untō, <i>let them rule.</i>	Rēg-untōr, <i>let them be ruled.</i>

CONJUGATION IV.

S. 2.	Aud-ī or aud-itō,	Aud-īre or aud-itōr,
	<i>hear thou.</i>	<i>be thou heard.</i>
3.	Aud-itō, <i>let him hear.</i>	Aud-itōr, <i>let him be heard.</i>
P. 2.	Aud-itē or aud-itōtē, <i>hear ye.</i>	Aud-imīnī, <i>be ye heard.</i>
3.	Aud-iuntō, <i>let them hear.</i>	Aud-iuntōr, <i>let them be heard.</i>

REM.—The second forms of the imperative (*to, tote, nto, &c.*) are used in *laws, rules, and other formal expressions of duty or permission.*

350. VOCABULARY.

Ac, and.

Amēricānūs, ā, ūm, American.

Audirē, iv, it, to hear, listen to.

Castigārē, āv, āt, to chastise.

Cōgitārē, av, āt, to think about.

Compescērē, compescu, to restrain, repress.

Conjux, ūgīs, m. or f., husband, wife, spouse.

Conservārē, āv, āt, to preserve.

Consiliūm, ī, advice, instruction.

Corrumpērē, corrūp, corrupt, to mislead, corrupt.

Dēfendērē, dēfend, dēfens, to defend.

Dēglūbērē, dēglups, dēglupt, to flay, to skin.

Exōrārē, āv, āt, to supplicate.

Libērī, ōrūm (pl.), children.

Nōmēn, īnīs, name.

Pernīciēs, ēī, destruction.

Pōpūlūs, ī, people.

Quē (joined to the word it connects), and.

Ruērē, ru, ruīt (or rūt), to rush.

Sālūs, ūtīs, f., safety.

Scribērē, scrips, script, to write.

Sēpēlirē, iv, sēpult, to bury, inter.

Tondērē, tōtond, tons, to shear, shave.

Vestēr, trā, trūm, your.

Vidērē, vīd, vīs, to see.

351. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caium ne accūsa. 2. Balbum ne accusāte. 3. Tonde oves: ne deglūbe. 4. Tondēte oves: ne deglubīte. 5. Audi, puer, consilia sapientium. 6. Audīte, pueri, consilia sapientium, et vidēte, ne in perniciem ruātis. 7. Exorāre, mi (115) pater, compesce iram. 8. Nemo in urbe sepelītor. 9. Lex erat his verbis scripta: "Nemo in urbe sepelītor." 10. Audi, mi fili (103, N.), ab imprōbis ne corrumpītor. 11. De vobis ac de libēris vestris cogitāte. 12. Conservāte vos, conjūges, libēros, fortunasque vestras. 13. Populi Romani nomen salutemque defendite.

(b) 1. Do not accuse me of theft. 2. Let him shear the sheep. 3. Let no one break the laws. 4. Let the laws be observed. 5. Do not chastise the slave. 6.

Let not the slaves be chastised. 7. Let him be buried in the city. 8. Defend (ye) the name and the safety of the American people. 9. Defend (ye) the American eagle. 10. Let the American eagle be defended by all. 11. Boys, listen to (hear) the instruction of your fathers. 12. Do not break your word.

LESSON LXI.

Infinitive Mood.

352. THE *Infinitive* mood (as already stated, 9) represents the simple meaning of the verb without reference to person or number.

353. The infinitive mood has in each voice three tenses; viz., the *present*, *perfect*, and *future*.

REM.—We must here give the formation of the *supine* and *future act. participle* (both of which we shall soon notice), as they are used in forming the future infinitive.

354. The *future active participle* and the *active supine* are formed from the third root; the former by the addition of *ūrūs* (ă, ūm); as, *āmāt* (3d root), *āmātūrūs* (ă, ūm); and the latter by the addition of *ūm*; as, *āmāt*, *āmātūm*.

355. The infinitives are formed as follows:

- 1) The present, from the first root by the addition of the endings:

	<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
<i>Act.</i>	ārě,	ērě,	ěrě,	īrě.
<i>Pass.</i>	ārī,	ērī,	ī,	īrī.

- 2) The perfect active, from the second root by

the addition of the ending *issē*; and the *perfect passive* from the perfect participle and *essē*.

- 3) The future active, from the *future active participle* and *essē*; and the *future passive* from the *supine* and *īrī*.

356. Paradigm of the Infinitive Mood.

CONJ. I.		
	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
Pres.	Am-ārē, <i>to love.</i>	Am-ārī, <i>to be loved.</i>
Perf.	Amāv-issē, <i>to have loved.</i>	Amāt-ūs essē, <i>to have been loved.</i>
Fut.	Amāt-ūrūs essē, <i>to be about to love.</i>	Amāt-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be loved.</i>
CONJ. II.		
Pres.	Mōn-ērē, <i>to advise.</i>	Mōn-ērī, <i>to be advised.</i>
Perf.	Mōnu-issē, <i>to have advised.</i>	Mōnīt-ūs essē, <i>to have been advised.</i>
Fut.	Mōnīt-ūrūs essē, <i>to be about to advise.</i>	Mōnīt-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be advised.</i>
CONJ. III.		
Pres.	Rēg-ērē, <i>to rule.</i>	Rēg-ī, <i>to be ruled.</i>
Perf.	Rex-issē, <i>to have ruled.</i>	Rect-ūs essē, <i>to have been ruled.</i>
Fut.	Rect-ūrūs essē, <i>to be about to rule.</i>	Rect-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be ruled.</i>
CONJ. IV.		
Pres.	Aud-īrē, <i>to hear.</i>	Aud-īrī, <i>to be heard.</i>
Perf.	Audīv-issē, <i>to have heard.</i>	Audīt-ūs essē, <i>to have been heard.</i>
Fut.	Audīt-ūrūs essē, <i>to be about to hear.</i>	Audīt-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be heard.</i>

357. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The subject of an infinitive must be put in the accusative; e. g.,

Vīdēt tē essē beātūm.

He sees that you are happy.

REM. 1.—The accusative *tē* is the subject of *essē*.

REM. 2.—The use of the infinitive, as the subject of a finite verb, has been already considered (184).

358. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The infinitive, either alone or with other words connected with it, may depend upon another verb; e. g.,

1. Cūpīt *săpĕrĕ*.

He desires *to be wise*.

2. Spĕrāt *sē victūrūm essē*.

He hopes *that he shall live*.

REM. 1.—In most cases the infinitive is really the direct object of the verb on which it depends; thus *săpĕrĕ* (to be wise) is really the object desired. He desires (what?) *to be wise*.

REM. 2.—In the compound infinitives (i. e., those which are made up of two words) the participles must *agree* in gender, number, and case with the subject of those infinitives; but of course the *supine* remains *unaltered*. Thus, in the second example, *victūrūm* is in the accusative masculine singular, to agree with *sē*, the subject of the infinitive.

359. Two or more English sentences, joined by the conjunction *that*, are often made one Latin sentence, by leaving out the conjunction, and turning the following nominative into the accusative and the verb into the infinitive.

360. VOCABULARY.

Certūs, ā, ūm, *certain*.

Clēmens, tīs, *mild, merciful*.

Convertĕrĕ, convert, convers, *to turn, convert*.

Cūpĕrĕ (iŏ), cūpiv (or i), cūpīt, *to desire*.

Divīdĕrĕ, divīs, divīs, *to divide*.

Dŏcĕrĕ, u, doct, *to teach*.

Ocŭlūs, ī, *eye*.

Pars, partīs, *part*.

Peccārĕ, āv, āt, *to sin*.

Praedā, ae, *booty*.

Săpĕrĕ, iv, i, or u, *to be wise*.

Spĕrārĕ, āv, āt, *to hope*.

Tīmĕrĕ, ū, *to fear*.

Trēs, triā, *three*.

Vendĕrĕ, vendīd, vendīt, *to sell*.

361. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Balbi est omnia in tres partes dividere. 2. Nunquam utile est peccare. 3. Omnes homines beati esse cupiunt. 4. Cupio me esse clementem. 5. Docemus pueros ut sapere discant. 6. Video in me omnium vestrum oculos esse conversos. 7. Sperant se victuros esse. 8. Certum est Balbum patriam auro vendidisse.

(b) 1. He is said to have divided the booty into ten parts. 2. They are said to have lived at Rome five years. 3. We desire to be happy. 4. You all desire to be happy. 5. He is said to have been very happy. 6. He says, that all eyes were turned upon him. 7. He sees that you are happy. 8. It is certain, that a Christian does not fear death. 9. It is certain, that the boy has heard a voice. 10. It is certain, that Balbus will value my labors *very highly*.² 11. It is certain, that the avaricious value money *very highly*. 12. It is certain, that Balbus will be condemned *to death*.

LESSON LXII.*Participles.—Ablative Absolute.*

362. THE participle is that part of the verb which has the form and inflection of an adjective.

363. A verb may have four participles, viz.: the *present* and *future* in the *active* voice, and the *perfect* and *future* in the *passive*.

364. The participles are formed as follows:

- 1) The present active in the four conjugations, by the addition of the respective endings:

1.	2.	3.	4.
ans,	ens,	ens,	iens,

to the first root; as,

Amans (loving), *mōnens*, *rēgens*, *audiens*.

- 2) The future active, from the third root, by the addition of the ending *ūrūs* (*ā*, *ūm*) (302); as, *Amātūrūs* (about to love), *mōnītūrūs*, *rectūrūs*, *audītūrūs*.

- 3) The perfect passive, from the third root, by the addition of the ending *ūs* (*ā*, *ūm*) (302); as, *Amātūs* (loved), *mōnītūs*, *rectūs*, *audītūs*.

- 4) The future passive in the four conjugations, by the addition of the respective endings :

1.	2.	3.	4.
andūs,	endūs,	endūs,	iendūs,

to the first root; as,

Amandūs (deserving to be loved), *mōnendūs*, *rēgendūs*, *audiendūs*.

365. The participle in *ns* answers to the English participle in *ing*.
The participle in *us* answers to the English participle in *ed*, *en*, *t*, &c.

The participle in *dus* must be translated by the *present infinitive passive*, as used with a substantive. (A termination *to be desired*; a crime *to be abhorred*.)

The participle in *rus* must be translated by ‘*about to* (write);’ or, ‘*going to* (write).’

366. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun and a participle standing grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence are put in the ablative (called *absolute*); e. g.,

Caesār, victīs hostībūs,	{	<i>Eng. Id.</i> , Caesar having conquered his enemies.
		<i>Lat. Id.</i> Caesar his enemies being conquered.

367. The want of a participle for the perfect active is supplied by the *ablative absolute*, or by *quum* (*when*) with the *perfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive. The *perfect* subjunctive must be used, if the other verb is in the *present* tense; e. g.,

Caesar having conquered	{	Caesār, quūm vīcissēt hostēs.
his enemies,		Caesār, victīs hostībūs.

368. VOCABULARY.

Aequitas, ātis, *equity, justice.*

Angustiae, ārūm (*pl.*), *a narrow pass, defile.*

Cănērē, cēcīn, *cant, to sing.*

Compellērē, compūl, compuls, *to drive, compel.*

Constituērē, constītu, constitūt, *to arrange, constitute.*

Deprēhendērē, deprēhend, deprēhens, *to seize, catch.*

Dēvincērē, devīc, devict, *to conquer.*

Exclāmārē, āv, āt, *to cry out, exclaim.*

Immergērē, immers, immers, *to plunge into, immerse.*

Lūdērē, lūs, lūs, *to play, to sport.*

Mănērē, mans, mans, *to remain.*

Quūm, *when.*

Viölārē, āv, āt, *to violate, to break.*

369. Exercises.

(a) 1. In via ludentem puërum vidi. 2. In via ludentes deprehendimus. 3. Caesar fugientes hostes in angustias compulit. 4. Fracto puëri brachio, Romae manēbit. 5. Violātis patriae legībūs, vita indignus est. 6. Puer, quum manus in aquam immersisset, exclamāvit. 7. Caesar, quum devicisset hostes, summa aequitāte res constituit.

(b) 1. Did you hear the nightingales singing in the grove? 2. I saw the fishes swimming on the surface (top) of the water.¹⁰ 3. Did you see the girls playing in the garden? 4. Have you not seen the boys playing in the street? 5. Caius, having broken his arm, remained at Rome. 6. The slave, having killed his

master, was condemned. 7. They say that the slave has been condemned to death. 8. You are said to have been accused of treason. 9. Having violated the laws of the state, we shall all be punished.

LESSON LXIII.

Gerunds and Supines.

370. THE *Gerund* is that part of the verb which corresponds to the participial substantive in *ing* in English.

371. The gerund is really a verbal substantive of the neuter gender, used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular.

REM.—The infinitive supplies the place of the nominative of the gerund, as that is sometimes used as the subject of a verb (184).

372. The genitive of the gerund ends, in the four conjugations, respectively in

1.	2.	3.	4.
andī,	endī,	endī,	iendī.

Amandī (of loving), *mōnendī*, *rēgendī*, *audiendī*.

373. The gerund is declined in the parts in use precisely like a neuter noun of the second declension; e. g.,

<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Amandī,</i>	<i>of loving.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Amandō,</i>	<i>to or for loving.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Amandūm,</i>	<i>loving.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Amandō,</i>	<i>by loving.</i>

REM.—The gerund, being a part of the verb, of course governs the same case.

374. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The gerund is governed like a noun in the same case; e. g.,

Intēr lūdendūm.

(*During playing.*)

While they are playing.

375. The Latin verb has two *supines*; one in *ūm* and one in *ū*.

376. The supines are formed by adding the above endings to the third root; e. g.,

Amātūm (to love), mōnītūm, rectūm, audītūm.

Amātū (to be loved), mōnītū, rectū, audītū.

REM.—The supine in *ūm* is generally Englished by the present infinitive active, and that in *ū* by the present infinitive passive, though it may be translated by the active, if that gives better English. Both supines are really active; thus, *factūm* means *for doing*, and *factū* in doing.

377. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The supine in *ūm* follows verbs of motion, to express the purpose or object of that motion; e. g.,

Mittīt lēgātōs pācēm pētītūm.

He sends ambassadors *to sue for peace*.

378. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The supine in *ū* is used after adjectives signifying *good* or *bad*, *easy* or *difficult*, *agreeable* or *disagreeable*, &c.; e. g.,

Diffīcīlē est dictū.

It is difficult *to say*.

379. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many adjectives signifying *desire*, *knowledge*, *skill*, *participation*, *recollection*, *fulness*,

and the *like*, together with their contraries, govern the genitive; e. g.,

Cūpīdūs laudīs, *desirous of praise.*

380. VOCABULARY.

Aquārī, at, *to bring water.*

Aquātūm (sup.), *to bring water.*

Auxīlium, ī, *aid, help.*

Cūpīdūs, ā, ūm, *desirous, desirous of.*

Jūcundūs, ā, ūm, *pleasant, delightful.*

Mirābilīs, ē, *wonderful.*

Pābūlarī, at, *to forage.*

Pābūlatūm (sup.), *to forage.*

Pētērē, iv (i), it, *to seek, ask, sue for.*

Rōgārē, av, at, *to ask.*

Sumptūs, ūs, *expense.*

Sūpervācuūs, ā, ūm, *unnecessary*

Vēnārī, at, *to hunt.*

Vēnatūm (sup.), *to hunt.*

Vītārē, av, at, *to avoid, shun.*

381. Exercises.

(a) 1. Cupīdi sunt docendi. 2. Num puēri ludendo discunt? 3. Puer cupīdus est discendi. 4. Misērunt legātos pacem petītum. 5. Legātos ad Caesārem mittunt rogātum auxilium. 6. Jucundum est audītu. 7. Diffīcile est factu. 8. Mittantur legāti pacem petītum. 9. Quantum tempōris ludendo amisērunt! 10. Multum temporis ludendo amittēmus.

(b) 1. He learns by teaching. 2. Have we not learned by teaching? 3. Is there not much pleasure in learning? 4. How much pleasure (there) is in learning! 5. There is much pleasure in teaching. 6. Do not boys learn while playing? 7. The boy has been sent *a hunting*. 8. Caesar has sent the fourth legion *to forage*. 9. Ambassadors have been sent *to ask peace*. 10. It is difficult *to say*. 11. It is wonderful *to tell*. 12. Has not Caesar sent the fourth legion *to bring water*?

LESSON LXIV.

Participle in dus.

382. INSTEAD of a gerund governing its case, we may use a *participle in dus* agreeing with a noun; e. g.,

(*Eng.*) The intention of writing a letter.

(*Lat.*) Consiliūm scribendi epistolām.

(or) Consiliūm scribendae epistolae.*

383. Thus, then, *epistolā scribendā* may be declined throughout.

Sing.

N. Epistōla scribenda, a letter to be written.

G. epistolae scribendae, of writing a letter.

D. epistolae scribendae, to or for writing a letter.

Acc. (ad) epistolam scribendam, to write a letter (or for writing a letter).

Abl. epistolā scribendā, by writing a letter.

Plur.

N. epistolae scribendae, letters to be written.

G. epistolārum scribendarum, of writing letters.

D. epistolis scribendis, to or for writing letters.

Acc. (ad) epistolas scribendas, to write letters (or for writing letters).

Abl. epistolis scribendis, by writing letters.

384. VOCABULARY.

Adjamentū, ī, aid, help.

Arripērē (iō), arripu, arrept, to
snatch, seize.

Athēnae, ārūm, Athens, city of
Greece.

Augērē, aux, auct, to increase.

* The real meaning of 'consilium scribendae epistolae' is 'the design of (= about) a letter to be written.'

Cūpidiōr, ōrīs (*comp.*), *fonder.*Elēgantiā, ae, *elegance.*Emēre, em, empt, *to buy, purchase.*Exercēre, exercu, exercit, *to practise, exercise.*Gērere, gess, gest, *to carry on, to wage.*Hābere, ū, it, *to have, enjoy.*Lēgere, lēg, lect, *to read.*Obtinere, obtinu, obtent, *to obtain, acquire.*Occasio, ōnis, *opportunity.*Peritus, ā, ūm, *skilful, skilled in.*Regere, rex, rect, *to govern, rule.*Studiosus, ā, ūm, *very fond.*385. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Balbus omnem occasiōnem *exercendae virtutis* arripiēbat. 2. Multi cupidiōres sunt *emendōrum librōrum* quam *legendōrum*. 3. Caesar belli gerendi perītus fuit. 4. Omnis occasio *exercendae virtutis* arripiātur. 5. Certum est, omnem occasiōnem *exercendae virtutis* a Christiāno arripi. 6. Omnis dicendi *elegantia* augētur *legendis oratoribus et poētis*. 7. Homo magna habet *adjumenta* ad *obtinendam sapientiam*.

(b) 1. The boy is very fond of *writing letters*. 2. He was very fond of hearing the orator. 3. Seize every opportunity of *practising virtue*. 4. The Romans were fond of *waging war*. 5. Ambassadors are sent *to beg* for peace. 6. Ambassadors will be sent to sue for peace. 7. The law will be broken. 8. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men)? 9. It is certain, that the laws are broken by the wicked at Rome and at Athens. 10. Let your word be kept. 11. Let the state be ruled by the wise.

LESSON LXV.

First Conjugation.

386. VOCABULARY.*

Adeō, *so, in such a manner.*Cantārē, āv, āt, *to sing.*Certāmēn, ĩnīs, *contest.*Crābrō, ōnīs, *wasp.*Intēr, *between, during.*Intēr ambūlandūm, *while walking.*Irrītārē, āv, āt, *to trouble, irritate.*Ornārē, āv, āt, *to adorn.*Rōbustūs, ā, ūm, *robust, strong.*Spōliārē, āv, āt, *to rob of, despoil.*387. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Sapientis est supervacuus sumptus vitāre. 2. Crabrōnem ne irrītes (232). 3. Crabrōnem ne irritāte (347). 4. Irritasne crabrōnes? 5. Nonne eam legem ipse violābas? 6. Inter ambulandum cantābant. 7. Hic miles est adeo robustus, ut nemo eum in certamīne superavērit. 8. Prata et agri pulcherrimis floribus ornantur. 9. Oculisne me, iudices, privabitis? 10. Violātis patriae legibus (366), mea me laude spoliātis. 11. Num mea laude spoliābor?

(b) 1. It is the duty of a Christian⁷ to avoid unnecessary expense. 2. Did they not themselves violate those laws? 3. Let not the laws be violated by Christians. 4. We hope we shall never be accused. 5. Have you ever been accused? 6. Let your laws be kept. 7. Is it not certain that the laws are broken by the wicked? 8. Did they not condemn him to death? 9. Balbus is so strong that he has never been surpassed in a contest. 10. Have I not been deprived of my eyes?

* Preparatory to this exercise, the pupil is expected to review thoroughly the Paradigm of the First Conjugation. See 588.

LESSON LXVI.

Second Conjugation.

388. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many verbs which signify *to ask, demand, or teach*, together with *cēlārē* (to conceal), take two objects, one of a person and another of a thing; e. g.,

Caesār frūmentūm Aeduōs flāgītābāt.

Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.

389. VOCABULARY.*

Divitiācūs, ī, *Divitiacus, man's name.*

Impērārē, āv, āt, *to command, give commands.*

Jūbērē, juss, juss, *to direct, order.*

Mordērē, mōmord, mors, *to bite.*

Pārērē, ū, īt, *to obey.*

Prōpensūs, ā, ūm, *inclined to.*

Sānārē, āv, āt, *to cure, reform.*

Tācērē, ū, īt, *to be silent, to pass over in silence.*

390. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Hostes non timēmus. 2. Nonne respondēbis? 3. Docendo docēmur. 4. Ego multa tacui: multa sanāvi. 5. Ad docendum propensi sunt. 6. Pareat anīmus: non impēret. 7. Caesar Divitiācum ad se vocāri jubet. 8. Te haec docēbo. 9. Puēros haec docēbant. 10. Puēri haec docti sunt. 11. Canis puērum momordit. 12. Nonne oves totondistis?

(b) 1. Do you not fear the enemy? 2. Do not fear the enemy. 3. Who taught the boy this? 4. Did you teach those boys this? 5. Who sheared this sheep? 6. Let no one shear my sheep. 7. Did the dog bite you? 8. I have been bitten by your dog. 9. We

* The pupil will, of course, review Paradigm. See 589.

have ourselves been taught by teaching. 10. Did you not laugh at your father?

LESSON LXVII.

Third Conjugation.

391. RULE OF SYNTAX.—After verbs of motion :

- 1) The place to which the motion is directed, if a town or small island, is put in the accusative without a preposition ; e. g.,

Rōmām vēnīrē, *to come to Rome.*

- 2) The place from which the motion proceeds, if a town or small island, is put in the ablative without a preposition ; e. g.,

Rōmā vēnīrē, *to come from Rome.*

REM.—Before other names of places the preposition is generally expressed.

(Review Paradigm 590.)

392. VOCABULARY.

Agērē, ēg, act, *to do, act.*

Committērē, mīs, miss, *to engage.*

Cūrārē, av, at, *to attend to, cause, &c.*

Dārē, dēd, dāt, *to give.*

Equēs, itīs, *horseman.*

Grātiā, ae, *favor ; pl., thanks.*

Gratias āgērē, *to give thanks, to thank.*

Injuriā, ae, *injury, wrong done.*

Pons, tīs, m., *bridge.*

Responsū, ī, *answer, reply.*

Tēgērē, tex, tect, *to cover, conceal.*

Unquām, *ever.*

393. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caium Athēnas mittat. 2. Servum Athēnas miserat. 3. Mihi gratias egistis. 4. Sicut vixi, ut

nemo unquam me ullius injuriae accusaverit. 5. Pontem in flumine faciendum curavit. 6. Equites proelium committunt. 7. Hoc responso dato, equites proelium committunt. 8. Certum est, Caesarem belli gerendi peritum fuisse. 9. Legatos ad eum miserunt. 10. Omnis dicendi elegantia augetur legendis oratoribus (382).

(b) 1. He has sent an ambassador to Rome. 2. Ambassadors will be sent to sue for (377) peace. 3. Ambassadors have been sent to sue for peace. 4. He has never been sent to Athens. 5. He is said to have been very desirous of (379) learning. 6. They say that you are desirous of engaging battle. 7. They are said to be skilful in waging war. 8. Having made this reply they engage battle. 9. It is disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie.

LESSON LXVIII.

Fourth Conjugation.

(Review Paradigm 591.)

394. VOCABULARY.

Antea, *before.*

Captivus, a, um, *captive.*

Claudere, claus, claus, *to shut.*

Fundus, i, *estate, farm.*

Hannibal, alis, *Hannibal.*

Intra (*prep. with accus.*), *within.*

Italia, ae, *Italy.*

Praeceptum, i, *precept, instruction.*

Praesens, tis, *present.*

Succurrere, curr, curs, *to aid, succor.*

Tarentum, i, *Tarentum, a town in Italy.*

Vetustus, a, um, *old, ancient.*

395. Exercises.

(a) 1. Haec ex captivis audiverat. 2. Venit sacerdos ut aram sanguine aspergat. 3. Miles Tarentum

vēnit. 4. Hunc audiēbant antea, nunc praesentē vident. 5. Fundo in tres partes divīso, Romam vēnit. 6. Veni ut mihi succurras. 7. Hannibal, Alpibus superātis, in Italiam venit. 8. Lex erat Romanōrum vetustissīma, ne quis intra urbem sepelirētur.

(b) 1. Have not the boys been sent to bring water? 2. They have come to shut the gates of the city. 3. Will you come to shut the gates? 4. Let them come to shut the gates. 5. Let all come to hear the instructions of the wise. 6. Let the instructions of the wise be always heard. 7. By hearing the instructions of the wise we shall learn wisdom. 8. He has buried his father. 9. Has he buried him within the city? 10. Do not bury him within the city.

LESSON LXIX.

Verbs with the Dative.—Indirect Object.

396. THE use of the *indirect object* has been already illustrated; but as some verbs in Latin are followed by the dative (the case of the indirect object) where we use no preposition, and should therefore be led by the English to put the accusative, it may be well to notice a few instances of this. The verbs of this class are principally such as signify:

*To command or obey, please or displease, favor or injure, serve or resist, together with to indulge, spare, pardon, envy, believe, persuade.**

* See 643

REM. 1.—Văcărē (*to have leisure*) and nūbērē (*to marry, used of females*), also take the dative.

REM. 2.—It will be readily perceived, in most cases, that the dative after the above verbs is really the *indirect* and not the *direct* object; thus, *impērārē* (*to command*) means to give a command *to*; *plăcērē* (*to please*) to give pleasure *to*; and so of most, if not all, of the others.

397. VOCABULARY.

Ars, artīs, *art.*

Beātē, *happily.*

Crēdērē, crēdīd, crēdīt, *to believe, put confidence in.*

Cūpīditas, atīs, *desire, passion.*

Făvērē, făv, faut, *to favor.*

Ignoscērē, nōv, nōt, *to pardon.*

Indulgērē, indulg, indult, *to indulge.*

Invidērē, vīd, vīs, *to envy.*

Nōcērē, nōcu, nōcīt, *to hurt.*

Parcērē, pēperc, parcīt, *to spare.*

Persuadērē, persuās, persuās, *to persuade.*

Rēsistērē, stīt, stīt, *to resist.*

Servīrē, iv (i), it, *to serve, be a slave to.*

Stūdērē, u, *to study, strive for.*

Văcărē, av, at, *to have leisure for.*

398. Exercises.

(a) 1. Irae multos annos serviēras. 2. Regendis anīmi cupiditatībus studeāmus. 3. Caesar legendo libro vacābit. 4. Christiāni est patriae suae legībus parēre. 5. Ignosce mihi. 6. Nemo tibi credet. 7. Imprōbus patriae legībus non parēbit. 8. Num legībus parēbunt imprōbi, violāta fide? 9. Discant Christiāni anīmis suis imperāre. 10. Sapientia ars est bene beateque vivendi.

(b) 1. I would have favored Caius. 2. You would have resisted anger. 3. You (*pl.*) would have hurt nobody. 4. We would have indulged the desire. 5. I was hurting myself. 6. You were hurting me. 7. You had hurt Caius. 8. You had been-the-slave-of passion. 9. Do not be-the slave-of passion. 10. You were sparing the enemies. 11. *It is the duty of* a Christian to envy nobody. 12. Do not envy the good. 13.

It is pleasant to succor the miserable. 14. Nobody will believe the wicked. 15. Death spares nobody. 16. They had spared the gate of the city. 17. He spares himself in the winter. 18. He does not spare even himself. 19. You will never have persuaded me. 20. Let the Christian learn to command himself.

LESSON LXX.

Deponent Verbs.

399. A DEPONENT verb is one which has a *passive form*, but an *active meaning*.

400. *Deponent* verbs have all the four participles; e. g.,

- 1) Loquens, *speaking*; 2) locūtus, *having spoken*;
- 3) locutūrus, *about to speak*; 4) loquendus, *to be spoken*.

REM.—The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the *perfect active*, which other verbs do not have.

401. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The deponent verbs, *ūtōr*, *fruōr*, *fungōr*, *potiōr*, *vescōr*, *dignōr*, and their compounds, usually take the *ablative*; e. g.,

Vōluptātē fruītūr, *he enjoys pleasure*.

REM.—The ablative after the above is not strictly the object, but the ablative of means; thus, *to enjoy pleasure*, is *to be delighted with pleasure*.

402. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs of *reminding*, *remembering*, *forgetting*, and *pitying*, usually take the *genitive* of the object remembered, forgotten, &c.; e. g.,

Rēmīniscōr bēnēficiī tuī, *I remember your kindness*.

REM.—Most of these verbs, except those signifying *to pity*, sometimes take the accusative instead of the genitive.

403. VOCABULARY.

Aliquandō, *some time or other.*
 Bēnēficiūm, ī, *benefit.*
 Flagitiūm, ī, *crime.*
 Fungī, funct, *to discharge.*
 Lōquī, lōcūt, *to speak.*
 Mālē, *badly.*
 Mīsērērī, mīsērīt, or mīsert, *to*
pity.
 Oblīviscī, oblīt, *to forget.*

Odiūm, ī, *hatred.*
 Officiūm, ī, *duty.*
 Post (*prep. with accus.*), *after.*
 Pōtīrī, pōtīt, *to get possession.*
 Rēcordārī, āt, *to remember, to*
recall to mind.
 Sempiternūs, ā, ūm, *eternal.*
 Utī, ūs, *to use.*

404. Exercises.

(a) 1. Christianōrum est miserēri paup̃rum. 2. Homo imprōbus aliquando cum dolōre flagitiōrum suōrum recordabitur. 3. Multi beneficiis male utuntur. 4. Vincāmus odium, pacēque potiāmur. 5. Christiāni est injuriārum oblivisci. 6. Beātus est, qui omnībus vitae officiis fungitur. 7. Elegantiam loquendi legendis oratoribus et poētis auxērant.

(b) 1. Let the Christian discharge all the duties of life. 2. Let us use our horses. 3. The good after death will enjoy eternal life. 4. Will not the good after death enjoy eternal life? 5. Is the life that we now enjoy eternal? 6. Let boys learn to discharge all the duties of life. 7. Have you not spared the conquered?* 8. Spare (*pl.*) the conquered. 9. Let us spare the conquered. 10. We will resist anger. 11. Will you not resist anger? 12. Let Caius, who sold

* Participles as well as adjectives (117) are sometimes used substantively.

his country for gold, be condemned to death. 13. Let the wicked, who sold their country for gold, be accused of treason.

LESSON LXXI.

Irregular Verbs.

405. THE irregular verbs are those which deviate from the ordinary rules, not only in the formation of their roots, but also in the inflection of some of their tenses.

406. The irregular verb *possē* (to be able), compounded of *pōt* (*pōtis*, able) and *essē* (to be), is conjugated like the simple *essē*, except,

- 1) *T* before *s* becomes *s*; as, *possūm* (*potsūm*).
- 2) The *f* in the second root is dropped; as, *pōtu* (*potfu*).
- 3) In the *present infinitive* and *imperfect subjunctive* there is a contraction; as, *possē* (for *pōtessē*), *possēm* (for *pōtessēm*).

407. Paradigm.

Possē, to be able; 2d root, pōtu.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. *Possūm, pōtēs, pōtest, possūmūs, pōtestīs, possunt.*

Imp. *pōtērām; Fut. pōtērō; Perf. pōtu-ī; Pluperf. pōtu-ērām; Fut. Perf. pōtu-ērō.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. *possīm; Imp. possēm; Perf. pōtu-ērīm; Pluperf. pōtu-issēm.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. *possē; Perf. pōtu-issē.*

PARTICIPLE.

Pōtens (used as an adjective, powerful).

408. The various forms of *possě* are often best translated by the auxiliaries, *can*, *could*, &c.; e. g.,

Egõ făcěřě possũm, *I can do* (am able to do).

REM.—When a past tense of *possě* is thus translated by *could*, any present infinitive depending upon it must be translated by the English perfect; e. g.,

Egõ făcěřě põtũi, *I could have done*.

409. The irregular verb *vellě*, *to will*, or *be willing*, and its compounds, *nollě*, *to be unwilling* (from *nõn* and *vellě*), and *mallě*, *to wish rather, to prefer* (from *măg* [*măgĩs*, more] and *vellě*), are conjugated as in the following:

410. Paradigms.

Vellě. 2d root, <i>võlu</i> .	Nollě. 2d root, <i>nõlu</i> .	Mallě. 2d root, <i>mălu</i> .
INDICATIVE.		
PRESENT.		
Võľõ, Vĩs, Vult; Võľũmũs, Vultĩs, Võľunt.	Nõľõ, Nonvĩs, Nõnvult; Nõľũmũs, Nonvultĩs, Nõľunt.	Măľõ, Măvĩs, Măvult; Măľũmũs, Măvultĩs, Măľunt.
IMPERFECT.		
Võ'ľebăm, băs, &c.	Nõľ'ebăm, băs, &c.	Măľ'ebăm, băs, &c.
FUTURE.		
Võľ-ăm.	Nõľ-ăm.	Măľ-ăm.
PERFECT.		
Võľu-ĩ.	Nõľu-ĩ.	Măľu-ĩ.
PLUPERFECT.		
Võľu-ěřăm.	Nõľu-ěřăm.	Măľu-ěřăm.
FUTURE PERFECT.		
Võľu-ěřõ.	Nõľu-ěřõ.	Măľu-ěřõ.

PARADIGMS—*continued.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.		
PRESENT.		
Věľ-ím, ĩs, &c. |	Nōľ-ím, ĩs, &c. |	Māl-ím, ĩs, &c.
IMPERFECT.		
Vell-ěm, ěs, &c. |	Noll-ěm. |	Mall-ěm.
PERFECT.		
Vōľu-ěřím. |	Nōľu-ěřím. |	Māľu-ěřím.
PLUPERFECT.		
Vōľu-issěm. |	Nōľu-issěm. |	Māľu-issěm.
IMPERATIVE.		
	Nōľ-ĭ or ĭtŏ, Nōľ-ĭtě, ĭtŏtě. |	
INFINITIVE.		
<i>Pres.</i> Vellě. |	Nollě. |	Mallě.
<i>Perf.</i> Vōľu-issě. |	Nōľu-issě. |	Māľu-issě.
PARTICIPLES.		
Vōľens. |	Nōľens. |	

411. VOCABULARY.

Anĭmāl, āľis, *animal.*

Corrĭgěrě, correx, correct, *to correct, reform.*

Cŏr, cordĭs, *n., heart.*

Mallě, māľu, *to prefer wish rather.*

Nollě, nōľu, *to be unwilling.*

Nullŭs, ā, ům (113, R.), *no, not any.*

Occĭděrě, occĭd, occĭs, *to kill.*

Possě, pŏtu, *to be able.*

Praetěrĭtŭs, ā, ům, *past; praeteritā (neut. pl.), the past.*

Prŏbŭs, ā, ům, *honest, upright.*

Scĭpiŏ, ōnĭs, *Scipio, a distinguished Roman.*

Sĭně, *without.*

Vellě, vōľu, *to wish.*

412. Exercises.

(a) 1. Haec facěre possŭmus. 2. Haec facěre potu isti. 3. Multum discěre vult. 4. Nolui hoc facěre

5. Praeterita mutāre non possūmus. 6. Nullum anīmal quod sanguīnem habet, sine corde esse potest. 7. Discat ut possit docēre. 8. Num puēri regendae civitātis (382) perīti esse possunt? 9. Si vis beātus esse, anīmo impēra. 10. Probi semper vitam corrigēre volunt. 11. Scipio dicēbat, malle se unum civem servāre, quam mille hostes occidēre.

(b) 1. Do you wish to change the past? 2. We do not wish to change the past. 3. You (*pl.*) cannot change the past. 4. We cannot shun death. 5. Let us learn, that we may be able to teach others. 6. They wish to be happy. 7. We all wish to be happy. 8. Could you not have seen the king? 9. We might have learned much. 10. We were unwilling to accuse you. 11. Were you not unwilling to accuse the king?

LESSON LXXII.

Irregular Verbs, continued.

413. THE irregular verb, *ferrĕ*, *to bear*, drops *e* between two *r*'s, as *ferrĕ* for *ferĕrĕ*, and *i* in the endings of the second and third sing. act., and of the third sing. pass. It borrows its second and third roots from other verbs.

414. Paradigm.

Ferrĕ, *to bear*; 2d root, *tŭl*; 3d, *lāt*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Active.

Fĕr-ō, fer-s, fer-t, fĕr-īmŭs,
fer-tis, fĕr-unt.

Passive.

Fĕr-ōr, fer-ris, fer-tŭr, fĕr-īmŭr,
fĕr-īmīnī, fĕr-untŭr.

PARADIGM—*continued.*

IMPERFECT.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>
Fēr-ēbām, bās, &c.	|	Fēr-ēbār, bārīs, &c.

FUTURE.

Fēr-ām, ēs, &c.	|	Fēr-ār, ērīs, &c.
-----------------	--	-------------------

PERFECT

Tūl-ī, istī, &c.	|	Lāt-ūs sūm, ēs, &c.
------------------	--	---------------------

PLUPERFECT.

Tūl-ērām, ās, &c.	|	Lāt-ūs ērām, &c.
-------------------	--	------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

Tūl-ērō, &c.	|	Lāt-ūs ērō, &c.
--------------	--	-----------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Fēr-ām, ās, &c.	|	Fēr-ār, ārīs, &c.
-----------------	--	-------------------

IMPERFECT

Fer-rēm, rēs, &c.	|	Fer-rēr, rērīs, &c.
-------------------	--	---------------------

PERFECT.

Tūl-ērīm, &c.	|	Lāt-ūs sīm, &c.
---------------	--	-----------------

PLUPERFECT.

Tūl-issēm.	|	Lāt-ūs essēm, &c.
------------	--	-------------------

IMPERATIVE.

Fēr, <i>or</i> fertō,	|	Fer-rē, <i>or</i> fer-tōr,
Fer-tō;	|	Fer-tōr;
Fer-tē, <i>or</i> fer-tōtē.	|	Fēr-īmīnī,
Fēr-untō.	|	Fēr-untōr.

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> Fer-rē,	|	Fer-rī,
<i>Perf.</i> Tūl-isse,	|	Lāt-ūs essē,
<i>Fut.</i> Lāt-ūrūs essē.	|	Lāt-ūm irī.

PARADIGM—continued.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i>	Fěr-ens,	<i>Perf.</i>	Lăt-ūs (ă, ūm).
<i>Fut.</i>	Lăt-ūrūs (ă, ūm).	<i>Fut.</i>	Fěr-endūs (ă, ūm).

GERUND.

Fěr-endī, dō, dūm, dō. |

SUPINE.

Lăt-ūm. | Lăt-ū.

REM.—The compounds of *ferrē* are conjugated like the simple verb.

415. The irregular verb, *fiērī*, *to become, be made*, is used as the passive of *făcērē*, and, in the tenses for completed action, has the regular forms of the passive of that verb.

416. Paradigm.

Fiērī, to become, be made.

PRESENT.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Fīō, fīs, fīt, &c.	Fī-ām, fī-ās, fī-ăt, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Fī-ebām, ebās, &c.	Fī-ērēm, ērēs, &c.
--------------------	--------------------

FUTURE.

Fī-ām, ēs, &c. |

PERFECT.

Fact-ūs sūm, &c.	Fact-ūs sīm, &c.
------------------	------------------

PLUPERFECT.

Fact-ūs ērām, &c.	Fact-ūs essēm, &c.
-------------------	--------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

Fact-ūs ērō, &c. |

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fī, or fī-tō,	<i>Plur.</i> Fitē, or fī-tōtē,
Fī-tō.	Fī-untō.

PARADIGM—continued.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Fiērī; *Perf.* Fact-ūs essē; *Fut.* Fact-ūm irī.

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. Fact-ūs (ă, ūm); *Fut.* Făciendūs (ă, ūm).

417. VOCABULARY.

Afferre, attul, allat, *to bring, to bring to.*

Auctor, oris, *author.*

Călămítás, átis, *misfortune, calamity.*

Crēbēr, bră, brūm, *frequent, numerous.*

Ferrē, tūl, lāt, *to carry, bear, endure.*

Fiērī, fact, *to become, be made.*

Inferre, intul, illat, *to bring against, to wage.*

Itērūm, *again.*

Rēferrē, rētul, rēlat, *to bring back, to relate.*

Rūmōr, oris, *report, rumor.*

Tertiūs, ă, ūm, *third.*

Utilítás, átis, *profit, advantage.*

418. Exercises.

(a) 1. Quid fers manu, mi fili? 2. Is labor utilis est qui auctōri laudem fert, aliis utilitātem. 3. Tertio die auxilium tulērunt. 4. Crebri ad eum rumōres afferebantur. 5. Dixit Gallos sibi bellum intulisse. 6. His responsis ad Caesārem relātis, itērūm ad eum Caesar legātos mittit. 7. Brutus consul factus est.

(b) 1. He has been made king. 2. Do you wish to become king? (*No.*) 3. Many reports will be brought to you. 4. What reports have been brought to you? 5. Your father has become poor. 6. Shall you not bring us aid? 7. Do you not wish to carry aid to your brother? 8. Caesar waged many wars. 9. Caesar is said to have waged many wars. 10. He has endured many misfortunes. 11. Do you wish to wage war against your father? (*No.*) 12. We were unwilling to wage war against our country.

LESSON LXXIII.

Irregular Verbs, continued.

419. THE irregular verb, *īrě*, *to go*, is regular in the parts from the first root.

PARADIGM.

Irě, *to go*; 2d root, *īv*; 3d, *īt*.

PRESENT.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Eő, <i>is, it</i> ; <i>īmūs, itīs, eunt.</i>	Eām, <i>eās, &c.</i>

IMPERFECT.

Ibām, <i>ibās, &c.</i>	Irēm, <i>irēs, &c.</i>
----------------------------	----------------------------

FUTURE.

Ibő, *ibīs, &c.*

PERFECT.

Iv-ī, <i>iv-istī, &c.</i>	Iv-ěřim, <i>ěřis, &c.</i>
-------------------------------	-------------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

Iv-ěřām, <i>ěřās, &c.</i>	Iv-issēm, <i>issēs, &c.</i>
-------------------------------	---------------------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

Iv-ěřő, *ěřis, &c.*

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sing.</i> I, <i>or itő</i> , Itő.	<i>Plur.</i> Itě, <i>or itótě</i> , Euntő.
---	---

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Irě; *Perf.* Iv-issě; *Fut.* Itūrūs, *essě.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Iens (*gen.* euntīs); *Fut.* Itūrūs, *ă, ūm.*

GERUND.

Eundī, *dő, dŭm, dō.*

SUPINE.

Itŭm, *itŭ.*

REM.—The compounds of *irē* are conjugated like the simple verb, but generally contract the perfect *ivī* into *ī*, and most of them want the supine.

420. *Edĕrĕ*, *to eat*, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation, but has also certain forms like those of *essĕ*. These are as follows:

<i>Regular.</i>		<i>Irregular.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Edĕ</i> , &c.	<i>Es</i> , <i>est</i> , <i>estis</i> .
<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Edĕ</i> , &c.	<i>Es</i> , <i>estĕ</i> , <i>estĕ</i> , <i>estĕtĕ</i> .
<i>Subj. Imp.</i>	<i>Edĕrĕm</i> , &c.	<i>Essĕm</i> , <i>essĕs</i> , &c.
<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Edĕrĕ</i> .	<i>Essĕ</i> .

421. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The words *dŏmŭs* and *rŭs*, together with the genitives *hŭmī*, *bellī*, and *mīlītiæ*, are construed like names of towns (see 227); e. g.,

Dŏmŭm rĕdiit, *he returned home*.

422. VOCABULARY.

<i>Abirĕ</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>it</i> , <i>to go away, depart</i> .	<i>Irĕ</i> , <i>iv</i> , <i>it</i> , <i>to go</i> .
<i>Dŏmī</i> (<i>gen. of dŏmŭs</i>), <i>at home</i> .	<i>Mīlītiæ</i> (<i>gen. of mīlītia</i>), <i>on service, in the field</i> .
<i>Edĕrĕ</i> (<i>essĕ</i>), <i>ĕd</i> , <i>ĕs</i> , <i>to eat</i> .	<i>Nĕc—nĕc</i> , <i>neither—nor</i> .
<i>Et—ĕt</i> , <i>both—and</i> .	<i>Rĕdirĕ</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>it</i> , <i>to return</i> .
<i>Evŏlarĕ</i> , <i>ĕv</i> , <i>āt</i> , <i>to fly away, to flee</i> .	<i>Rŭs</i> , <i>rŭrīs</i> , <i>field, country</i> .

423. Exercises.

(a) 1. *Fracto puĕri brachio, abit*. 2. *Fundo in tres partes divīso, redit Athenas*. 3. *Puĕri venātum¹⁸ ivērunt*. 4. *Est (edit) ut vivat*. 5. *Nonne estis ut vivātis?* 6. *Abeat Romam*. 7. *Scriptis epistŏlis, abiērunt*. 8. *Balbus, quum manus in aquam immersisset, abiit*. 9. *Caius rus ex urbe evolavĕrit*. 10. *Caius nondum rure rediit*. 11. *Et Caesar et Balbus Romam rediērunt*. 12. *Vĕnit sacerdos, ut aram florībus cingĕret*.

(b) 1. *Caesar has not yet returned to Rome*. 2. *The*

boys have gone a hunting.¹¹ 3. Do you wish to go a hunting? 4. They say he has gone a hunting. 5. He says that he wishes to go a hunting. 6. Do you not eat to live? 7. He says that he eats to live. 8. Balbus, having crowned the boy's head with a garland, went away. 9. Caesar, having conquered his enemies, will return to Rome. 10. They all wish to return to Rome. 11. Do you wish to return home? 12. Balbus is at his own house. 13. He was with me both at home and on service. 14. You have lived many years in the country.

LESSON LXXIV.

Periphrastic Conjugations.

424. THERE are two periphrastic conjugations formed respectively from the future participles in *rūs* and *dūs*, combined with the various tenses of the verb *essē*. The first periphrastic conjugation represents the action as *future*, or as one that is about to be done; e. g., *Scriptūrūs sūm, I am about to write*.

425. The second periphrastic conjugation expresses *duty* or *necessity*; e. g., *Virtūs cōlendā est, virtue must be cultivated*.

426. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The agent, or *person by whom*, is put in the *dative* with the *part. in dūs*; with other words it is generally governed in the ablative by *ā* or *āb*.

427. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many adjectives are followed by the *dative* of the object to which the quality

is directed, or for which it exists; e. g., *Pax mihi grātissimā ērāt, peace was very acceptable to me.*

428. VOCABULARY.

Bibēre, bīb, bibīt, *to drink.*

Dēlēre, ēv, ēt, *to destroy.*

Ignārūs, ā, ūm, *ignorant.*

Inūtilis, ē, *useless, unfit for.*

Mārīmūs, ā, ūm, *marine, of the sea.*

Prōpiōr, ūs (*comp.*), *nearer.*

Pūtāre, av, āt, *to think, regard.*

Simplex, icīs, *simple.*

Subvēnirē, vēm, vent, *to go to the assistance of, to aid.*

429. Exercises.

(a) 1. Tondendae sunt oves, non deglubendae. 2. Exercenda est virtus. 3. Nonnē claudendae sunt urbis portae? 4. Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est. 5. Puer Romam mittendus est. 6. Pauperibus qui ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt, subveniāmus. 7. Quid factūri estis? 8. Simplex cibus puēris utilissimus est. 9. Luna terrae propior est quam sol. 10. Aqua marīna inutilis est bibendo. 11. Inutiles sunt libri ignāro legendi.

(b) 1. They must be sent to Athens. 2. They must be sent into the country. 3. We must be taught by the wise. 4. The city must be destroyed. 5. The gates must be shut. 6. Must not virtue be learned? 7. Must not virtue be practised? 8. Every opportunity of practising virtue¹⁴ must be seized. 9. The poor must not be defrauded of even a single grain. 10. Has he not defrauded the poor? 11. Let not the poor be defrauded of a single grain. 12. Is not the moon nearer the earth than the sun?

LESSON LXXV.

Impersonal Verbs.

430. IMPERSONAL verbs are such as are used only in the third person singular, and never take a personal subject (as *I, thou, he*). The subject in English is generally expressed by the pronoun *it*; e. g.,

Oportēt, *it behooves.*

Taedēt mē, *it disgusts me* (I am disgusted with).

431. Besides the verbs which are strictly impersonal, many others are often used *impersonally*; e. g.,

Constāt, *it is known.*

Juvāt, *it delights.*

432. The impersonal verb *licēt*, *it is lawful*, or *is allowed*, denotes *permission*, and may be translated by *may* and *might*; e. g.,

Licēt, *may* (it is allowed).

Licuit, *might* (it was allowed).

Mihī irē licēt,	<i>I may go.</i>
Tībī irē licēt,	<i>You may go.</i>
Illī irē licēt,	<i>He may go.</i>
Nōbīs irē licēt,	<i>We may go.</i>
Vōbīs irē licēt,	<i>You may go.</i>
Illīs irē licēt,	<i>They may go.</i>
Mihī irē licuit,	<i>I might have gone.</i>
Tībī irē licuit,	<i>You might have gone.</i>

REM. 1.—The dative in these examples is the indirect object after *licēt*.

REM 2.—The present infinitive must be translated by the English perfect after *licuit*, *might*, as in the above examples. (See also 408, Rem.)

(*Eng.*) I may go. (*Lat. Id.*) It is allowed me to go.

(*Eng.*) I might have gone. (*Lat. Id.*) It was allowed me (*then*) to go.

433. The impersonal verb *oportet*, *it behooves*, denotes *duty* or *propriety*, and may be translated by *ought*; e. g.,

Mē irē oportet,	<i>I ought to go.</i>
Tē irē oportet, &c.	<i>You ought to go.</i>
Mē irē oportuit,	<i>I ought to have gone.</i>
Tē irē oportuit,	<i>You ought to have gone.</i>

REM. 1.—Observe that here, too, the present infinitive is to be translated by the perfect after a past tense.

REM. 2.—The infinitive after *oportet* takes a subject accusative.

434. *English.*

Latin Idiom.

(a) I repent of my folly,	It repents me of my folly.
I am vexed at my folly,	It vexes me of my folly.
I am ashamed of my folly,	It shames me of my folly.
I pity the poor,	It pities me of the poor.
I am weary of life,	It irks me of life.
(b) Mē meae stultitiae poenitēt,	I repent of my folly.
Mē meae stultitiae pigēt,	I am vexed at my folly.
Mē meae stultitiae pudēt,	I am ashamed of my folly.
Miserēt mē pauperū,	I pity the poor.
Taedēt mē vitae,	I am weary of life.

435. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The *impersonal* verbs of feeling, *miserēt*, *poenitēt*, *pudēt*, *taedēt*, and *pigēt*, take the accusative of the person, together with the genitive of the object which produces the feeling. (See examples above.)

436. VOCABULARY.

Adessē, ādfu, *to be present.*

Amicitia, ae, *friendship.*

Constāt, *it is known, is an admitted fact.*

Diligens, entis, *diligent.*

Habitare, av, at, *to inhabit, dwell.*

Immortalis, ē, *immortal.*

Licet, *it is lawful, is permitted.*

Misĕrĕt, *one pities; tui mĕ misĕ-*
rĕt, *I pity you.*

Oportĕt, *it behooves, one ought.*

Pĭgĕt, *one is grieved at; mĕ pĭgĕt,*
I am grieved.

Poenĭtĕt, *it repents, one repents.*

Praestĕt, *it is better.*

Rĕcĭpĕrĕ (iŏ), cĕp, cept, *to re-*
ceive.

Saepĕ, *often.*

Sŏnŭs, ĭ, *sound, noise.*

Tardŭs, ă, ŭm, *slow.*

Vĕlox, ōcĭs, *swift.*

437. Exercises.

(a) 1. Constat sonum luce tardiŏrem esse. 2. Saepe facĕre praestat quam loqui. 3. Nonne licet Romae habitĕre? 4. Nonne licuit Athĕnis habitĕre? 5. Nunquam licet peccĕre. 6. Num licet Christiĕnis gloriae servĭre? 7. Puĕros oportet diligentes esse. 8. Amicitiam immortĕlem esse oportet. 9. Tui me misĕret; mei piget. 10. Sapientia semper eo contenta est quod adest. 11. Ne multa loquĕre. 12. Miserĕre nostri. 13. Natŭra omnes propensi sumus ad discendum.

(b) 1. It is well known that light is swifter than sound. 2. Is it not well known that the moon is nearer the earth than the sun? 3. Is it not well known that sound is slower than light? 4. He repents of his folly. 5. I repented of my folly. 6. Ought not Christians to do good to *as many as possible*? 7. Ought not Balbus to have kept^m his word? 8. Ought not Caius to have been condemned to death? 9. I have received many letters from you. 10. The bird has flown away from my hands.

LESSON LXXVI.

Impersonal Periphrastic.

438. THE second periphrastic conjugation is often used impersonally; e. g.,

Mihī scribendū est,	<i>I must or should write.</i>
Tībī scribendū est,	<i>you must or should write.</i>
Illī scribendū est,	<i>he must or should write.</i>
Nōbīs scribendū est,	<i>we must or should write.</i>
Vōbīs scribendū est,	<i>you must or should write.</i>
Illīs scribendū est,	<i>they must or should write.</i>

439. Here too the agent is put in the dative (see 426) when expressed. It is omitted:

- 1) When it means every body or people in general, though it may be translated by *we* or *you*; e. g.,
Edendū est, *we or you (every body) must eat.*
- 2) When the persons meant are not likely to be mistaken.

440. In the impersonal periphrastic construction, if the verb is one which governs a dative (396), its *agent* (the person by whom) must not be expressed; e. g.,

Crēdendū est Caiō.

We must believe Caius (*not, Caius must believe*).

REM.—If, in any instance, it is necessary to express the agent, it must either be done by means of the ablative with *ā* or *āb*, or the form of the expression must be changed. The two datives would leave it doubtful *which* was the *agent*.

441. VOCABULARY.

Etiām, *even.*

Lāborarē, āv, āt, *to labor, toil.*

Mētuērē, u, *to fear.*

Sēnex, sēnīs, *an old man*; pl. the aged.

442. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mihi discendum est. 2. Etiam senibus discendum est. 3. Imprōbis metuendum est. 4. Tibi evolandum est ex urbe. 5. Manendum est Romae. 6. Totam hiēmē manendum est Carthagīne. 7. Ambulandum est per urbem. 8. Laborandum est, ut discas. 9. Nonne laborandum est, ut discāmus? 10.

Num semper ludendum est? 11. Nonne resistendum est irae? 12. Num credendum est impröbis? 13. Nonne resistendum est anīno? 14. Non omnes ad discendum propensi sunt. 15. Discendum est, ut possis docēre. 16. Edendum est, ut possīmus vivēre.

(b) 1. We must dwell *in the country*. 2. We must remain *at home*. 3. We must fly from the city (into) the country. 4. The unlearned must labor, that they may learn. 5. We must fight, that we may preserve our lives. 6. The girls must walk through the city. 7. True greatness of mind must be valued at-a-very-high-price. 8. We should spare the conquered. 9. We should resist anger. 10. Should we not resist anger? 11. We should obey the laws of our country. 12. We must not spare even Balbus. 13. We must pardon both Caius and Balbus. 14. We must not believe even Caesar himself. 15. Having written his letter, he will go a-hunting.

LESSON LXXVII.

Impersonal Passive Verbs.—Prepositions.

443. THOSE verbs which take no direct object in the active, can only be used *impersonally* in the passive; e. g.,

Mihī crēdītūr,	<i>I am believed.</i>
Tībī crēdītūr,	<i>Thou art believed.</i>
Illī crēdītūr,	<i>He is believed.</i>
Nōbīs crēdītūr,	<i>We are believed.</i>
Vōbīs crēdītūr,	<i>You are believed.</i>
Illīs crēdītūr,	<i>They are believed.</i>

444. Prepositions, as we have already seen (200), show the relation of objects to each other; e. g., *in urbē hābitāt, he dwells in the city.*

445. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The following twenty-six prepositions govern the accusative; viz., *Ad, adversūs, antē, apūd, circā or circūm, cīs or cītrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, infrā, intēr, intrā, juxtā, ōb, pēnēs, pēr, pōnē, post, praetēr, prōpē, proptēr, sēcundūm, sūprā, trans, ultrā, vēsūs (rare).*

446. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The following eleven prepositions govern the ablative; viz., *A (āb or abs), absquē, cōrām, cūm, dē, ē or ex, pālām, prae, prō, sīnē, tēnūs.*

447. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The five prepositions, *clām, in, sūb, subtēr, and sūpēr*, take sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative.

REM.—*In* and *sūb* govern the accusative in answer to *whither* (i. e. after verbs of motion), and the ablative in answer to *where* (i. e. after verbs of rest). *Subtēr* generally takes the accusative. *Sūpēr* takes the accusative after verbs of motion and also when it signifies *upon*, and the ablative when it signifies *on* or *of* (as of a subject spoken or written about).

448. VOCABULARY.

<i>Cīs, on this side.</i>	<i>Intrā, within.</i>
<i>Coelūm, ī, heaven, the heavens.</i>	<i>Paucūs, ā, ūm, few, little.</i>
<i>Cōrām, before, in the presence of.</i>	<i>Piētās, ātis, loyalty, faithfulness.</i>
<i>Ergā, towards.</i>	<i>Prae, before, in comparison with.</i>
<i>Firmūs, ā, ūm, firm, sure.</i>	<i>Suprā, above.</i>
<i>Infrā, below.</i>	<i>Terrā, ae, the earth.</i>

449. Exercises.

(a) 1. *Vobis non credītur.* 2. *Bonis credītur.* 3. *Gloriae tuae invidētur.* 4. *Irae resistītur.* 5. *Pauci veniunt ad senectūtem.* 6. *Nulla est firma amicitia*

inter malos. 7. Piētas erga patriam conservanda est. 8. Galli cis Rhenum habitant. 9. Intra muros habitābat. 10. Coram popūlo loquētur. 11. Argentum prae auro contemnītur. 12. Caecus de coloribus judicāre non potest. 13. Supra nos coelum conspicimus; infra nos terram.

(b) 1. The good are always envied. 2. The wicked should never be believed. 3. The conquered must be spared. 4. We are envied. 5. They will be envied. 6. He was buried within the walls. 7. They wish to be buried on-this-side-of the Rhine. 8. Let us walk through the city. 9. They have returned from the city into the country. 10. Do you wish to go into the city? 11. My father will remain in the city the whole winter.

LESSON LXXVIII.

Conjunctions.

450. CONJUNCTIONS are merely *connectives*; as, pătēr et filiūs, *the father and son*. Certain combinations of these require some attention.

451. *Et* followed by another *et*; *tūm* or *quūm* followed by *tūm*, are *both—and*.

452. Nōn sōlūm—sēd etiām, *not only—but also*.

453. Tām—quām, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{so—as; as—as.} \\ \text{as well—as.} \\ \text{both—and.} \end{array} \right.$

454. Etiām, *even, also*; etiām atquē etiām, *again and again*; quōquē, *also, too* (follows the word it belongs to).

455. Aut, *or*; aut—aut, vĕl—vĕl, *either—or*.
 Sĭvĕ—sĭvĕ, seu—seu, *either—or, whether—or*.
 456. Nĕc—nĕc, nĕquĕ—nĕquĕ, *neither—nor*.
 Vĕl, *or*, sometimes *even*; with superlatives, *very, extremely, possible*.
 457. At, sĕd, autĕm, vĕrũm, vĕrõ, *but*.
 Attāmĕn, tāmĕn, vĕruntāmĕn, *yet, but, but yet*.
 458. Atquĭ, *but, now* (as used in reasoning).
 459. Nām, namquĕ, ĕnĭm, *for*.
 Ergõ, *therefore, then*.
 Igĭtũr, ĭdeõ, *therefore*.
 Itāquĕ, *accordingly, and so, therefore*.
 Quārē, *wherefore*.

460. VOCABULARY.

Amphibiũm, ĭ, <i>amphibious animal</i> .	Nascĭ, nāt, <i>to be born</i> .
Audax, ācĭs, <i>audacious, daring</i> .	Nimiũs, ā, ũm, <i>excessive, too much</i> .
Dĕterrĕrĕ, u, ĭt, <i>to deter</i> .	Pũdõr, õrĭs, <i>shame, sense of shame</i> .
Inceptũm, ĭ, <i>purpose, undertaking</i> .	Somnũs, ĭ, <i>sleep</i> .
Impĕdirĕ, ĭv, ĭt, <i>to impede, hinder</i> .	

461. Exercises.

(a) 1. Et discet puer et docēbit. 2. Et Romae vixi et Carthagĭne. 3. Lupus quum ovem tum canem mormordĕrat. 4. Ovem non solum totondit, sed etiam deglupsit. 5. Nec timĭdus est, nec audax. 6. Nimiũs somnus neque anĭmo, neque corpõri prodest. 7. Non deterreor ab incepto, sed pudõre impediõr. 8. Nihil labõras; ideo nihil habes. 9. Nemo tam pauper vivit, quam natus est. 10. Amphibia et in aqua et in terra vivunt.

(b) 1. We shall go both to Rome and to Carthage. 2. Will you also accuse me? 3. Will they even con-

demn the king to death? [No.] 4. We must both learn and teach. 5. Do you not wish both to learn and to teach? 6. We might have condemned not only the father, but also the son. 7. He will either remain at Rome, or go to Athens. 8 Dogs as well as wolves sometimes bite sheep. 9. He sent his son to Rome, but was unwilling to go himself. 10. Caius has been accused of treason, but he will never be condemned. 11. He will not go a hunting, for he has buried his son.

LESSON LXXIX.

Subjunctive Mood with ūt, nē, and quō.

462. UT with subj. { 1. *in order that, that, so that.*
 2. *the infin.* (expressing purpose).
 3. *as, with infinitive.*
 4. *granting that, although.*
 5. *that, after to fear that not.*

463. When *ūt* introduces a *purpose*, the subjunctive may be rendered by *may, might*; when it introduces a *consequence* (as after *so, such*), it may be rendered by the *indicative* or *infinitive*.

464. Ut with the indicative is *as, when, since, after, how*.

465. Nē with subj. { 1. *lest, that not.*
 2. *not with the infinitive.*
 3. *not with the imperative.*
 4. *after to fear that.*

466. Nē with the imperative or subjunctive used imperatively, is simply *not*; as, *nē scrībās*, or *nē scrībē*, do not write.

467. After verbs of fearing, *ūt* and *nē* appear to change meanings; *ūt*, *that—not*; *nē*, *that* or *lest*.

468. After verbs of fearing, the *subjunctive present* must generally be rendered by the *future*; as, *vēreōr ūt faciām*, I fear that I shall *not* do, *vēreōr nē faciām*, I fear that I shall do.

469. *Quō* with the subjunctive is used to express purpose in sentences containing a comparative degree; as, *mēdicō aliquid dandū est, quō sūt studiōsiōr*, something should be given to the physician, that he may be the more attentive.

☞ For the use of tenses in the subjunctive, see 265 and 266.

470. VOCABULARY.

Cāvērē, cāv, caut, *to take care,*
be careful.

Cōgnītūs, ā, ūm, *known.*

Efficērē (iō), fēc, fecit, *to effect,*
accomplish.

Fāmēs, is, *hunger.*

Incōgnītūs, ā, ūm, *unknown.*

Mēdicūs, i, *physician.*

Mōnērē, mōnu, mōnīt, *to advise,*
warn.

Multitūdō, inīs, *multitude.*

Nūmērārē, āv, āt, *to number.*

Quō, *that, in order that.*

Sātīs (substantively), *enough.*

Stellā, ae, *star.*

Sustinērē, tīnu, tent, *to sustain,*
to endure.

Vērērī, vērit, *to fear.*

471. Exercises.

(a) 1. Multi alios laudant, ut ab aliis laudentur. 2. Stellārum tanta multitūdo est, ut numerārī non possint. 3. Mēdicis aliquid dandum est, quo sint studiosiōres. 4. Cave ne incōgnīta pro cōgnītis habeas. 5. Ne tentes quod effici non possit. 6. Vereor, ne labōres tuos augeam. 7. Vereor ne brevi tempōre famēs in urbe sit. 8. Timeo ut labōres tantos sustineas. 9. Avārus semper verētur, ut satis habeat. 10. Verebamīni ut pax firma esset.

(b) 1. The cold is so great that the snow will not melt. 2. He praised us, in-order-that he might be praised by us. 3. The multitude of men was so great that it could not be numbered. 4. The multitude is so great that it cannot be numbered. 5. He has come to aid you. 6. They have gone to Rome to aid their father. 7. I sent him home, that he might not be bitten by the dog. 8. He warned his sons not to break the laws. 9. We fear we shall increase your labors. 10. They feared that he would not be acquitted.

LESSON LXXX.

Subjunctive with quōmīnūs, quīn, and other Conjunctions.

472. AFTER verbs of *hindering*, quōmīnūs is more common with the subjunctive than nē. It may generally be translated by *from*, the verb being turned into the participial substantive.

REM.—Quōmīnūs (quō and mīnūs) means literally, *by which the less*, or, *so that the less*; e. g.,

Caiō nihil obstat quōmīnūs sīt beātūs.

(*Nothing opposes Caius by which he should be the less happy.*)

Nothing prevents Caius from being happy.

473. Quīn with subj.

- | | |
|---|--|
| { | 1. <i>but</i> (as used after negatives).
2. <i>the relative</i> with <i>not</i> .
3. <i>as not</i> with <i>infinitive</i> .
4. <i>that</i> after <i>doubt</i> , <i>deny</i> in <i>negative sentences</i> .
5. <i>from</i> or <i>without</i> with the <i>participial substantive</i> , after <i>prevent</i> , <i>escape</i> , &c. |
|---|--|

474. Quīn coincides very nearly with *but*; it is, however, generally better translated by some of the other forms given above; e. g.,

- 1) There is nobody, quīn pūtēt $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{but thinks.} \\ \textit{who does not think.} \end{array} \right.$
- 2) No one is so mad, quīn pūtēt, *as not to think.*
- 3) I do not deny, quīn turpē sīt, *that it is disgraceful.*
- 4) They never saw him, quīn rīdērēt, *without laughing.*

REM.—Quīn with the subjunctive is generally used after negative expressions and those which imply doubt.

475. The following conjunctions are used with the subjunctive; viz.,

Dūm, mōdō, dummōdō, *provided, if only.*

Līcēt, *although.*

O sī (*O if*), ūtīnām, *would that.*

Quamvīs, *however much, however.*

Quāsi, tanquām, *as if.*

REM.—Not after *provided, &c.*, is expressed by *nē*.

476. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs signifying *to abound, or be destitute of*, take the ablative; e. g., Nēmō āliōrūm ōpē cārērē pōtest, *no one can be (do) without the assistance of others.*

477. VOCABULARY.

Dūbītārē, āv, āt, *to doubt.*

Interdūm, *sometimes.*

Obstārē, stīt, stāt, *to oppose, prevent.*

Prōvīdūs, ā, ūm, *prudent, cautious.*

Terrērē, terru, terrīt, *to terrify.*

478. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Nihil impēdit, quomīnus id facēre possīmus.
2. Quid obstat, quomīnus Caius sit beātus? 3. Non

me terrēbis, quomīnus illud faciam. 4. Sapiens nunquam dubitābit, quin immortalis sit animus. 5. Nemo est tam bonus ac providus, quin interdum peccet. 6. O si quisque virtūtem colat! 7. Utīnam hoc verum sit. 8. Sic agis, quāsi me ames.

(b) 1. Nothing prevents you from being happy. 2. Nothing prevents him from doing this. 3. Does any thing prevent you from doing this? 4. We have never doubted that the soul is immortal. 5. Do you doubt that the soul is immortal? 6. There is no one who does not think (473, 2) that you were engaged in the battle. 7. He never saw the shepherd without laughing at him (474, 4). 8. Would that all citizens would observe the laws.

LESSON LXXXI.

Interrogative Sentences.

479. ALL interrogatives take the indicative when the question is put *directly*; as, *nūm crēdīs*, do you believe?

480. *Nūm* and *nē* are merely interrogative particles, and are not construed in direct questions.

481. All interrogatives take the subjunctive when the question is put *indirectly* or *doubtfully*, especially when it depends upon another verb.

482. Double questions take two different constructions, viz.:

- 1) The first clause is introduced by *nūm*, *ūtrūm*, or *nē*, and the second by *ān*.

- 2) The first clause has no interrogative word, and the second has *an* or *nē*.

483. VOCABULARY.

Enūmērārē, āv, āt, <i>to enumerate, to count up.</i>	Mīsēr, ěrā, ěrūm, <i>unhappy, miserable.</i>
Ignīs, īs, <i>m., fire, heat.</i>	Mortālīs, ě, <i>mortal.</i>
Immōbilīs, ě, <i>immovable, fixed.</i>	Nescirē, īv, īt, <i>to be ignorant, not to know.</i>
Lōcūplēs, ětis, <i>rich.</i>	Olim, <i>formerly.</i>
Majōr, ūs, ōrīs (<i>comp. of magnus</i>), <i>larger, greater.</i>	Quaestiō, ōnīs, <i>question.</i>
Mīnōr, ūs, ōrīs (<i>comp. of parvus</i>), <i>smaller.</i>	Rōtundūs, ā, ūm, <i>round.</i>
Mōbilīs, ě, <i>movable.</i>	Undē, <i>whence.</i>

484. Exercises.

(a) 1. Estne anīmus immortalīs? 2. Visne miser esse? 3. Quis enūmēret artium multitudīnem? 4. Nescio, unde sol ignem habeat. 5. Quid dicam nescio. 6. Olim quaestio erat, num terra rotunda esset. 7. Utrum major est sol, an minor, quam terra? 8. Num sol mōbilīs, an immōbilīs? 9. Sumusne immortalēs, an mortālēs?

(b) 1. Who has come? 2. I do not know who has come. 3. Do not all men wish to live? 4. Do you fear that the king will be conquered? 5. Do you not fear that we shall be condemned to death? 6. What did he say? 7. We do not know what he said. 8. Are they rich or poor? 9. You do not know whether we are rich or poor. 10. Whence does the moon derive (*habēre*) her light? 11. He does not know whence the moon derives her light. 12. Who knows whence the sun derives his light?

LESSON LXXXII.

*Conditional Sentences.—Subjunctive in Relative Clauses
and with Quum.*

485. EVERY conditional sentence consists of two parts, *the condition* and *the consequense*; e. g.,

Sī quīd hābeāt, dābīt.

If he has any thing, he will give it.

REM.—Here *sī quīd hābeāt* is the *condition*, and *dābīt* the *consequence*.

486. Conditional sentences are of three kinds:

- 1) Those which assume the *condition* to be *true*;
e. g.,

Sī quīd hābēt, dāt.

If he has any thing, he gives it.

- 2) Those which represent the condition as *possible*; e. g.,

Sī quīd hābeāt, dābīt.

If he has any thing, he will give it.

- 3) Those which represent the condition as *impossible*; e. g.,

1. Sī quīd hābērēt, dārēt.

If he had any thing, he would give it.

2. Sī quīd hābuissēt, dēdissēt.

If he had had any thing, he would have given it.

487. It must be observed:

- 1) That *the condition* is expressed in the first of the above classes by the *indicative*, in the second by the *subjunctive present* or *perfect*, and in the third by the *subjunctive imperfect* or *pluperfect*.

- 2) That *the consequence* is expressed in the first two of these classes by the *indicative* (or sometimes by the *imperative*), and in the third by the *subjunctive imperfect* or *pluperfect*.

488. The relative clause takes the subjunctive:

- 1) When it expresses a *purpose* or *result*; e. g.,

1. Lēgātōs mīsērunt, quī dīcērent.

They sent ambassadors to say (*that they might say*).

2. Nēquē ěnīm tū ĩs ěs quī nesciās.

Nor indeed are you such an one as not to know (*who may not know*).

- 2) When it *defines* or *explains* some indefinite antecedent, whether affirmative or negative; e. g.,

1. Sunt quī pŭtent.

There are (some) who think, *or* some persons think.

2. Nēmō est, quī haud intēllīgāt.

There is no one who does not understand.

489. Quŭm (cŭm) takes the subjunctive when it introduces a *cause* or *reason*, or in any way shows the dependence of one event upon another; e. g.,

Quae cŭm ĩtā sint.

Since these things (*lit.* which things) are so.

490. Quum, as an adverb of time (*when*), takes the indicative; e. g.,

Itēr faciēbām quŭm Balbŭm vīdēbām.

I was travelling *when* I saw Balbus.

The use of *quŭm* with the *perfect* or *pluperfect subjunctive* to supply the place of a perfect active participle, has already been noticed (367).

491. VOCABULARY.

Consulĕrĕ, sŭlu, sult, <i>to consult,</i> <i>ask advice.</i>	Suādĕrĕ, suās, suās, <i>to advise.</i>
Nātiŏ, ōnis, <i>nation.</i>	Sustĭnĕrĕ, tĭnu, tent, <i>to sustain,</i> <i>withstand.</i>
Pertĭnescĕrĕ, tĭmu, <i>to fear</i> <i>greatly.</i>	Vulnĕrārĕ, āv, āt, <i>to wound.</i>

492. Exercises.

(a) 1. Peccāvit, si id fecit. 2. Peccābit, si id faciat. 3. Peccārent, si id facĕrent. 4. Peccavissent, si id fecissent. 5. Si vis beātus, impĕra anĭmo. 6. Si me consŭlis, suadeo. 7. Patriam auro, si potuisset, vendidisset. 8. Sunt qui rideant. 9. Erant qui saltavissent. 10. Caesar equitātum, qui sustinĕret hostium impĕtum, misit. 11. Nulla est enim natio quam pertimescāmus.

(b) 1. If he is alive (*lives*), he is now at Athens. 2. If he remains at Athens, he will learn much. 3. If he had gone to Rome, he would have been killed. 4. They would have sold their country, if they could. 5. If the king had been in the city, he would have pardoned you. 6. There were some who were wounded. 7. Since we cannot remain at Rome, we will go to Athens. 8. Caesar had sent two legions to attack (make an attack upon) the enemy.

LESSON LXXXIII.

Participles.

493. PARTICIPLES assume an assertion, which may be formally stated in a sentence whenever it is necessary or convenient to do so; thus, *puĕr rĭdens*, may be vari-

ously translated, according to the connection; as, *the boy who laughs, the boy when he laughs, &c.*

494. Participles may sometimes be translated by a relative clause; e. g.,

1. Puēr rīdens $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the boy who laughs.} \\ \text{the boy who was laughing.} \end{array} \right.$
2. Puēr rīsūrūs, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the boy who is going to laugh.} \\ \text{the boy who will laugh.} \end{array} \right.$
3. Puēr āmātūs, *the boy who is (or was) loved.*
4. Puēr āmandūs, *the boy who ought to be loved.*

495. If no substantive is expressed, supply *man, men, he, she, or those, &c.*; e. g.,

1. Rīdentīs, *of him who laughs.*
2. Rīdentiūm, *of those who laugh.*

496. With a neuter plural participle, supply *things*; e. g.,

Praeterītūrā, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{things that will pass away.} \\ \text{what will pass away.} \end{array} \right.$

REM.—Participles, being parts of verbs, of course govern the same cases.

497. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *when* or *while*; e. g.,

Rīdens, *when (or while) he is (or was) laughing.*

REM.—In a sentence with *when* or *while*, we often omit the auxiliary verb; e. g.,

Rīdens, *when laughing.*

498. If the participle stands alone, *he, they, a man, men, or one, &c.*, must be supplied as the subject of the verb; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *when he (or one) is laughing.*
2. Rīdentēs, *when men (or they) are laughing.*

499. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *if*; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *if a man (he or one) laughs.*
2. Amātūs, *if a man (he or one) is loved.*

500. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *because, for, since*, or by participial substantives with *from* or *through*.

501. Dūbītans, {
1. *because I doubt.*
 2. *for I doubt.*
 3. *since I doubt.*
 4. *from doubting.*
 5. *through doubting.*

502. VOCABULARY.

Adulātōr, ōrīs, *flatterer.*

Disjungērē, junx, junct, *to separate.*

Dūrārē, āv, āt, *to last.*

Expellērē, pūl, puls, *to expel, banish.*

Fēlicītās, ātis, *happiness.*

Immensūs, ā, ūm, *immense.*

Innoxīūs, ā, ūm, *harmless.*

Intervallūm, ī, *distance, space.*

Perfīdiā, ae, *perfidy.*

Perpētūō, *for ever.*

Pervēnīrē, vēn, vent, *to arrive at, reach.*

Piūs, ā, ūm, *pious.*

Plācēre, plăcu, plăcīt, *to please.*

Rēvertērē, vert, vers, *to return, turn back.*

Sātiārē, āv, āt, *to satisfy.*

Vīdērī, vīs, *to seem.*

Vītūpērārē, āv, āt, *to reprove, criticise.*

503. Exercises.

(a) 1. Sapiens bona semper placitūra laudat. 2. Pii homīnes ad felicitātem perpetuo duratūram pervenient. 3. Adulātōr aut laudat vituperanda, aut vituperat laudanda. 4. Leōnes satiāti (497) innoxii sunt. 5. Equum emptūrus (499) cave ne decipiāris. 6. Roma expulsus Carthagīne puēros docēbit. 7. Respondent

se perfidiam veritos (501) revertisse. 8. Stellae nobis parvae videntur, immenso intervallo a nobis disjunctae.

(b) 1. He who does wrong (494) is never happy. 2. Those who read this book will learn much. 3. There are some who think (488, 2) little of happiness which will not last. 4. The wise prize very highly the happiness which will last for ever. 5. They learned much while remaining at Rome (497). 6. If you love your parents (499), you will obey them. 7. We shall pardon him if condemned. 8. He fled from the city, because he had been accused of bribery (501).

LESSON LXXXIV.

Participles—continued.

504. PARTICIPLES may sometimes be translated by verbs with *though* or *although*; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *though he laughs.*
2. Amātūs, *though he is (was, &c.) loved.*

505. We often omit the auxiliary verb after *though*; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *though laughing.*
2. Amātūs, *though loved.*

506. Participles may sometimes be translated by verbs or participial nouns, with *after*; e. g.,

1. Passūs (Act.), { 1. *after he has (had) suffered.*
2. *after suffering.*
2. Amātūs, { 1. *after he was (has been) loved.*
2. *after he had been loved.*
3. *after having been loved.*

507. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs followed by the conjunction *and*; e. g.

1. Rīdens exclāmāt.

He laughs and exclaims (lit. laughing he exclaims).

2. Rīdens exclāmāvīt.

He laughed and exclaimed.

REM.—In the above examples the participle is construed by the same tense as the accompanying verb; sometimes, however, a different tense must be used; e. g.,

Correptūm lēpōrēm lācērāt.

He has seized the hare and is mangling it.

508. Participles with *nōn* may be translated by participial substantives depending upon the preposition *without*; e. g.,

1. Nōn rīdens, *without laughing.*

2. Nōn amātūs, { 1. *without being loved.*
2. *without loving him.*

3. Vītūpērāt lībrōs nōn intellectōs.

He censures books (not understood) without understanding them.

509. Participles in the ablative absolute may be construed like participles in any other construction, the Latin substantive being translated either by the nominative or the objective; e. g.,

Tarquīniō rēgnantē, *when Tarquin was king.*

Tē sēdentē, *as you were sitting.*

Captā Tŷrō, *after Tyre was taken.*

510. Participles may often be translated by substantives of kindred meaning; e. g.,

Lēgēs viōlātae, *the violation of the laws* (lit. *the violated laws*).

Vērē apprōpinquantē, *on the approach of spring*.

511. VOCABULARY.

Adventūs, ūs, *approach*.

Antē (*prep. with accus.*), *before*.

Apprōpinquāre, āv, āt, *to approach*.

Coenā, ae, *supper, feast*.

Cōgnoscerē, nōv, nīt, *to ascertain*.

Comprehendēre, hend, hens, *to arrest, comprehend*.

Intelligēre, lex, lect, *to understand*.

Pōnēre, pōsu, pōsit, *to place*.

Prōficisci, prōfect, *to set out, to start*.

Transīre, i, it, *to pass over*.

Vēr, vērīs, n., *spring*.

512. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ad coenam vocātus, nondum venit. 2. Multa transīmus ante oculos posīta. 3. Oculus, se non videns, alia videt. 4. Cum legionībus profectus celerīter adēro. 5. Comprehensum homīnem Romam ducēbant. 6. Non petens regnum accēpit. 7. Multi vitupērant libros non intellectos. 8. His responsis datis, itērum ad eum Caesar legātos mittit. 9. Cognīto Caesāris adventu, legātos ad eum mittunt.

(b) 1. He will not be condemned, although he has been accused of treason. 2. Although invited to the feast, they will not come. 3. They were accused and (507) condemned. 4. He will receive the government without seeking it (508). 5. We censure these boys without knowing them. 6. They were put to death without having been condemned. 7. Having ascertained the approach of our army, the enemy fled. 8. Birds will return on the approach of spring.

LESSON LXXXV.

Derivation of Nouns.

513. WORDS may be formed in two ways; viz.,

- 1) By *derivation*, i. e., by the addition of certain endings to the roots of other words; e. g., *moerõr*, sadness, formed by the addition of *õr* to *moer*, the root of *moerẽrě*, to be sad.
- 2). By *composition*, i. e., by the union of two or more words, or their roots; e. g., *běněvõlens*, benevolent, well-wishing, from *běně*, well, and *võlens*, wishing.

514. Nouns may be derived from other nouns, and from adjectives and verbs.

515. The endings, *lūs*, *lǎ*, *lũm*, added to the root of nouns, with a connecting vowel (sometimes *ĩ* or *õ*, but generally *u*, which sometimes takes *c* before it), form *diminutives*; e. g., *hortũlũs* (hortus), a little garden.

516. The masculine endings, *ĩdēs* (or *ĩdēs*), *ǎdēs*, and *iǎdēs*, and the feminine *ās* and *īs*, added to the root of names of persons, form *patronymics* or *names of descent*; e. g., *Priǎmĩdēs* (Priamus), a son or descendant of Priam; *Tantǎlĩs* (Tantalus), daughter of Tantalus.

517. *Atūs*, *ĩtās*, and *ũrǎ*, added to the root of nouns, denote *office*, *rank*, or *body of men*; e. g., *consũlǎtũs* (consul), consulship; *cĩvĩtās* (civis), state, body of citizens.

518. *Iũm*, added to the root of nouns, denotes the *state* or *condition* of the objects expressed by the primitive; sometimes an *assemblage* of those objects; e. g., *servĩtiũm* (servus), either servitude or domestics.

519. The endings, *ĩtās*, *iǎ*, *ĩtiǎ*, *ĩtũdõ*, and *tũs* (gen.

tūtīs), added to the root of adjectives, form *abstract nouns*; e. g., *bōnītās* (bonus), goodness; *dīlīgentiā* (diligens), diligence; *multītūdō* (multus), multitude; *virtūs* (vir), virtue, manliness.

520. The endings, *ā* and *ō*, added to the first root of verbs, and *or* (fem. *rix*) to the third, denote the *agent* or *person who*; e. g., *scrībā* (scribere), a scribe; *bībo* (bibere), a drunkard; *victōr* (vincere), a conqueror.

521. *Or* and *iūm*, added to the first root, and *iō*, *ūs*, and *ūrā* to the third, denote the *action* or *state* expressed by the verb; e. g., *pāvōr* (pavere), fear; *gaudiūm* (gaudere), joy; *actiō* (agere, act), an action, &c.

522. *Idō* and *īgō*, added to the first root, denote the *abstract* of the primitive; e. g., *cūpīdō* (cupere), desire.

523. *Mēn* and *mentūm*, added to the first root, denote the *thing done*, *that by which it is done*, or *that which does*; e. g., *tēgmēn* (tegere), a covering; *flūmēn* (fluere), a stream, river.

524. *Um*, added to the third root, denotes the *action* of the verb, or the *means* or *result* of it; e. g., *tectūm* (tegere), roof, covering; *scriptūm* (scribere), a writing.

525. VOCABULARY.

Adjūvārē, jūv, jūt, *to aid, help.*

Adventūs, ūs (advenīre), *approach, arrival.*

Circumdārē, dēd, dāt, *to surround.*

Civītās, ātis (civis), *state.*

Dilīgentiā, ae (diligens), *diligence.*

Fūgārē, āv, āt, *to put to flight.*

Hortūlūs, ī (hortus), *a little garden.*

Impērātōr, ōris (imperāre), *commander.*

Multītūdō, īnis (multus), *multitude.*

Nuntiārē, āv, āt, *to announce, report.*

Pastōr, ōris (pascere), *shepherd.*

Sēnātūs, ūs (senex), *senate.*

526. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Hortūli nostri multos flores habent. 2. Imperātor quam maxīmas copias comparāvit. 3. Dili-gentia tua labōrem patris adjūvit. 4. Hic nuntius ad-ventum tuum nuntiavērat. 5. Cicerōnem magna po-pūli multitūdo circumdēdit. 6. Pastor fugāvit lupum qui ovem unam momordērat.

(b) 1. Have you seen the shepherd's dog? 2. We went to see the boy's little garden. 3. Let them not come into the senate. 4. He has announced the arrival of the king. 5. Did you not announce the arrival of the leaders? 6. Caesar said that he would put to flight the forces of the enemy. 7. The commander has sent messengers to Rome. 8. The leaders will collect as large forces as possible. 9. The laws of the state have been violated by the commander.

LESSON LXXXVI.

Derivation of Adjectives.

527. ADJECTIVES may be derived from nouns and verbs.

528. The endings, *ālīs*, *ārīs*, *īcūs*, *īlīs*, and *iūs*, added to the root of nouns = *of*, *belonging to*, *related to*; e. g., *rēgālīs* (rex), regal; *pōpūlārīs* (populus), popular; *cīvī-līs* (civis), civil, &c.

529. *Aceūs*, *iciūs*, *eūs*, and *inūs*, denote the *material*; the first two sometimes *origin*, and the last two some-times *similarity*; e. g., *pātrīciūs* (pater), patrician; *au-reūs* (aurum), golden, &c.

530. *Osus* and *lentus* (often with connecting vowel *u*), denote *fulness, abundance*; e. g., *āquōsūs* (aqua), watery; *lūtulentūs* (lutum), full of mud.

531. *Āeūs*, *ānūs* (*iānūs*), *iensīs*, and *īnūs*, added to the root of proper names of places, denote *native of, occupant of*; e. g., *Rōmānūs* (Roma), a Roman; *Athēniensīs* (Athenae), an Athenian, &c.

532. *Ariūs* (generally used substantively), denotes *occupation, sometimes pertaining to*; e. g., *consiliāriūs* (consilium), counselling, or a counsellor.

533. *Atūs*, *ītūs*, and *ūtūs* = *furnished with*, &c.; e. g., *aurātūs* (aurum), gilt; *turrītūs* (turris), turreted, &c.

534. *Stūs* = *being in, having in one's self*; e. g., *rōbustūs* (robur), robust.

535. Adjectives may be derived from verbs by the use of the following endings:

- 1) *Ax* = *having a propensity to perform the action of the verb*; e. g., *ēdax* (edēre), voracious.
- 2) *Bundūs* and *cundūs* = *the strengthened meaning of the present participle used adjectively*; e. g., *mīrābundūs* (mirāri), full of admiration, &c.
- 3) *Idūs* (and sometimes *uūs*) = *the quality indicated by the verb*; e. g., *algīdus* (algēre), cold.
- 4) *Iīs* and *bīīs* = *capable of being, easy to be*; e. g., *dōcīīs* (docēre), easy to be taught, docile; *crēdībīīs* (credēre), capable of being believed, credible.

536. VOCABULARY.

Anūlūs, ī, a ring.

Athēniensīs, ē (Athēnae), Athenian.

Carthāgīniensīs, ē (Carthāgo), Carthaginian.

Civīlīs, ē (civis), civil.

Fallax, ācis (fallēre), false, de-
ceptive.

Fabūlōsūs, ā, ūm (fabūla), fa-
bulous.

Gallicūs, ā, ūm (Gallia), <i>Gallic</i> , pertaining to Gaul.	Octō, eight.
Incredibilis, ē (in and credere), incredible.	Pōpŭlārīs, ē (popŭlus), <i>popular</i> .
Narrārē, āv, āt, to relate.	Sōcrātēs, īs, <i>Socrates</i> , a celebra- ted Athenian philosopher.
Narrātiō, ōnīs (narrāre), <i>narra-</i> <i>tive, story.</i>	Spēcīōsŭs, ā, ūm (species), <i>spe-</i> <i>cious, plausible.</i>
	Vincīrē, vinx, vinet, to bind.

537. Exercises.

(a) 1. Haec narratio est fabulōsa. 2. Non sum tam imprūdens, ut verbis speciōsis decipiar. 3. Spe fallāci decepti estis; cavēte ne itērum decipiamīni. 4. Quis credat illud quod incredibile est? 5. Caesar octo libris bellum Gallicum, tribus civīle narrāvit. 6. Athenienses Socrātis damnāti (506) pedem ferro vinxērunt.

(b) 1. Many have been deceived by false hopes. 2. Let us not be deceived by false words. 3. These narratives are incredible. 4. He has given his sister two gold rings. 5. The Romans waged many wars. 6. The Carthaginians were conquered by the Romans. 7. The Athenians condemned Socrates to death. 8. They cannot deceive the judge by specious words. 9. The senator wishes to be popular. 10. They are waging a civil war.

LESSON LXXXVII.

Derivation of Verbs and Adverbs.

538. VERBS may be derived from nouns and adjectives, and from other verbs.

539. Verbs derived from nouns and adjectives are generally called *denominatives*.

540. Transitive denominatives end in *ārě* (dep. *ārī*) or *īrě*; e. g., *cūrārě* (cura), to take care of; *fīnīrě* (finis), to finish.

541. Intransitive denominatives end in *ērě* or *scērě*; e. g., *flōrērě* (flos), to bloom; *mātūrescērě* (maturus), to become ripe.

REM.—The ending *scērě* is joined to the root by means of a connecting vowel; *e* is the connecting vowel in the above example.

542. Verbs derived from other verbs comprise four distinct classes, viz.: *frequentatives*, *inchoatives*, *desideratives*, and *diminutives*.

543. Frequentatives denote *repeated* or *continued* action, and are formed by the addition of *ārě* or *ītārě* to the third root, except in the first conjugation, where they add *ītārě* to the first root; e. g., *hābītārě* (habēre), to inhabit; *vōlītārě* (volāre), to fly often, to flit.

544. Inchoatives denote the *beginning* or *increase* of an action, and are formed by the addition of *scērě* to the first root with a connecting vowel; e. g., *clārescērě* (clārēre), to grow bright, or clear.

545. Desideratives denote a *desire* to do the action of the primitive, and are formed by adding *ūrērě* to the third root; e. g., *ēsūrērě* (edēre), to desire to eat.

546. Diminutives denote a *feeble* action, and are formed by adding *illārě* to the first root; e. g., *cantillārě* (cantāre), to sing in a feeble voice.

547. Derivative adverbs generally take one of the following endings, viz.:

1) When derived from nouns, *tīm*, *ītūs*; e. g., *grēgātīm* (grex), in flocks; *fundītūs* (fundus), from the foundation.

2) When derived from adjectives, *ě*, *ē*, *o*, *těr* (con-

necting vowel *i* except after *n*); e. g., *vērē* (verus), truly; *fācīlē* (facilis), easily; *cītō* (citus), quickly; *fortitēr* (fortis), bravely.

- 3) When derived from verbs, *īm* added to the third root; e. g., *stātīm* (stare, stat), immediately.

548. VOCABULARY.

Cantārē, av, āt (canēre), *to sing.*
Cūrārē, av, āt (cura), *to take care of.* [guard.

Custōdirē, iv, it (custos), *to*

Finirē, iv, it (finis), *to finish.*

Flōrescērē (flōrērē), *to begin to bloom.*

Fortitēr (fortis), *bravely.*

Germaniā, ae, *Germany.*

Hābitārē, av, āt (habēre), *to inhabit, dwell.*

Lūdūs, ī, *play, sport*, pl. *games.*

Nuntiārē, av, āt (nuntius), *to announce, report.*

Occultārē, av, āt (occulēre), *to hide, conceal.*

Prōvinciā, ae (pro and vincēre), *province.*

Pūgnārē, av, āt (pugna), *to fight.*

Saevirē, iv or i, it (saevus), *to rage, to be cruel.*

Spectārē, av, āt (spēcērē), *to see, look at.*

Stātīm (stare), *immediately.*

Tectūm, ī (tegēre), *a covering, roof, house.*

Vīgilarē, av, āt (vigil), *to watch, remain awake.*

549. Exercises.

(a) 1. Labōrem nostrum finivimus. 2. Canes tecta nostra custodivērunt. 3. Bellum saevit per Germaniam. 4. Dormivistīne, an vigیلāsti? 5. Puellae in horto cantābant. 6. Corpōra nostra curaverāmus. 7. Puēri ludos spectavērunt. 8. Arbōres florescunt. 9. Hic ad summam gloriam florescēbat. 10. Decrevimus habitāre in provincia. 11. Consilia sua occultavērunt. 12. Si te vidērit, statim curret ad te.

(b) 1. Have they announced your arrival? 2. Who will announce the arrival of the king? 3. Caesar sent

very large forces to guard the city. 4. They have gone into the country to witness the games. 5. They have finished the war. 6. We wish to finish the work. 7. The enemy are said to have fought bravely. 8. The flowers are beginning to bloom in our garden. 9. Do you wish to live (dwell) in the city? 10. We wish to live in the country.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

Composition of Words.

550. PREPOSITIONS often enter into composition with other words, as prefixes.

REM.—Many prepositions undergo no change of form on entering into composition, and merely impart to the simple word their own force. These, of course, require no special notice; others, however, present some peculiarities.

- 1) A, āb, abs = *away from*; e. g., abstīnĕrĕ (abs and tĕnĕrĕ), to abstain from. In substantives and adjectives, it denotes *privation*; e. g., āmens (ā and mens), without mind, mad.
- 2) Ad = *to* (*d* often assimilated before consonants, except *d*, *j*, *m*, and *v*); e. g., accĭpĕrĕ (ad and cĕpĕrĕ), to accept.
- 3) Cŏn (cŭm) = *with, together*, sometimes *completely* (*co* before *h* and *vowels*; *com* before *b*, *p*, and sometimes before a vowel; *n* assimilated before *l*, *m*, and *r*); e. g., condŭcĕrĕ (con and dŭcĕrĕ), to lead together, collect.
- 4) Dĕ = *from, down*; e. g., dĕdŭcĕrĕ (dĕ and dŭcĕrĕ), to deduce. In substantives and adjectives, *privation*; e. g., dĕmens (de and mens), mad.
- 5) E, ex = *out of, thoroughly* (*e* before liquids and *b*, *d*, *g*, and *v*; *ef* before *f*); e. g., expugnāre (ex and pugnāre), to vanquish, storm.
- 6) In = *into, on, against* (*im* before *b* and *p*; *i* before *gn*; *n* assimilated before *l*, *m*, and *r*); e. g., incurrĕrĕ (in and currĕrĕ),

to attack. In adjectives, *not*; e. g., *indignūs* (in and dignus), unworthy.

- 7) Ob = *against* (*b* assimilated before *c, f*, and usually *p*); e. g., *oppōnĕrĕ* (ob and ponĕrĕ), to place against, to oppose.
- 8) Prō = *for, forth* (*pro* before vowels); e. g., *prōpōnĕrĕ* (pro and ponĕrĕ), to set forth, propose.
- 9) Sūb = *under, from below, somewhat* (*b* assimilated before *c, f, g*, and sometimes *m, p*, and *r*; *sus* in a few words); e. g., *subjĕrĕ* (sub and jacĕrĕ), to throw under, to subject.

551. The inseparable prepositions, *amb*, around, about; *dīs* or *dī*, asunder; *rĕ* (*rĕd* before vowels), back, again, away; *sĕ*, without, apart from; and *vĕ*, not, often occur as prefixes in compound words; e. g., *ambīrĕ* (amb and ire), to go round; *dispōnĕrĕ* (dis and ponĕrĕ), to put asunder, to distribute; *rĕdīrĕ* (red and ire), to return; *sĕdūcĕrĕ* (se and ducĕrĕ), to lead apart; *vĕsānūs* (ve and sanus), not sane, insane.

552. Adverbs are sometimes used as prefixes; e. g., *bĕnĕvōlens* (bene and volens), benevolent; *mālĕvōlens* (male and volens), wishing ill, malevolent.

553. Certain vowel-changes often take place in forming compound words; thus, *a, e* and *ae* are often changed into *i* (*a* sometimes into *e*); e. g., *accĭpĕrĕ* (ad and capĕrĕ), *abstĭnĕrĕ* (abs and tenĕrĕ), *occĭdĕrĕ* (ob and caedĕrĕ).

REM. 1.—Having examined the prefixes, we pass to notice a few terminations of frequent occurrence in compound words.

REM. 2.—When the first part of a compound is a noun, the connecting vowel is generally short *i*, as in *āgrĭcōlā* (ager and colĕrĕ), a husbandman.

554. From *fācĕrĕ*, to do, are derived, (1) *fex*, agent; e. g., *artĭfex* (ars and facĕrĕ), an artist; (2) *fĭciūm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *artĭfĭciūm*, an art; (3) *fĭcūs*, he who does (*adjectively*); e. g., *bĕnĕfĭcūs*, beneficent.

555. From *căpěre*, to take, are derived, (1) *ceps*, agent; e. g., *princeps* (primus and capěre), one who takes the first (place), a prince, a leader; (2) *căpiũm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *princăpiũm*, a beginning.

556. From *dăcěre*, to speak, are derived, (1) *dex*, agent, one who speaks; e. g., *index*, an informer; (2) *dăciũm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *indăciũm*, a disclosure; (3) *dăcũs* (adj.), speaking; e. g., *mălădăcũs*, slanderous.

557. From *căněre*, to sing; *căn*, agent; e. g., *tăbăcăn* (tuba and caněre), a trumpeter.

558. From *vellě*, to wish; *vălens* and *vălũs* (adj.), wishing; e. g., *băněvălens* and *băněvălũs* (bene and velle), benevolent.

559. From *ferrě* and *gěrěre*, to bear; *fěr* and *gěr*, one who bears; e. g., *Lăcăfěr* (lux and ferre), Venus as morning star, the bearer of light; *armăgěr* (arma and gerěre), armor-bearer.

560. From *călěre*, to cultivate; *călă*, one who cultivates, or dwells in; e. g., *ăgrăcălă* (ager and colěre), a field-tiller, a husbandman.

561. VOCABULARY.

Addăcěre, dux, duct (ad and ducěre), to bring to.

Attingěre, tīg, tact (ad and tangěre), to reach, attain.

Conděre, dăd, dăt (con and dare), to found.

Convănăre, văn, vent (con and venăre), to assemble, convene.

Expăgnăre, ăn,ăt (ex and pugănăre), to take by storm.

Incertũs, ă, ũm (in and certus), uncertain.

Incălă, ae, m. & f. (in and colěre), an inhabitant.

Invăděre, văs, văs (in and vaděre), to go against, invade.

Ităliă, ae, Italy.

Obsăs, idăs, m. & f., hostage.

Occăděre, căd, căs (ob and caděre), to fall, set.

Occīdērē, cīd, cīs (ob and cae-
dēre), *to kill.*

Phīlōsōphūs, ī, *philosopher.*

Possīdērē, ēd, ess, *to possess.*

Princeps, īpīs (primus and
capēre), *the first, a leader,*
chief.

Vērūm, ī, *truth.*

562. Exercises.

(a) 1. Multi philosophi verum non attigērunt. 2. Rex portas urbis clausit hostībūs invadentībūs. 3. Has terras possidēmus; illas expugnabīmus. 4. Galli Romam expugnavērunt. 5. Sol post montes illos in mare occīdit. 6. Hic unus miles duos aut tres occīdit. 7. Incōlae ad eum legātos misērunt. 8. Caesar omnem senātum ad se convenīre, principumque libēros obsīdes ad se addūci jussit. 9. Incertum est quo tempōre Dido Carthagīnem condidērit.

(b) 1. The commander will collect large forces and invade Italy. 2. After having waged war for many years, they took the city by storm. 3. Caesar had ordered all the inhabitants to assemble in his presence. 4. Let us put the invading enemy to flight. 5. Romulus is said to have founded Rome. 6. It is uncertain at what time Carthage was founded. 7. I do not know at what time he returned home. 8. They say that Caius was killed in the first battle.



PARADIGMS.

Nouns.—Five Declensions.

563. ENDINGS of the Genitive Singular.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	ī,	īs,	ūs	ēī.*

REM.—Some Greek nouns are exceptions.

564. Gender in Latin is,

- 1) Natural, when determined by sex, as in English ; as, *hōmč* a man, *masc.* ; *mŭliēr*, a woman, *fem.*
- 2) *Grammatical*, when not determined by sex ; as, *sermč*, a discourse, *masc.* ; *laurŭs*, a laurel, *fem.*

565. Natural Gender.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Common.
Names of males.	Names of females.	Names applicable to both sexes.

566. The grammatical gender of nouns is determined partly by their signification, but principally by their endings.

567. Grammatical Gender, when not determined by nom. ending.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Most names of rivers, winds, and months.	Most names of countries, towns, islands, and trees.	Indeclinable nouns and clauses used as nouns.

REM.—Grammatical gender, as determined by the endings of nouns, will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

568. *First Declension.*

1. Characteristic *ae*.
2. Nominative endings : Latin *a* ; Greek *e*, *as*, and *es*.
3. Grammatical gender : *a* and *e*, *fem.* ; *as* and *es*, *masc.*

REM.—Cases coming under previous rules (565 and 567) are, of course, excepted.

* In this ending *e* is long, except in *spēī*, *fīdēī*, and *rēī*.

4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	ă,	ae,	ae,	ăm,	ă,	ă.
<i>Plur.</i>	ae,	ărŭm,	is,	ăs,	ae,	is.

REM.—The declension of Greek nouns presents some exceptions.

5. Paradigms.

1. Mūsă, *a muse.*

Sing.	Plur.
N. Mūs-ă,	Mūs-ae.
G. Mūs-ae,	Mūs-ărŭm.
D. Mūs-ae,	Mūs-is.
A. Mūs-ăm,	Mūs-ăs.
V. Mūs-ă,	Mūs-ae.
A. Mūs-ă,	Mūs-is.

2. Epitōmē, *an abridgment.*

Sing.	Plur.
N. Epitōm-ē,	Epitōm-ae.
G. Epitōm-ēs,	Epitōm-ărŭm.
D. Epitōm-ae,	Epitōm-is.
A. Epitōm-ēn,	Epitōm-ăs.
V. Epitōm-ē,	Epitōm-ae.
A. Epitōm-ē,	Epitōm-is.

3. Aenēās (*a man's name*).

N. Aenē-ăs.
G. Aenē-ae.
D. Aenē-ae.
A. Aenē-ăm (ăn).
V. Aenē-ă.
A. Aenē-ă.

4. Anchīsēs (*a man's name*).

N. Anchīs-ēs.
G. Anchīs-ae.
D. Anchīs-ae.
A. Anchīs-ēn.
V. Anchīs-ē (ă).
A. Anchīs-ē (ă).

569. *Second Declension.*

1. Characteristic ī.

2. Nominative endings: Latin, *er, ir, us, um*; Greek, *os* and *on*.3. Grammatical gender: *um* and *on*, neut.; the rest masculine, except,

1) Alvŭs, dŏmŭs, hŭmŭs, and vannŭs, which are *feminine*; pĕlă-gŭs and vĭrŭs, *neuter*; and vulgŭs, generally *neuter*, but sometimes masculine.

2) Such as come under previous rules.

4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	Nom. end.	ī,	ō,	ŭm,	ě (or like nom.),	ō,
<i>Plur.</i>	ī (<i>neut. ă</i>),	ōrŭm,	is,	ōs (<i>neut. ă</i>),	ī (<i>neut. ă</i>),	is.

REM.—A few Greek nouns are exceptions.

5. Paradigms.

Servūs, <i>slave.</i>	Rēgnūm, <i>king- dom.</i>	Gēnēr, <i>son-in- law.</i>	Agēr, <i>field.</i>
-----------------------	-------------------------------	--------------------------------	---------------------

SINGULAR.

Serv-ūs.	Rēgn-ūm.	Gēnēr.	Agēr.
Serv-ī.	Rēgn-ī.	Gēnēr-ī.	Agr-ī.
Serv-ō.	Rēgn-ō.	Gēnēr-ō.	Agr-ō.
Serv-ūm.	Rēgn-ūm.	Gēnēr-ūm.	Agr-ūm.
Serv-ě.	Rēgn-ūm.	Gēnēr.	Agēr.
Serv-ō.	Rēgn-ō.	Gēnēr-ō.	Agr-ō.

PLURAL.

Serv-ī.	Rēgn-ā.	Gēnēr-ī.	Agr-ī.
Serv-ōrūm.	Rēgn-ōrūm.	Gēnēr-ōrūm.	Agr-ōrūm.
Serv-īs.	Rēgn-īs.	Gēnēr-īs.	Agr-īs.
Serv-ōs.	Rēgn-ā.	Gēnēr-ōs.	Agr-ōs.
Serv-ī.	Rēgn-ā.	Gēnēr-ī.	Agr-ī.
Serv-īs.	Rēgn-īs.	Gēnēr-īs.	Agr-īs.

REM.—Vīr, *a man*, is declined like *gēnēr*.

6. Paradigms of Greek nouns.

1. Iliōn, <i>n. (name of a city).</i>	2. Dēlōs, <i>f. (name of an island).</i>
N. Ili-ōn.	N. Dēl-ōs.
G. Ili-ī.	G. Dēl-ī.
D. Ili-ō.	D. Dēl-ō.
A. Ili-ōn.	A. Dēl-ōn.
V. Ili-ōn.	V. Dēl-ě.
A. Ili-ō.	A. Dēl-ō.

570. *Third Declension.*1. Characteristic *īs*.2. Nominative endings: *a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x*.

3 Table of gender in the third declension.

Masculine.	[Feminine.	Neuter.
er, or, os, es <i>increasing in gen. and o, except do, go, and io.</i>	do, go, io, as, is, ys, aus, <i>s impure, es not in- creasing in gen. and x.</i>	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and us.

For exceptions, see 579.

4. Classification of nouns of the third declension, according to the formation of root from nominative ending.

Class I.]	Class II.	Class III.	Class IV.
Root like Nom.	Root adds a let- ter.	Root drops nom. ending.	Root changes nom. ending.

5. Masculine and feminine case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	..	īs,	ī,	ēm, (īm),	..	ě (ī),
<i>Plur.</i>	ēs,	ūm (iūm),	ībūs,	ēs,	ēs,	ībūs.

REM. 1.—The inclosed endings *īm* and *ī* belong only to a few words.

REM. 2.—The ending *iūm* of the genitive plural occurs in the following classes of nouns; viz.,

- 1) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*; as, *mārē*, *māriūm*; *ānīmāl*, *ānīmaliūm*.
- 2) Nouns in *is* and *es* of Class III.; as, *hostīs*, *hostiūm*; *nūbēs*, *nūbiūm*.
- 3) All monosyllables in *s* or *x* preceded by a consonant; as, *urbs*, *urbiūm*; *arx*, *arciūm*.
- 4) Nouns in *ns* and *rs* (though in these *ūm* is sometimes used); as, *cliens*, *clientiūm*; *cohors*, *cohortiūm*.

6. Neuter case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Ab.
<i>Sing.</i>	..	īs,	ī,	..	..	ě (ī),
<i>Plur.</i>	ā (iā),	ūm (iūm),	ībūs,	ā (iā),	ā (iā),	ībūs.

REM.—The inclosed endings belong to neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*.

571. CLASS I. comprises nouns in *c*,* *l*, *n*, *r*, *t*, and *y*. These either have the root the same as the nominative singular, or form it (with a few exceptions) by one of the following slight vowel-changes:

- 1) Nouns in *tēr* and *bēr* generally drop *e* in the root: as, *pātēr*, a father; root, *patr*.
- 2) Nouns in *ēr* generally change *ě* into *ī* in the root; as, *flūmēn*, a river; root, *flūmīn*.
- 3) Nouns in *ūt* change *ū* into *ī* in the root; as, *cāpūt*, a head; root, *cāpīl*.

REM.—The quantity of the radical vowel is sometimes changed; this is the case in most nouns in *āl* and *ōr*, which generally lengthen the vowel in the root.

572. CLASS II. comprises nouns of the third declension in *a*, *o*, and a few in *i*. These form the root by adding a letter to the nominative singular.

- 1) Nouns in *a*, and a few in *i*, add *t*; as, *poēmā*, a poem; root, *poēmāt*: *hydrōmēlī*, mead; root, *hydrōmēlīt*.
- 2) Nouns in *o* add *n*; as, *leō*, a lion; root, *leōn*.

REM. 1.—*O* is long in the root.

REM. 2.—Nouns in *do* and *go* change *o* into *ī*, before *n* in the root; as, *virgo*, a virgin; root, *virgīn*.

* There are only two nouns of this ending, one of which belongs to Class II.

573. CLASS III. comprises nouns of the third declension in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, *x* (= *cs* or *gs*), *is*, *ys*, *e*, a few in *i*,* and a few in *es*. They form the root by dropping the nominative ending.

- 1) Nouns in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, and *ys*, drop *s*; as, *urbs*, a city; root, *urb*; *hiems*, winter; root, *hiēm*.
- 2) Nouns in *x* (= *cs* or *gs*) drop the *s* in *x*; as, *vox* (*cs*), a voice; root, *vōc*; *rex* (*gs*), a king; root, *rēg*.
- 3) Nouns in *is*, *e*, and a few in *es*, drop those endings; as, *hostis*, an enemy; root, *host*: *nūbēs*, a cloud; root, *nūb*: *mārē*, a sea; root, *mār*.

574. CLASS IV. comprises nouns of the third declension in *as*, *os*, *us*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*. These form the root by changing *s* into *r*, *t*, or *d*.

- 1) Nouns in *as*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*, generally change *s* into *t*; as, *piētās*, piety; root, *piētāt*: *mons*, a mountain; root, *mont*: *ābiēs*, a fir-tree; root, *ābiēt*: *mīlēs*, a soldier; root, *mīlīt*. (See REM. 2, below.)

REM. 1.—Masculines in *as*, of Greek origin, insert *n* before *t* in the root; as, *ēlēphās*, an elephant; root, *ēlēphant*.

REM. 2.—Many nouns in *es* change *e* into *i*, before *t*, in the root; as, *mīlēs*; root, *mīlīt*.

- 2) Nouns in *os* and *us* generally change *s* into *r* or *t*; as, *flōs*, a flower; root, *flōr*: *sācerdōs*, a priest; root, *sācerdōt*: *virtūs*, virtue; root, *virtūt*: *gēnūs*, a kind; root, *gēnēr*: *tempūs*, time; root, *tempōr*.

REM.—Most nouns in *us* change *s* into *r*, and *u* of the nominative becomes *ē* or *ō* in the root, as in these examples.

575. Paradigms.

Mūliēr, <i>f.</i> , a woman. (root, same as nom. [126].)		Virgō, <i>f.</i> , a virgin. (root, <i>virgīn</i> [131, 2. REM. 2].)	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. Mūliēr,	Mūliēr-ēs.	N. Virgō,	Virgīn-ēs.
G. Mūliēr-īs,	Mūliēr-ūm.	G. Virgīn-īs,	Virgīn-ūm.
D. Mūliēr-ī,	Mūliēr-ībūs.	D. Virgīn-ī,	Virgīn-ībūs.
A. Mūliēr-ēm,	Mūliēr-ēs.	A. Virgīn-ēm,	Virgīn-ēs.
V. Mūliēr,	Mūliēr-ēs.	V. Virgō,	Virgīn-ēs.
A. Mūliēr-ē,	Mūliēr-ībūs.	A. Virgīn-ē,	Virgīn-ībūs.

* Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin: most of these are indeclinable; a few form the root by dropping *i*, and a few by adding *t* (572, 1).

Rex (gs), *m., a king.*(root, *rēg* [134, 2].)

Singular.	Plural
N. Rex,	Rēg-ēs.
G. Rēg-īs,	Rēg-ūm.
D. Rēg-ī,	Rēg-ībūs.
A. Rēg-ēm,	Rēg-ēs.
V. Rex,	Rēg-ēs.
A. Rēg-ē,	Rēg-ībūs.

Corpūs, *n., a body.*(root, *corpōr* [137, 2].)

Singular.	Plural.
N. Corpūs,	Corpōr-ā.
G. Corpōr-īs,	Corpōr-ūm.
D. Corpōr-ī,	Corpōr-ībūs.
A. Corpūs,	Corpōr-ā.
V. Corpūs,	Corpōr-ā.
A. Corpōr-ē,	Corpōr-ībūs.

GREEK NOUNS.

Pērīclēs (*a man's name*).

N. Pērīcl-ēs.
G. Pērīcl-īs.
D. Pērīcl-ī.
A. Pērīcl-ēm (eā).
V. Pērīcl-ēs (ē).
A. Pērīcl-ē.

Hērōs, *a hero.*

Singular.	Plural.
N. Hērō-s,	Hērō-ēs.
G. Hērō-īs,	Hērō-ūm.
D. Hērō-ī,	Hērō-ībūs.
A. Hērō-ēm (ā),	Hērō-ēs (ās).
V. Hērō-s,	Hērō-ēs.
A. Hērō-ē,	Hērō-ībūs.

576. *Fourth Declension.*

1. Characteristic *ūs*.
2. Nominative endings: *us* and *u*.
3. Grammatical Gender: *u*, neuter; *us*, masculine; except

Acūs, a needle; *dōmūs*, a house; *mānūs*, a hand; *īdūs*, the ides,
portīcūs, a gallery; *tribūs*, a tribe; which are feminine.

4. Masculine and feminine case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	ūs,	ūs,	uī,	ūm,	ūs,	ū.
<i>Plur.</i>	ūs,	uūm,	ībūs (ūbūs*),	ūs,	ūs,	ībūs (ūbūs*).

5. Neuter case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	ū,	ūs,	ū,	ū,	ū,	ū.
<i>Plur.</i>	uā,	uūm,	ībūs (ūbūs*),	uā,	uā,	ībūs (ūbūs*).

* This ending is used only in a few words.

6. Paradigms.

Fructūs, <i>m.</i> , <i>fruit</i> . (root, <i>fruct.</i>)		Cornū, <i>n.</i> , <i>a horn</i> . (root, <i>corn.</i>)	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-ūs.	N. Corn-ū,	Corn-uā.
G. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-uūm.	G. Corn-ūs,	Corn-uūm.
D. Fruct-uī,	Fruct-ībūs.	D. Corn-ū,	Corn-ībūs.
A. Fruct-ūm,	Fruct-ūs.	A. Corn-ū,	Corn-uā.
V. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-ūs.	V. Corn-ū,	Corn-uā.
A. Fruct-ū,	Fruct-ībūs.	A. Corn-ū,	Corn-ībūs.

577. *Fifth Declension.*

1. Characteristic *ēī*.*
2. Nominative ending : *es*.
3. Grammatical gender *feminine*, except *diēs*, a day (*m.* and *f.* in singular, and *m.* in plural), and *mēridiēs*, mid-day (*masc.*).
4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	ēs,	ēī,*	ēī,*	ēm,	ēs,	ē.
<i>Plur.</i>	ēs,	ērūm,	ēbūs,	ēs,	ēs,	ēbūs.

5. Paradigms.

Rēs, <i>f.</i> , <i>a thing</i> . (root, <i>r.</i>)		Diēs, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> , <i>a day</i> . (root, <i>di.</i>)	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. R-ēs,	R-ēs.	N. Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
G. R-ēī,	R-ērūm.	G. Di-ēī,	Di-ērūm.
D. R-ēī,	R-ēbūs.	D. Di-ēī,	Di-ēbūs.
A. R-ēm,	R-ēs.	A. Di-ēm,	Di-ēs.
V. R-ēs,	R-ēs.	V. Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
A. R-ē,	R-ēbūs.	A. Di-ē,	Di-ēbūs.

578. *Case-endings of Substantives.*

SINGULAR.								
	Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		Dec. V.
	<i>F.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>F.</i>
N.	ă.	ūs, ěr, ĩr,	ŭm.	various.		ūs.	ŭ.	ēs.
G.	ae.	ī.		īs.		ūs.		ēī.*
D.	ae.	ō.		ī.		uī.	ŭ.	ēī.*
A.	ām.	ŭm.		ēm (ĩm), like nom.		ŭm.	ŭ.	ēm.
V.	ă.	ě, ěr, ĩr,	ŭm.	like nom.		ūs.	ŭ.	ēs.
A.	ā.	ō.		ě (ī).		ŭ.		ē.

* In the ending of the gen. and dat. sing. *e* is long, except in *spēi* (where it is short), *fidei*, and *rei* (where it is common).

PLURAL.								
	Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		Dec. V.
	<i>F.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>F.</i>
N.	ae.	ī.	ă.	ēs.	ă or iă.	ūs.	uă.	ēs.
G.	ărūm.	ōrūm.		ūm (iūm).		uūm.		ērūm.
D.	īs.	īs.		ībūs.		ībūs (ūbūs).		ēbūs.
A.	ās.	ōs.	ă.	ēs.	ă or iă.	ūs.	uă.	ēs.
V.	ae.	ī.	ă.	ēs.	ă or iă.	ūs.	uă.	ēs.
A.	īs.	īs.		ībūs.		ībūs (ūbūs).		ēbūs.

REM.—The above table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek.

579. Table of Genders.

I. NATURAL GENDER.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Common.
Names of males.	Names of females.	Names applicable to both sexes.

II. GRAMMATICAL GENDER, independent of nominative ending.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Most names of rivers, winds, and months.	Most names of countries, towns, islands, and trees.	Indeclinable nouns, and clauses used as nouns.

III. GRAMMATICAL GENDER, as determined by nominative ending.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Dec. I.	as, es.	a, e.	
Dec. II.	er, us, os.*		um, on.
Dec. III.	er, or, os, es, <i>increasing in gen., except do, go, and io.</i>	do, go, io, as, is, ys, aus, s <i>impure</i> , x, es <i>not increasing in gen.</i>	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.
Dec. IV.	us.		u.
Dec. V.		es.	

Principal Exceptions.†

SECOND DECLENSION.

Alvūs, dōmūs, hūmūs, and vannūs, are *feminine*; pēlāgūs and vīrūs, *neuter*; vulgūs, generally *neuter*, sometimes *masculine*.

* Nouns in *ir* have natural gender.

† This list of exceptions contains some whose gender is not grammatical. They are given here for convenience of reference.

THIRD DECLENSION.

1) MASCULINES.

(*do* and *go*.) Cardő, cômădă, harpăgă, ordă, ūnădă, ligă, and inargă
(the last sometimes *fem.*).

(*as*.) As and Greek nouns in *as* (gen. *antis*).

(*is*.) Amnis, anguis, axis, cassis, cinis (or *f.*), collis, crinis, ensis, fascis, finis (or *f.*), follis, funis, ignis, lapis, mensis, orbis, panis, piscis, postis, pulvis, sanguis, torris, unguis, vectis, and vermis.

(*s impure*.) Adeps, dens, fons, forceps (or *f.*), mons, pons, quadrans, and rudens.

(*x*.) Calix, codex, cortex, grex, pollex, thorax, and vertex.

(*l*.) Sal and sol.

(*n*.) Lien, pecten, ren, and many words of Greek origin.

(*ur*.) Furfur, turtur, and vultur.

(*us*.) Lepus and mus.

2) FEMININES.

(*or* and *os*.) Arbor, cos, and dos.

(*es increasing*.) Compes, merces, merges, quies, requies, seges, and teges.

(*o*.) Carō, echō, and Argō.

(*us*.) Grus (*m.*), incus, juvenus, palus, pecus (udis), salus, senectus, servitus, sus (*m.*), tellus, and virtus.

3) NEUTERS.

(*er*.) Cadaver, iter, tuber, uber, ver, verb, and names of plants in *er*.

(*or*.) Ador, aequor, cor, and marmor.

(*as* and *es*.) Fas, nefas, vas, and aes.

(*os*.) Os (oris), os (ossis), and the Greek words, chaos, epōs, ethos, and melos.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Acus, idus, manus, porticus, and tribus, are feminine.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Diēs and mēridiēs are masculine, though the former is sometimes *fem.* in *sing.*

580. Adjectives.—First and second Declension.

1. Case-endings of adjectives of the first and second declension.

	Singular.			Plural.			A few† have Sing. thus.		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
	2.*	1.	2.	2.	1.	2.			
N.	ūs, ēr, †	ă,	ŭm.	ī,	ae,	ă.	ūs, ēr,	ă,	ŭm.
G.	ī,	ae,	ī.	ōrŭm,	ārŭm,	ōrŭm.	iūs,	iūs,	iūs.
D.	ō,	ae,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.	ī,	ī,	ī.
A.	ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm.	ōs,	ās,	ă.	ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm.
V.	ē, ēr, †	ă,	ŭm.	ī,	ae,	ă.	ē, ēr,	ă,	ŭm.
A.	ō,	ă,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.	ō,	ă,	ō.

2. Paradigms.

Bōnŭs, *good*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
N.	Bōn-ūs,	ă,	ŭm ;	Bōn-ī,	ae,	ă.
G.	Bon-ī,	ae,	ī ;	Bōn-ōrŭm,	ārŭm,	ōrŭm.
D.	Bon-ō,	ae,	ō ;	Bōn-īs,	īs,	īs.
A.	Bon-ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm ;	Bōn-ōs,	ās,	ă.
V.	Bon-ē,	ă,	ŭm ;	Bōn-ī,	ae,	ă.
A.	Bon-ō,	ă,	ō ;	Bōn-īs,	īs,	īs.

Tēnēr, *tender* : root, *tēnēr* (*e* not dropped).

	Singular.			Plural.		
N.	Tēnēr,	ă,	ŭm ;	Tēnēr-ī,	ae,	ă.
G.	Tēnēr-ī,	ae,	ī ;	Tēnēr-ōrŭm,	ārŭm,	ōrŭm.
D.	Tēnēr-ō,	ae,	ō ;	Tēnēr-īs,	īs,	īs.
A.	Tēnēr-ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm ;	Tēnēr-ōs,	ās,	ă.
V.	Tēnēr,	ă,	ŭm ;	Tēnēr-ī,	ae,	ă.
A.	Tēnēr-ō,	ă,	ō ;	Tēnēr-īs,	īs,	īs.

REM. 1.—Most adjectives in *ēr* drop *ē* before *r* of the root in all genders.

REM. 2.—The following adjectives have the genitive singular in *iūs* (the *i* is generally short in *alterius*), and the dative singular in *ī* in all genders, viz. : *aliūs*, another ; *nullūs*, no one ; *solūs*, alone ; *tōtūs*, the whole ; *ullūs*, any ; *unūs*, one ; *altēr*, the other ; *neutēr*, neither ; and *utēr*, which (of the two).

581. *Adjectives of the Third Declension.*

1. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes, viz. :

* The declensions of the different genders are here indicated by numerals.

† In adjectives in *ēr*, the *masc. nom. sing.* is generally the root (*ē* is sometimes dropped) : *ēr*, therefore, is not properly a *case-ending* ; it is given merely to show the termination of the *nom.* and *voc. sing.*, without regard to the root (107).

‡ See list, 113, REM.

- 1) Those which have three different forms in the nominative singular (one for each gender).
- 2) Those which have two (the *masc.* and *fem.* being the same).
- 3) Those which have but one (the same for all genders).

2. Adjectives of the third declension are declined in their several genders like nouns of the same *declension*, *gender*, and *ending*. It must, however, be observed,

- 1) That those which have only one form in the nominative singular have the *abl. sing.* in *ě* or *ī*, and the rest, with the exception of comparatives, in *ī* only.
- 2) That all except comparatives have, in the *plural*, the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc. neuter* in *iā*, and the *genitive* in *iūm*.

3. Paradigms.

CLASS I.

Acěr, *sharp*.

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Acěr,	ācr-īs,	ācr-ě.	N. Acr-ēs,	ācr-ēs,	ācr-iā.
G. Acr-īs,	ācr-īs,	ācr-īs.	G. Acr-iūm,	ācr-iūm,	ācr-iūm.
D. Acr-ī,	ācr-ī,	ācr-ī.	D. Acr-ībūs,	ācr-ībūs,	ācr-ībūs.
A. Acr-ēm,	ācr-ēm,	ācr-ě.	A. Acr-ēs,	ācr-ēs,	ācr-iā.
V. Acěr,	ācr-īs,	ācr-ě.	V. Acr-ēs,	ācr-ēs,	ācr-iā.
A. Acr-ī,	ācr-ī,	ācr-ī.	A. Acr-ībūs,	ācr-ībūs,	ācr-ībūs.

CLASS II.

1. Tristīs, *sad*.

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Trist-īs,	trist-ě.	N. Trist-ēs,	trist-iā.
G. Trist-īs,	trist-īs.	G. Trist-iūm,	trist-iūm.
D. Trist-ī,	trist-ī.	D. Trist-ībūs,	trist-ībūs.
A. Trist-ēm,	trist-ě.	A. Trist-ēs,	trist-iā.
V. Trist-īs,	trist-ě.	V. Trist-ēs,	trist-iā.
A. Trist-ī,	trist-ī.	A. Trist-ībūs,	trist-ībūs.

2. Tristiōr (*comparative*), *more sad*.

N. Tristiōr,	tristiūs.	N. Tristiōr-ēs,	tristiōr-ā.
G. Tristiōr-īs,	tristiōr-īs.	G. Tristiōr-ūm,	tristiōr-ūm.
D. Tristiōr-ī,	tristiōr-ī.	D. Tristiōr-ībūs,	tristiōr-ībūs.
A. Tristiōr-ēm,	tristiūs.	A. Tristiōr-ēs,	tristiōr-ā.
V. Tristiōr,	tristiūs.	V. Tristiōr-ēs,	tristiōr-ā.
A. Tristiōr-ě (ī),	tristiōr-ě (ī).	A. Tristiōr-ībūs,	tristiōr-ībūs.

CLASS III.

Fēlix, happy.

Singular.		Plural.	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. Fēlix,	fēlix.	N. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iā.
G. Fēlic-īs,	fēlic-īs.	G. Fēlic-iūm,	fēlic-iūm.
D. Fēlic-ī,	fēlic-ī.	D. Fēlic-ībūs.	fēlic-ībūs.
A. Fēlic-ēm,	fēlix.	A. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iā.
V. Fēlix,	fēlix.	V. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iā.
A. Fēlic-ē (ī),	fēlic-ē (ī).	A. Fēlic-ībūs,	fēlic-ībūs.

582. Comparison of Adjectives.

In Latin, adjectives are compared by adding to the root of the positive the following endings:

Comparative.			Superlative.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
iōr,	iōr,	iūs.	issīmūs,	issimā,	issimūm.
Examples.	Root.	Comparative.	Superlative.		
Altūs (<i>high</i>),	alt.	altiōr (iōr, iūs),	altissīmūs (ā, ūm).		
Mitīs (<i>mild</i>),	mīt.	mītiōr (iōr, iūs),	mītissīmūs (ā, ūm).		

REM. 1.—Adjectives in *ēr* add *rīmūs* (ā, ūm) to the positive, to form the superlative; e. g.,

Pulchēr, pulchriōr, pulcherriīmūs.

REM. 2.—A few adjectives in *īs* form the superlative by adding *īmūs* to the root of the positive; e. g.,

Fācīlīs (<i>easy</i>),	fācīliōr,	fācīllīmūs.
Diffīcīlīs (<i>difficult</i>),	diffīcīliōr,	diffīcīllīmūs.
Sīmīlīs (<i>like</i>),	sīmīliōr,	sīmīllīmūs.
Dissīmīlīs (<i>unlike</i>),	dissīmīliōr,	dissīmīllīmūs.

REM. 3.—The following adjectives are quite irregular in their comparison, viz.:

Bōnūs (<i>good</i>),	mēliōr,	optīmūs.
Mālūs (<i>bad</i>),	pejōr,	pessīmūs.
Magnūs (<i>great</i>),	majōr,	maxīmūs.
Parvūs (<i>little</i>),	mīnōr,	mīnīmūs,
Multūs (<i>much</i>),	plūs (pl. plūrēs, plūrā),	plūrīmūs.

583. Numerals.*

	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.	Adverbs.
1	Unūs, <i>one</i> .	Prīmūs, <i>first</i> .	Singūlī, <i>one by one</i> .	Sēmēl, <i>once</i> .
2	Duō.	Sēcundūs.	Bīnī.	Bīs.
3	Trēs.	Tertiūs.	Ternī.	Tēr.

* See Numerals, p. 145.

4	Quātuōr.	Quartūs.	Quāternī.	Quātēr.
5	Quinquē.	Quintūs.	Quīnī.	Quinquīēs.
6	Sex.	Sextūs.	Sēnī.	Sexīēs.
7	Septēm.	Septīmūs.	Septēnī.	Septīēs.
8	Octō.	Octāvūs.	Octōnī.	Octīēs.
9	Nōvēm.	Nōnūs.	Nōvēnī.	Nōviēs.
10	Dēcēm.	Dēcīmūs.	Dēnī.	Dēcīēs.

584. *Substantive Pronouns.*

SINGULAR.

1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
N. Egō, <i>I.</i>	Tū, <i>thou.</i>	
G. Meī, <i>of me.</i>	Tuī, <i>of thee.</i>	{ Suī, <i>of himself, her-</i> <i>self, itself.</i>
D. Mihī, <i>to or for me.</i>	Tybī, <i>to or for thee.</i>	{ Sībī, <i>to himself, &c.</i>
A. Mē, <i>me.</i>	Tē, <i>thee.</i>	Sē, <i>himself.</i>
V. Tū, <i>O thou.</i>		
A. Mē, <i>with, &c., me.</i>	Tē, <i>with thee.</i>	Sē, <i>with himself.</i>

PLURAL.

N. Nōs, <i>we.</i>	Vōs, <i>ye or you.</i>	
G. Nostrūm, } <i>of us.</i>	Vestrūm } <i>of you.</i>	Suī, <i>of themselves.</i>
D. Nōbīs, <i>to us.</i>	Vōbīs, <i>to you.</i>	Sībī, <i>to themselves.</i>
A. Nōs, <i>us.</i>	Vōs, <i>you.</i>	Sē, <i>themselves.</i>
V. Vōs, <i>O ye or you.</i>		
A. Nōbīs, <i>with us.</i>	Vōbīs, <i>with you.</i>	Sē, <i>with themselves.</i>

585. *Adjective Pronouns.*

I. The *Possessive Pronouns* (so called because they denote possession), *meūs, meā, meūm*; *tuūs, tuā, tuūm*; *suūs, suā, suūm*; *nostr, nostrā, nostrūm*; *vestr, vestrā, vestrūm*, are declined, as we have already seen (114, REM. 3), like adjectives of the first and second declension.

II. *Demonstrative Pronouns* (so called because they point out or specify the objects to which they refer), are *hic, illē, istē, is*, and *their compounds*, and are declined as follows:

1. *Hic, this.*

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Hic,	haec,	hōc.	Hī,	hae,	haec.
G. Hujūs,	hujūs,	hujūs.	Hōrūm,	hārūm,	hōrūm.
D. Huic,	huic,	huic.	Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.
A. Hunc,	hanc,	hōc.	Hōs,	hās,	haec.
V.					
A. Hōc,	hāc,	hōc.	Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.

2. Illě, *he or that.*

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Illě,	illă,	illŭd.	Illī,	illae,	illă.
G. Illiŭs,	illiŭs,	illiŭs.	Illŏrŭm,	illărŭm,	illŏrŭm.
D. Illī,	illī,	illī.	Illīs,	illīs,	illīs.
A. Illŭm,	illăm,	illŭd.	Illŏs,	illăs,	illă.
V.					
A. Illŏ,	illă,	illŏ.	Illīs,	illīs,	illīs.

3. Istě, *that.*

Istě, *that*, is declined like *illě*. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

4. Is, *he or that.*

(Less specific than *illě*.)

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Is,	eă,	īd.	Iī,	eae,	eă.
G. Ejŭs,	ejŭs,	ejŭs.	Eŏrŭm,	eărŭm,	eŏrŭm.
D. Eī,	eī,	eī.	Iīs or eīs,	iīs or eīs,	iīs or eīs.
A. Eŭm,	eăm,	īd.	Eŏs,	eăs,	eă.
V.					
A. Eŏ,	eă,	eŏ.	Iīs or eīs,	iīs or eīs,	iīs or eīs.

5. Idēm, *the same.*

(Formed by annexing *dēm* to *īs*.)

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Idēm,	eădēm,	īdēm.	Iīdēm,	eaedēm,	eădēm.
G. Ejusdēm,	ejusdēm,	ejusdēm.	Eŏrundēm,	eărundēm,	eŏrundēm.
D. Eidēm,	eīdēm,	eīdēm.	Eisdēm, or Iisdēm,	eisdēm, or iisdēm,	eisdēm, or iisdēm.
A. Eundēm,	eandēm,	īdēm.	Eŏsdēm,	eăsdēm,	eădēm.
V.					
A. Eŏdēm,	eădēm,	eŏdēm.	Eisdēm, or Iisdēm,	eisdēm, or iisdēm.	eisdēm, or iisdēm.

III. The *Intensive Pronoun*, *ips ē*, himself, is so called because it is used to render an object *emphatic*. It is declined as follows:

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Ipsĕ,	ipsă,	ipsŭm.	Ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsă.
G. Ipsŭs,	ipsŭs,	ipsŭs.	Ipsŏrŭm,	ipsărŭm,	ipsŏrŭm.
D. Ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsī.	Ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.
A. Ipsŭm,	ipsăm,	ipsŭm.	Ipsŏs,	ipsăs,	ipsă.
V.					
A. Ipsŏ,	ipsă,	ipsŏ.	Ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.

IV. The *Relative Pronoun*, *quī*, who, is so called because it always relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent. It is declined as follows :

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Quī,	quae,	quŏd.	Quī,	quae,	quae.
G. Cujŭs,	cujŭs,	cujŭs.	Quŏrŭm,	quărŭm,	quŏrŭm.
D. Cuī,	cuī,	cuī.	Quībŭs,	quībŭs,	quībŭs.
A. Quĕm,	quăm,	quŏd.	Quŏs,	quăs,	quae.
V.					
A. Quŏ,	quă,	quŏ.	Quībŭs,	quībŭs,	quībŭs.

V. The *Interrogative Pronouns*, *quīs* and *quī*, are so called because they are used in asking questions. *Quī* (which? what?) is used *adjectively*, and is declined like the relative. *Quīs* (who? which? what?) is generally used *substantively*, and is declined like the relative, except in the forms *quīs*, nom. masc., and *quīd*, nom. and acc. neut.

VI. *Indefinite Pronouns* are so called because they do not definitely specify the objects to which they refer; e. g., *quīdăm*, a certain one; *ăliquīs*, some one; *quisquĕ*, every one; *siquīs*, if any, &c. They are compounds either of *quīs* or *quī*, and are declined in nearly the same manner as the simple pronouns.

REM.—The compounds of *quīs* generally take *quīd* in the *neut. sing.* when used *substantively*, and *quŏd* when used *adjectively*. Some of those compounds, as *ăliquīs*, *siquīs*, take *quă* (not *quae*) in the *fem. sing.* and *neut. plur.*

586. *Paradigm of the verb Essĕ.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*am*).

Singular.	Plural.
Sŭm, <i>I am.</i>	Sŭmŭs, <i>we are.</i>
Es, <i>thou art.</i>	Estīs, <i>you are.</i>
Est, <i>he is.</i>	Sunt, <i>they are.</i>

IMPERFECT (*was*).

Singular.	Plural.
Erām, <i>I was.</i>	Erāmūs, <i>we were.</i>
Erās, <i>thou wast.</i>	Erātīs, <i>you were.</i>
Erāt, <i>he was.</i>	Erant, <i>they were.</i>

FUTURE (*shall or will be*).

Erō, <i>I shall be.</i>	Erīmūs, <i>we shall be.</i>
Eris, <i>thou wilt be.</i>	Erītīs, <i>you will be.</i>
Erīt, <i>he will be.</i>	Erunt, <i>they will be.</i>

PERFECT (*have been or was*).

Fuī, <i>I have been.</i>	Fuīmūs, <i>we have been.</i>
Fuistī, <i>thou hast been.</i>	Fuistīs, <i>you have been.</i>
Fuīt, <i>he has been.</i>	Fuērunt, <i>they have been.</i>
	Fuēre, <i>they have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT (*had been*).

Fuērām, <i>I had been.</i>	Fuērāmūs, <i>we had been.</i>
Fuērās, <i>thou hadst been.</i>	Fuērātīs, <i>you had been.</i>
Fuērāt, <i>he had been.</i>	Fuērant, <i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall or will have been*).

Fuērō, <i>I shall have been.</i>	Fuērīmūs, <i>we shall have been.</i>
Fuērīs, <i>thou wilt have been.</i>	Fuērītīs, <i>you will have been.</i>
Fuērīt, <i>he will have been.</i>	Fuērint, <i>they will have been.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*may or can be*).

Sīm, <i>I may be.</i>	Simūs, <i>we may be.</i>
Sīs, <i>thou mayest be.</i>	Sitīs, <i>you may be.</i>
Sīt, <i>he may be.</i>	Sint, <i>they may be.</i>

IMPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should be*).

Essēm, <i>I might be.</i>	Essēmūs, <i>we might be.</i>
Essēs, <i>thou mightest be.</i>	Essētīs, <i>you might be.</i>
Essēt, <i>he might be.</i>	Essent, <i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT (*may have been*).

Fuērīm, <i>I may have been.</i>	Fuērīmūs, <i>we may have been.</i>
Fuērīs, <i>thou mayest have been.</i>	Fuērītīs, <i>you may have been.</i>
Fuērīt, <i>he may have been.</i>	Fuērint, <i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should have been*).

Fuissēm, <i>I might have been.</i>	Fuissēmūs, <i>we might have been.</i>
Fuissēs, <i>thou mightest have been.</i>	Fuissētīs, <i>you might have been.</i>
Fuissēt, <i>he might have been.</i>	Fuissent, <i>they might have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.	Plural.
Es, <i>or</i> estǫ, <i>be thou.</i>	Estě <i>or</i> estǫtě, <i>be ye.</i>
Estǫ, <i>let him be.</i>	Suntǫ, <i>let them be.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT,	Essě, <i>to be.</i>
PERFECT,	Fuissě, <i>to have been.</i>
FUTURE,	Fütürüs (ǎ, ům) essě, <i>to be about to be.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE,	Fütürüs, ǎ, ům, <i>about to be.</i>
---------	-------------------------------------

587. *Regular Verbs.—Four Conjugations.*

1. Infinitive endings.

1.	2.	3.	4.
ǎřě,	ěřě,	ěřě,	irě.

2. Favorite vowels.

1.	2.	3.	4.
ǎ,	ě,	ě (ĩ),	ĩ.

588. FIRST CONJUGATION (Inf. ending *ǎřě*).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2.	3.
ǎv,	ǎt.

2. Paradigm.

Amǎřě, *to love* : 1st root, *ǎm* ; 2d, *ǎmǎv* ; 3d, *ǎmǎt*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Active, <i>I love.</i>		Passive, <i>I am loved.</i>	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Am-ǫ,	Am-ǎmŭs,	Am-ǫr,	Am-ǎmŭr,
Am-ǎs,	Am-ǎtŭs,	Am-ǎrŭs (rě),	Am-ǎmŭnŭ,
Am-ǎt ;	Am-ant.	Am-ǎtŭr ;	Am-antŭr.

IMPERFECT, *was loving* ; *was loved.*

Am-ǎbǎm,	Am-ǎbǎmŭs,	Am-ǎbǎr,	Am-ǎbǎmŭr,
Am-ǎbǎs,	Am-ǎbǎtŭs,	Am-ǎbǎrŭs (rě),	Am-ǎbǎmŭnŭ,
Am-ǎbǎt ;	Am-ǎbant.	Am-ǎbǎtŭr ;	Am-ǎbantŭr.

FUTURE, *will love ; will be loved.*

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Am-ābō,	Am-ābimūs,	Am-ābōr,	Am-ābimūr,
Am-ābis,	Am-ābitīs,	Am-ābērīs (rē),	Am-ābimīnī,
Am-ābit ;	Am-ābunt.	Am-ābitūr ;	Am-ābuntūr.

PERFECT, *have loved ; have been loved.*

Amāv-ī,	Amāv-īmūs,	Amāt-ūs sūm,*	Amāt-ī sūmūs,
Amāv-istī,	Amāv-istīs,	Amāt-ūs ēs,	Amāt-ī estīs,
Amāv-īt ;	Amāv-ērunt (ērē).	Amāt-ūs est ;	Amāt-ī sunt.

PLUPERFECT, *had loved ; had been loved.*

Amāv-ērām,	Amāv-ērāmūs,	Amāt-ūs ērām,*	Amāt-ī ērāmūs,
Amāv-ērās,	Amāv-ērātīs,	Amāt-ūs ērās,	Amāt-ī ērātīs,
Amāv-ērāt ;	Amāv-ērant.	Amāt-ūs ērāt ;	Amāt-ī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT, *will have loved ; will have been loved.*

Amāv-ērō,	Amāv-ērīmūs,	Amāt-ūs ērō,*	Amāt-ī ērimūs,
Amāv-ērīs,	Amāv-ērītīs,	Amāt-ūs ērīs,	Amāt-ī ēritīs,
Amāv-ērīt ;	Amāv-ērint.	Amāt-ūs ērīt ;	Amāt-ī ērunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may love ; may be loved.*

Am-ēm,	Am-ēmūs,	Am-ēr,	Am-ēmūr,
Am-ēs,	Am-ētīs,	Am-ērīs (rē),	Am-ēmīnī,
Am-ēt ;	Am-ent.	Am-ētūr ;	Am-entūr.

IMPERFECT, *might love ; might be loved.*

Am-ārēm,	Am-ārēmūs,	Am-ārēr,	Am-ārēmūr,
Am-ārēs,	Am-ārētīs,	Am-ārērīs (rē),	Am-ārēmīnī,
Am-ārēt ;	Am-ārent.	Am-ārētūr ;	Am-ārentūr.

PERFECT, *may have loved ; may have been loved.*

Amāv-ērīm,	Amāv-ērīmūs,	Amāt-ūs sīm,†	Amāt-ī sīmūs,
Amāv-ērīs,	Amāv-ērītīs,	Amāt-ūs sīs,	Amāt-ī sitīs,
Amāv-ērīt ;	Amāv-ērint.	Amāt-ūs sīt ;	Amāt-ī sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have loved ; might have been loved.*

Amāv-issēm,	Amāv-issēmūs,	Amāt-ūs essēm,†	Amāt-ī essēmūs,
Amāv-issēs,	Amāv-issētīs,	Amāt-ūs essēs,	Amāt-ī essētīs,
Amāv-issēt ;	Amāv-issent.	Amāt-ūs essēt ;	Amāt-ī essent.

* See 331, N.

† See 332, N.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Am-ā, <i>or</i>	Am-ātě, <i>or</i>	Am-ārě,	Am-āmīnī,
ām-ātō,	ām-ātōtě,	<i>or</i> ām-ātōr,	
Am-ātō;	Am-antō.	Am-ātōr;	Am-antōr

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Am-ārě.	Am-ārī.
PERF.	Amāv-issě.	Amāt-ūs essě.
FUT.	Amāt-ūrūs essě.	Amāt-ūm irī.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Am-ans.	PERF.	Amāt-ūs.
FUT.	Amāt-ūrūs.	FUT.	Am-andūs.

GERUND.

Am-andī, andō, andūm, andō.

SUPINES.

Amāt-ūm.	Amāt-ū.
----------	---------

589. SECOND CONJUGATION (Inf. ending *ērě*).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2.	3.
u (<i>ēv</i>),*	īt.

2. Paradigm.

Mōnērě, *to advise* : 1st root, *mōn* ; 2d, *mōnu* ; 3d, *mōnt*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Active, <i>I advise</i> .		Passive, <i>I am advised</i> .	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Mōn-eō,	Mōn-ēmūs,	Mōn-eōr,	Mōn-ēmūr,
Mōn-ēs,	Mōn-ētīs,	Mōn-ērīs (<i>rě</i>),	Mōn-ēmīnī,
Mōn-ēt ;	Mōn-ent.	Mōn-ētūr ;	Mon-entūr.

IMPERFECT, *was advising* ; *was advised*.

Mōn-ēbām,	Mōn-ēbāmūs,	Mōn-ēbār,	Mōn-ēbāmūr,
Mōn-ēbās,	Mōn-ēbātīs,	Mōn-ēbārīs (<i>rě</i>),	Mōn-ēbāmīnī,
Mōn-ēbāt ;	Mōn-ēbant.	Mōn-ēbātūr ;	Mōn-ēbantūr.

FUTURE, *shall advise* ; *shall be advised*.

Mōn-ēbō,	Mōn-ēbīmūs,	Mōn-ēbōr,	Mōn-ēbīmūr,
Mōn-ēbīs,	Mōn-ēbītīs,	Mōn-ēbērīs (<i>rě</i>),	Mōn-ēbīmīnī,
Mōn-ēbīt ;	Mōn-ēbunt.	Mōn-ēbītūr ;	Mōn-ēbuntūr.

* See 192, N.

PERFECT, *have advised ; have been advised.*

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Mönu-ī,	Mönu-īmūs,	Mönit-ūs sūm,*	Mönit-ī sūmūs,
Mönu-istī,	Mönu-istīs,	Mönit-ūs ēs,	Mönit-ī estīs,
Mönu-īt ;	Mönu-ērunt (ērē).	Mönit-ūs est ;	Mönit-ī sunt.

PLUPERFECT, *had advised ; had been advised.*

Mönu-ērām,	Mönu-ērāmūs,	Mönit-ūs ērām,*	Mönit-ī ērāmūs,
Mönu-ērās,	Mönu-ērātīs,	Mönit-ūs ērās,	Mönit-ī ērātīs,
Mönu-ērāt ;	Mönu-erant.	Mönit-ūs ērāt ;	Mönit-ī erant.

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have advised ; shall have been advised.*

Mönu-ērō,	Mönu-ērīmūs,	Mönit-ūs ērō,*	Mönit-ī ērīmūs,
Mönu-ērīs,	Mönu-ērītīs,	Mönit-ūs ērīs,	Mönit-ī ērītīs,
Mönu-ērīt ;	Mönu-erint.	Mönit-ūs ērīt ;	Mönit-ī erunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may advise ; may be advised.*

Mön-eām,	Mön-eāmūs,	Mön-eār,	Mön-eāmūr,
Mön-eās,	Mön-eātīs,	Mön-eārīs (rē),	Mön-eāminī,
Mön-eāt ;	Mön-eant.	Mön-eātūr ;	Mön-eantūr.

IMPERFECT, *might advise ; might be advised.*

Mön-ērēm,	Mön-ērēmūs,	Mön-ērēr,	Mön-ērēmūr,
Mön-ērēs,	Mön-ērētīs,	Mön-ērērīs (rē),	Mön-ērēminī,
Mön-ērēt ;	Mön-erent.	Mön-ērētūr ;	Mön-erentūr.

PERFECT, *may have advised ; may have been advised.*

Mönu-ērīm,	Mönu-ērīmūs,	Mönit-ūs sīm,†	Mönit-ī sīmūs,
Mönu-ērīs,	Mönu-ērītīs,	Mönit-ūs sīs,	Mönit-ī sītīs,
Mönu-ērīt ;	Mönu-erint.	Mönit-ūs sīt ;	Mönit-ī sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have advised ; might have been advised.*

Mönu-issēm,	Mönu-issēmūs,	Mönit-ūs essēm,†	Mönit-ī essēmūs,
Mönu-issēs,	Mönu-issētīs,	Mönit-ūs essēs,	Mönit-ī essētīs,
Mönu-issēt ;	Mönu-issent.	Mönit-ūs essēt ;	Mönit-ī essent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Mön-ē,	Mön-ētē,	Mön-ērē,	Mön-ēmīnī,
or mön-ētō,	or mön-ētötē,	or mön-ētör,	
Mön-ētō ;	Mön-entō.	Mön-ētör ;	Mön-entör.

* See 331 N.

† See 332, N.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Mön-ěřě.		Mön-ěřī.
PERF.	Mönu-issě.		Mönit-ūs essě.
FUT.	Mönit-ūrūs essě.		Mönit-ūm irī.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Mön-ens.		Mönit-ūs.
FUT.	Mönit-ūrūs.		Mön-endūs.

GERUND.

Mön-endī, endō, endūm, endō.

SUPINES.

Mönit-ūm.		Mönit-ū.
-----------	--	----------

590. THIRD CONJUGATION (Inf. ending *ěřě*).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2d, *s*, or *like 1st*; 3d, *t*, sometimes *s*.

2. Paradigm.

Rěgěřě, *to rule*: 1st root, *rěg*; 2d, *rex*; 3d, *rect*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Act., <i>I rule</i> .		Pass., <i>I am ruled</i> .	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Rěg-ō,	Rěgīmūs,	Rěg-ōr,	Rěg-īmūr,
Rěg-īs,	Rěg-ītīs,	Rěg-ěrīs (rě),	Rěg-īmīnī,
Rěg-īt;	Rěg-unt.	Rěg-ītūr;	Rěg-untūr.

IMPERFECT, *was ruling*; *was ruled*.

Rěg-ěbām,	Rěg-ěbāmūs,	Rěg-ěbār,	Rěg-ěbāmūr,
Rěg-ěbās,	Rěg-ěbātīs,	Rěg-ěbārīs (rě),	Rěg-ěbāmīnī,
Rěg-ěbāt;	Rěg-ěbant.	Rěg-ěbātūr;	Rěg-ěbantūr.

FUTURE, *shall rule*; *shall be ruled*.

Rěg-ām,	Rěg-ēmūs,	Rěg-ār,	Rěg-ēmūr,
Rěg-ēs,	Rěg-ētīs,	Rěg-ěrīs (rě),	Rěg-ēmīnī,
Rěg-ēt;	Rěg-ent.	Rěg-ētūr;	Rěg-entūr.

PERFECT, *have ruled ; have been ruled.*

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Rex-ī,	Rex-īmūs,	Rect-ūs sūm,*	Rect-ī sūmūs,
Rex-istī,	Rex-istīs,	Rect-ūs ēs,	Rect-ī estīs,
Rex-īt ;	Rex-ērunt (ērē).	Rect-ūs est ;	Rect-ī sunt.

PLUPERFECT, *had ruled ; had been ruled.*

Rex-ērām,	Rex-ērāmūs,	Rect-ūs ērām,*	Rect-ī ērāmūs,
Rex-ērās,	Rex-ērātīs,	Rect-ūs ērās,	Rect-ī ērātīs,
Rex-ērāt ;	Rex-ērant.	Rect-ūs ērāt ;	Rect-ī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have ruled ; shall have been ruled.*

Rex-ērō,	Rex-ērīmūs,	Rect-ūs ērō,*	Rect-ī ērīmūs,
Rex-ērīs,	Rex-ērītīs,	Rect-ūs ērīs,	Rect-ī ērītīs,
Rex-ērīt ;	Rex-ērint.	Rect-ūs ērīt ;	Rect-ī ērunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may rule ; may be ruled.*

Rēg-ām,	Rēg-āmūs,	Rēg-ār,	Rēg-āmūr,
Rēg-ās,	Rēg-ātīs,	Rēg-ārīs (rē),	Rēg-āmīnī,
Rēg-āt ;	Rēg-ant.	Rēg-ātūr ;	Rēg-antūr.

IMPERFECT, *might rule ; might be ruled.*

Rēg-ērēm,	Rēg-ērēmūs,	Rēg-ērēr,	Rēg-ērēmūr,
Rēg-ērēs,	Rēg-ērētīs,	Rēg-ērērīs (rē),	Rēg-ērēmīnī,
Rēg-ērēt ;	Rēg-ērent.	Rēg-ērētūr,	Rēg-ērentūr.

PERFECT, *may have ruled ; may have been ruled.*

Rex-ērīm,	Rex-ērīmūs,	Rect-ūs sīm,†	Rect-ī sīmūs
Rex-ērīs,	Rex-ērītīs,	Rect-ūs sīs,	Rect-ī sītīs,
Rex-ērīt ;	Rex-ērint.	Rect-ūs sīt ;	Rect-ī sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have ruled ; might have been ruled.*

Rex-issēm,	Rex-issēmūs,	Rect-ūs essēm,†	Rect-ī essēmūs,
Rex-issēs,	Rex-issētīs,	Rect-ūs essēs,	Rect-ī essētīs,
Rex-issēt ;	Rex-issent.	Rect-ūs essēt ;	Rect-ī essent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Rēg-ē,	Rēg-ītē,	Rēg-ērē,	Rēg-īmīnī,
or rēg-ītō,	or rēg-ītōtē,	or rēg-ītōr,	
Rēg-ītō ;	Rēg-untō.	Rēg-ītōr ;	Rēg-untōr.

* See 331, N.

† See 332, N.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Rĕg-ĕrĕ.		Rĕg-ĭ.
PERF.	Rex-issĕ.		Rect-ŭs essĕ.
FUT.	Rect-ŭrŭs essĕ.		Rect-ŭm irĭ.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Rĕg-ens.		PERF.	Rect-ŭs.
FUT.	Rect-ŭrŭs.		FUT.	Rĕg-endŭs.

GERUND.

Rĕg-endĭ, endō, endŭm, endō.

SUPINES.

Rect-ŭm.		Rect-ŭ.
----------	--	---------

3. Paradigm of verbs in i ŏ of the third conjugation.

Căpĕrĕ, *to take*: 1st root, *căp*; 2d, *cĕp*; 3d, *capt*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Căp-iŏ,	Căp-ĭmŭs,	Căp-iŏr,	Căp-ĭmŭr,
Căp-is,	Căp-ĭtĭs,	Căp-ĕrĭs (rĕ),	Căp-ĭmĭnĭ,
Căp-ĭt;	Căp-iunt.	Căp-ĭtŭr;	Căp-iuntŭr.

IMPERFECT.

Căp-iĕbăm,	Căp-iĕbămŭs,	Căp-iĕbăr,	Căp-iĕbămŭr,
Căp-iĕbās,	Căp-iĕbătĭs,	Căp-iĕbărĭs (rĕ),	Căp-iĕbămĭnĭ,
Căp-iĕbăt;	Căp-iĕbant.	Căp-iĕbătŭr;	Căp-iĕbantŭr.

FUTURE.

Căp-iām,	Căp-iēmŭs,	Căp-iār,	Căp-iēmŭr,
Căp-iēs,	Căp-iētĭs,	Căp-iērĭs (rĕ),	Căp-iēmĭnĭ,
Căp-iĕt;	Căp-ient.	Căp-iĕtŭr;	Căp-ientŭr.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Căp-iām,	Căp-iāmŭs,	Căp-iār,	Căp-iāmŭr,
Căp-iās,	Căp-iātĭs,	Căp-iārĭs (rĕ),	Căp-iāmĭnĭ,
Căp-iāt;	Căp-iant.	Căp-iātŭr;	Căp-iantŭr.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.


3d Pl. Căp-iuntő. | 3d Pl. Căp-iuntör.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Căp-iens. | FUT. Căp-iendüs.

GERUND.

Căp-iendī, dō, &c.

 The other parts of verbs in i ő are entirely regular.

591. FOURTH CONJUGATION (Inf. ending *īrē*).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 2d roots.

2d, *īv*; 3d, *īt*.

2. Paradigm.

Audīrē, *to hear*: 1st root, *aud*; 2d, *audīv*; 3d, *audīt*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Act., <i>I hear</i> .		Pass., <i>I am heard</i> .	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Aud-iő,	Aud-īmūs,	Aud-iőr,	Aud-īmūr,
Aud-is,	Aud-ītīs,	Aud-īrīs (rē),	Aud-īmīnī,
Aud-īt;	Aud-iunt.	Aud-ītūr;	Aud-iuntūr.

IMPERFECT, *was hearing*; *was heard*.

Aud-iēbām,	Aud-iēbāmūs,	Aud-iēbār,	Aud-iēbāmūr,
Aud-iēbās,	Aud-iēbātīs,	Aud-iēbārīs (rē),	Aud-iēbāmīnī,
Aud-iēbāt;	Aud-iēbant.	Aud-iēbātūr;	Aud-iēbantūr.

FUTURE, *shall hear*; *shall be heard*.

Aud-iām,	Aud-iēmūs,	Aud-iār,	Aud-iēmūr,
Aud-iēs,	Aud-iētīs,	Aud-iērīs (rē),	Aud-iēmīnī,
Aud-iēt;	Aud-ient.	Aud-iētūr;	Aud-iēntūr.

PERFECT, *have heard*; *have been heard*.

Audīv-ī,	Audīv-īmūs,	Audīt-ūs sūm,*	Audīt-ī sūmūs,
Audīv-istī,	Audīv-istīs,	Audīt-ūs ēs,	Audīt-ī estīs,
Audīv-īt;	Audīv-ērunt(ērē).	Audīt-ūs est;	Audīt-ī sunt.

* See 331, N.

PLUPERFECT, *had heard; had been heard.*

Audīv-ērām,	Audīv-ērāmūs,	Audit-ūs ērām,*	Audit-ī ērāmūs,
Audīv-ērās,	Audīv-ērātīs,	Audit-ūs ērās,	Audit-ī ērātīs,
Audīv-erāt;	Audīv-erant.	Audit-ūs ērāt;	Audit-ī erant.

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have heard; shall have been heard.*

Audīv-ērō,	Audīv-ērīmūs,	Audit-ūs ērō,*	Audit-ī ērīmūs,
Audīv-ērīs,	Audīv-ērītīs,	Audit-ūs ērīs,	Audit-ī ērītīs,
Audīv-ērīt;	Audīv-ērint.	Audit-ūs ērīt;	Audit-ī ērunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may hear; may be heard.*

Aud-iām,	Aud-iāmūs,	Aud-iār,	Aud-iāmūr,
Aud-iās,	Aud-iātīs,	Aud-iārīs (rě),	Aud-iāmīnī,
Aud-iāt;	Aud-iant.	Aud-iātūr;	Aud-iantūr.

IMPERFECT, *might hear; might be heard.*

Aud-irēm,	Aud-irēmūs,	Aud-irēr,	Aud-irēmūr,
Aud-irēs,	Aud-irētīs,	Aud-irērīs (rě),	Aud-irēmīnī,
Aud-irēt;	Aud-irent.	Aud-irētūr;	Aud-irentūr.

PERFECT, *may have heard; may have been heard.*

Audīv-ērīm,	Audīv-ērīmūs,	Audit-ūs sīm,†	Audit-ī sīmūs,
Audīv-ērīs,	Audīv-ērītīs,	Audit-ūs sīs,	Audit-ī sītīs,
Audīv-ērīt;	Audīv-ērint.	Audit-ūs sīt;	Audit-ī sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have heard; might have been heard.*

Audīv-issēm,	Audīv-issēmūs,	Audit-ūs essēm,†	Audit-ī essēmūs.
Audīv-issēs,	Audīv-issētīs,	Audit-ūs essēs,	Audit-ī essētīs,
Audīv-issēt;	Audīv-issent.	Audit-ūs essēt;	Audit-ī essent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Aud-i,	Aud-itě,	Aud-irě,	Aud-īmīnī,
or aud-itō,	or aud-itōtě,	or aud-itōr,	
Aud-itō;	Aud-iuntō.	Aud-itōr;	Aud-iuntōr.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Aud-irě.	Aud-irī.
PERF.	Audīv-issě.	Audit-ūs essě.
FUT.	Audit-ūrūs essě.	Audit-ūm irī.

* See 331, N.

† See 332, N

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Aud-iens.		PERF.	Audīt-ūs.
FUT.	Audīt-ūrūs.		FUT.	Aud-iendūs.

GERUND.

Aud-iendi, iendō, iendūm, iendō.

SUPINES.

Audīt-ūm.		Audīt-ū.
-----------	--	----------

592. *Formation of Second Root.*

Conj. I.		Conj. II.		Conj. III.		Conj. IV.
REGULAR.						
āv.		u or ēv.		s or like 1st root.		iv.

FIRST IRREGULARITY.

Radical vowel lengthened.		radical vowel lengthened.		radical vowel lengthened (and often changed).		radical vowel lengthened.
------------------------------	--	------------------------------	--	---	--	------------------------------

SECOND IRREGULARITY.

Reduplication.		reduplication.		reduplication.	
----------------	--	----------------	--	----------------	--

THIRD IRREGULARITY.

Analogy of 2d conj.		analogy of 3d conj.		analogy of 2d or 4th conj.		analogy of 2d or 3d conj.
------------------------	--	------------------------	--	-------------------------------	--	------------------------------

593. *Deponent Verbs.*

Deponent verbs are such as have a *passive form*, but an *active meaning*. They take, however, all the four participles; e. g.,

- 1) Lōquens, *speaking*; 2) lōcūtūs, *having spoken*; 3) lōcūtūrūs, *about to speak*; 4) lōquendūs, *to be spoken*.

REM.—The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the *perfect active*, which other verbs do not have.

*Irregular Verbs.*594. Paradigm of *Possē*,* to be able.2d root, *pōtu*.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. Possūm, pōtēs, pōtest, possūmūs, pōtestīs, possunt.

Imp. pōtērām; *Fut.* pōtērō; *Perf.* pōtu-ī; *Pluperf.* pōtu-ērām; *Fut. Perf.* pōtu-ērō.

* For the conjugation of the simple verb, *essē*, see 586.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. possīm ; *Imp.* possēm ; *Perf.* pōtu-ērīm ; *Pluperf.* pōtu-issēm.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. possě ; *Perf.* pōtu-issě.

PARTICIPLE.

Pōtens (used as an adjective, powerful).

595. Paradigms of *Vellē* (to be willing) and its compounds.

Vellē.	Nollē.	Mallē.
2d root, <i>vōlu</i> .	2d root, <i>nōlu</i> .	2d root, <i>mālu</i> .

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Vōlō,	Nōlō,	Mālō,
Vīs,	Nonvīs,	Māvīs,
Vult ;	Nonvult ;	Māvult ;
Vōlūmūs,	Nōlūmūs,	Mālūmūs,
Vultīs,	Nonvultīs,	Māvultīs,
Vōlunt.	Nōlunt.	Mālunt.

IMPERFECT.

Vōl-ēbām, bās, &c.	Nōl-ēbām, bās, &c.	Māl-ēbām, bās, &c.
--------------------	--------------------	--------------------

FUTURE.

Vōl-ām.	Nōl-ām.	Māl-ām.
---------	---------	---------

PERFECT.

Vōlu-ī	Nōlu-ī.	Mālu-ī.
--------	---------	---------

PLUPERFECT.

Vōlu-ērām.	Nōlu-ērām.	Mālu-ērām.
------------	------------	------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

Vēlu-ērō.	Nōlu-ērō.	Mālu-ērō.
-----------	-----------	-----------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Vēl-īm, īs, &c.	Nōl-īm, īs, &c.	Māl-īm, īs, &c.
-----------------	-----------------	-----------------

IMPERFECT.

Vell-ēm, ēs, &c.	Noll-ēm.	Mall-ēm.
------------------	----------	----------

PERFECT.

Vōlu-ērīm.	Nōlu-ērīm.	Mālu-ērīm.
------------	------------	------------

PLUPERFECT.

Vōlu-issēm.	Nōlu-issēm.	Mālu-issēm.
-------------	-------------	-------------

IMPERATIVE.

Nöl-i or itö.
Nöl-itě or itötě.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. Vellě.	Nollě.	Mallě.
PERF. Völu-issě.	Nölu-issě.	Mälu-issě.

PARTICIPLES.

Völens.	Nölens.
---------	---------

196. Paradigm of *Ferrě*, to bear.

2d root, *tül*; 3d, *lät*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
Fër-ö, fer-s, fer-t, fěr-īmūs, fer-tīs, fěr-unt.	Fěr-ör, fer-rīs, fer-tūr, fěr-īmūr, fěr-īmīnī, fěr-untūr.

IMPERFECT.

Fěr-ěbām, bās, &c.	Fěr-ěbār, bārīs, &c.
--------------------	----------------------

FUTURE.

Fěr-ām, ēs, &c.	Fěr-ār, ērīs, &c.
-----------------	-------------------

PERFECT.

Tül-i, isti, &c.	Lät-ūs sūm, ēs, &c.
------------------	---------------------

PLUPERFECT.

Tül-ěram, ās, &c.	Lät-ūs ěram, &c.
-------------------	------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

Tül-ěrö, &c.	Lät-ūs ěrö, &c.
--------------	-----------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Fěr-ām, ās, &c.	Fěr-ār, ārīs, &c.
-----------------	-------------------

IMPERFECT.

Fer-rēm, rēs, &c.	Fer-rěr, rěrīs, &c.
-------------------	---------------------

PERFECT.

Tül-ěrīm, &c.	Lät-ūs sīm, &c.
---------------	-----------------

PLUPERFECT.

Tül-issēm.	Lät-ūs essēm, &c.
------------	-------------------

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>
Fēr, or fertǫ,	|	Fer-rě, or fer-tǫr,
Fer-tǫ;	|	Fer-tǫr;
Fer-tě, or fer-tǫtě,	|	Fěr-ĩmĩnĩ,
Fěr-untǫ.	|	Fěr-untǫr.

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> Fer-rě,	|	Fer-rĩ,
<i>Perf.</i> Tũl-isse,	|	Lāt-ũs essě,
<i>Fut.</i> Lāt-ũrũs essě.	|	Lāt-ũm ĩrĩ.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> Fěr-ens,	|	<i>Perf.</i> Lāt-ũs (ǣ, ũm).
<i>Fut.</i> Lāt-ũrũs (ǣ, ũm).	|	<i>Fut.</i> Fěr-endũs (ǣ, ũm).

GERUND.

Fěr-endĩ, dǫ, dũm, dǫ.

SUPINE.

Lāt-ũm. | Lāt-ũ.

REM.—The compounds of *ferrě* are conjugated like the simple verb.

597. Paradigm of *Fĩerĩ*, to become, be made.

PRESENT.

<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Fĩǫ, fĩs, fĩt, &c.	|	Fĩ-ǣm, fĩ-ǣs, fĩ-ǣt, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Fĩ-ěbǣm, ěbǣs, &c.	|	Fĩ-ěřěm, ěřěs, &c.
--------------------	--	--------------------

FUTURE.

Fĩ-ǣm, ěs, &c.

PERFECT.

Fact-ũs sũm, &c.	|	Fact-ũs sĩm, &c.
------------------	--	------------------

PLUPERFECT.

Fact-ũs ěřǣm, &c.	|	Fact-ũs essěm, &c.
-------------------	--	--------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

Fact-ũs ěřǫ, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fĩ, or fĩ-tǫ, Fĩ-tǫ.	|	<i>Plur.</i> Fĩ-tě, or fĩ-tǫtě, Fĩ-untǫ.
--------------------------------------	--	---

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Fiĕrĭ; *Perf.* Fact-ŭs eſſĕ; *Fut.* Fact-ŭm ĭrĭ.

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. Fact-ŭs (ă, ŭm); *Fut.* Făciendŭs (ă, ŭm).

598. Paradigm of *Irĕ*, to go.

2d root, ĭv; 3d, ĭt.

PRESENT.

<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Eŏ, ĭs, ĭt; ĭmŭs, ĭtĭs, eunt.		Eăm, eăs, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Ibăm, ĭbăs, &c.		Irĕm, ĭrĕs, &c.
-----------------	--	-----------------

FUTURE.

Ibŏ, ĭbĭs, &c.	
----------------	--

PERFECT.

Iv-ĭ, ĭv-istĭ, &c.		Iv-ĕrĭm, ĕrĭs, &c.
--------------------	--	--------------------

PLUPERFECT.

Iv-ĕrăm, ĕrăs, &c.		Iv-issĕm, issĕs, &c.
--------------------	--	----------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

Iv-ĕrŏ, ĕrĭs, &c.	
-------------------	--

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sing. I, or itŏ,</i> Itŏ.		<i>Plur. Itĕ, or itŏtĕ,</i> Euntŏ.
---------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Irĕ; *Perf.* Iv-issĕ; *Fut.* Itŭrŭs eſſĕ.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Iens (*gen.* euntĭs); *Fut.* Itŭrŭs, ă, ŭm.

GERUND.

Eundĭ, dŏ, dŭm, dŏ.		SUPINE.
---------------------	--	---------

		Itŭm, ĭtŭ.
--	--	------------

599. *Edĕrĕ*, to eat.

Edĕrĕ, to eat, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation, but has also certain forms like those of *essĕ*. These are as follows:

Regular.

<i>Pres.</i>	Edŏ, &c.
<i>Imperat.</i>	Edĕ, &c.
<i>Subj. Imp.</i>	Edĕrĕm, &c.
<i>Infin.</i>	Edĕrĕ.

Irregular.

Es, est, estĭs.
Es, estŏ, estĕ, estŏtĕ.
Essĕm, essĕs, &c.
Essĕ.

600. *Periphrastic Conjugations.*

There are two periphrastic conjugations formed respectively from the future participles in *rūs* and *dūs*, combined with the various tenses of the verb *essē*. The first periphrastic conjugation represents the action as *future*, or as one that is about to be done; e. g., *scriptūrūs sūm*, I am about to write: the second expresses *duty* or *necessity*; e. g., *virtūs cōlendā est*, virtue must be cultivated.

601. *Impersonal Verbs.*

1. Impersonal verbs are such as are used only in the third person singular, and never take a personal subject (as *I, thou, he*). The subject in English is generally expressed by the pronoun *it*; e. g.,
Oportēt, *it behooves.*

Taedēt mē, *it disgusts me* (I am disgusted with).

2. Besides the verbs which are strictly impersonal, many others are often used *impersonally*; e. g.,

Constāt, *it is known.*

Juvāt, *it delights.*

3. The second periphrastic conjugation is often used *impersonally*; e. g.,

Mihī scribendū est, *I must or should write.*

Tibī scribendū est, *you must or should write.*

Illī scribendū est, *he must or should write.*

Nōbīs scribendū est, *we must or should write.*

Vōbīs scribendū est, *you must or should write.*

Illīs scribendū est, *they must or should write.*

4. Those verbs which take no direct object in the active, can only be used *impersonally* in the passive; e. g.,

Mihī crēditūr, *I am believed.*

Tibī crēditūr, *Thou art believed.*

Illī crēditūr, *He is believed.*

Nōbīs crēditūr, *We are believed.*

Vōbīs crēditūr, *You are believed.*

Illīs crēditūr, *They are believed.*



SYNTAX.

INTRODUCTION.

602. PARTS of speech (as we have seen, 2), either singly or combined, form propositions; e. g., *Amās, thou lovest*; *puēr lūdīt, the boy plays*.

603. Propositions, either singly or combined, form sentences; e. g., *Equūs currīt (one prop.), the horse runs*; *Puēr lūdīt ēt ēquūs currīt (two propositions)*.

604. Sentences, in their various forms and combinations, of course, comprise the language.

605. Sentences may be divided into two classes, viz.:

- 1) Simple sentences, or such as contain a single proposition; e. g., *Puēr lūdīt*.
- 2) Compound sentences, or such as contain more than one proposition; e. g., *Puēr lūdīt ēt ēquūs currīt*.

606. In a compound sentence, the propositions which compose it are either,

- 1) Independent of each other, as in the above example, and are called co-ordinate propositions; or,
- 2) One of them is used to qualify the other, or some part of it, and is called a dependent or subordinate proposition, while that on which it depends is called a leading or principal proposition; e. g., *Servūs vēnīt ūt portās claudāt, the slave has come to shut the gates*. Here, '*servūs vēnīt*' is a principal proposition, and '*ūt portās claudāt*' is a dependent proposition.

CHAPTER I.

The Essential Elements of Sentences.—Subject and Predicate.

SECTION I.—SUBJECT.

607. EVERY sentence, however simple, consists of two distinct parts, viz.:

- 1) The *Subject*, or that of which it speaks, as, *puēr*, in the sentence *puēr lūdīt*.
- 2) The *Predicate*, or that which is said of the subject, as *lūdīt*, in the above sentence.

608. The subject of a sentence must be either,

- 1) A noun; e. g., *puēr*, in the sentence *puēr lūdīt*; or,
- 2) A word or clause used as a noun; e. g., *mentīrī*, in the sentence *turpē est mentīrī*.

609. RULE I. *The Subject*.—The subject of a finite* verb is put in the nominative; e. g., *Equūs currīt*, *the horse runs*.

610. The subject may either be *simple* or *compound*.

- 1) The *simple subject* consists either of a single nominative, or of two or more nominatives representing the same person or thing; e. g., (1) *Lātīnūs rēgnābāt*, *Latinus was reigning*; (2) *Lātīnūs rex rēgnābāt*, *Latinus the king was reigning*.
- 2) The *compound subject* consists of two or more simple subjects connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood; e. g., *Caesār ēt Balbūs Rōmām vēnērunt*, *Caesar and Balbus came to Rome*.

SECTION II.—PREDICATE.

611. The predicate of a sentence must be either,

- 1) A verb; e. g., *lūdīt*, in the sentence *puēr lūdīt*; or,
- 2) The verb *essē* (or sometimes a passive verb) with an attributive† noun or adjective; e. g.,

* For the subject of an infinitive see 655.

† By an *attributive* noun is meant one which is used to qualify or describe another noun.

1.

Cicēřǎ fǔit consǔl, *Cicero was consul.*

Christiānī est nēmīnēm violārě, *it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody.* Here, *fǔit consǔl* and *Christiānī est* are the predicates.

2.

Terră est rǔtundă, *the earth is round.*

Hūmānūm est errārě, *to err is human.* Here, *est rǔtundă* and *hūmānūm est* are the predicates.

612. RULE II. *Finite Verb*.—A finite verb must agree with its subject in number and person; e. g., Puēr lǔdīt, *the boy plays.*

REM.—If the subject is *compound*, the verb is generally put in the plural.

613. RULE III. *Attributive Noun*.—An attributive noun in the predicate, after the verb *essě* and a few passive verbs, is put,

- 1) In the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., Cicēřǎ fǔit consǔl, *Cicero was consul.*
- 2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., Christiānī est nēmīnēm violārě, *it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody.*

614. RULE IV. *Adjectives*.—Adjectives and participles (whether in the subject or the predicate) agree in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, with the nouns which they qualify; e. g., Terră est rǔtundă, *the earth is round.*

615. The predicate, like the subject, may be either *simple* or *compound*.

- 1) The *simple* predicate contains but a single finite verb; e. g., Puēr currīt, *the boy runs.*
- 2) The *compound* predicate consists of two or more simple predicates connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood; e. g. Puēr currīt et lǔdīt, *the boy runs and plays.*

616. In principal sentences (including simple sentences) the verb of the predicate may be put in any finite mood.

- 1) The *indicative* is used, in positive assertions; e. g., Portās claudīt, *he is shutting the gates.*
- 2) The *subjunctive* is used,

- a) To express an affirmation *doubtfully* or *conditionally*;
e. g., Dăreț, *he would give it* (i. e., *if he had it, perhaps*).
b) Sometimes to express a *wish* or *command*; e. g., Scribăt,
he may write, may he write, or let him write.
- 3) The imperative is used to express a *command*; e. g., Portās claudē, *shut the gates.*

617. RULE V. *Vocative*.—The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative; e. g., Quīd est, Cātīlină? *why is this, Catiline?*

REM.—This, of course, forms no part of the subject or predicate.

CHAPTER II.

Subordinate Elements.—Modifiers.

SECTION I.—USE OF MODIFIERS.

618. BOTH subject and predicate may have qualifying words and clauses connected with them, to limit or modify their meaning; e. g.,

- 1) Lătīnūs rex rēgnāvīt, *Latinus the king reigned.* Here the subject is modified by *rex* (59).
2) Milītēs fortītēr pūgnant, *the soldiers fight bravely.* Here the predicate is modified by *fortītēr* (77).

619. Any modifier, whether in the subject or the predicate, may be itself modified; e. g., Lătīnūs, bōnūs rex, rēgnāvīt. Here the modifier, *rex*, is itself modified by *bōnūs*.

620. Nouns, adjectives, verbs, and adverbs, are often found with modifiers.

SECTION II.—MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.

621. Nouns, including pronouns, may be modified,

I. By adjectives and participles.

II. By nouns and clauses used with the force of adjectives.

622. I. Nouns may be modified by adjectives and participles; e. g.,

Bōnūs puēr, *a good boy.*

See Rule IV.

623. II. Nouns may be modified by nouns and clauses used with the force of adjectives. These are,

- 1) Limiting nouns.
- 2) Relative clauses.

624. RULE VI. *Limiting Nouns*.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

- 1) In the same case as that noun, when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., *Lātīnūs rex*, *Latinus the king*.
- 2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., *Rēgīs filiūs*, *the king's son*: except,
 - a) When it denotes *character* or *quality*; it is then accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the genitive or ablative; e. g., *Puēr exīmiāe pulchrītūdīnīs*, or *Puēr exīmiā pulchrītūdīnē*, *a boy of remarkable beauty*.

625. RULE VII. *Relative Clauses*.—The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*; e. g., *Puēr quī lūdīt*, *the boy who plays*.

626. The predicate of a relative clause is sometimes in the *indicative* and sometimes in the *subjunctive*. It may be observed, however, that the subjunctive is used,

- 1) To express *purpose* or *result*; e. g., *Lēgātōs mīsērunt quī dīcērent*, *they sent ambassadors to say* (lit., *who might say*).
- 2) To define an indefinite antecedent; e. g., *Sunt quī pūtent*, *there are (some) who think*.

SECTION III.—MODIFIERS OF ADJECTIVES.

627. Adjectives may be modified,

I. By adverbs.

II. By words (generally the oblique cases of nouns) used with the force of adverbs.

628. I. Adjectives may be modified by adverbs; e. g., *Haud difficīlis*, *not difficult*.

629. RULE VIII. *Adverbs*.—Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs; e. g., *Haud difficīlis*, *not difficult*; *mīlēs fortītēr pūgnāt*, *the soldier fights bravely*.

REM.—It will be observed that *adverbs* modify verbs and other adverbs as well as adjectives.

630. II. Adjectives may be modified by words (generally the oblique cases of nouns) used with the force of adverbs. These are,

- 1) The genitive.
- 2) The dative.
- 3) The ablative.
- 4) The infinitive.

631. RULE IX. *Genitive*.—Many adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, skill, participation, recollection, fulness*, and the like, together with their *contraries*, take the genitive; e. g., *Cūpīdus laudis, desirous of praise.*

632. RULE X. *Dative*.—Many adjectives are followed by the dative of the object to which the quality is directed, or for which it exists; e. g., *Pax mihi grātissimā ērat, peace was very acceptable to me.*

633. RULE XI. *Ablative*.—Adjectives may be modified by an ablative denoting *cause, manner, or means*; e. g., *Aegēr āvārītia, diseased by avarice.*

634. RULE XII. *Ablative*.—The adjectives, *dignūs, indignūs, contentūs, praeditūs, frētūs*, and *libēr*, take the ablative; e. g., *Virtūs parvō contentā est, virtue is content with little.*

635. RULE XIII. *Supine in ū as Ablative*.—The supine in *ū* as a verbal noun in the ablative is used after adjectives signifying *good or bad, easy or difficult, agreeable or disagreeable, &c.*; e. g., *Difficilē dictū (difficult in saying), difficult to say.*

636. RULE XIV. *Ablative*.—The comparative degree without *quām* is followed by the ablative; e. g., *Clēmētiā diviniūs, more godlike than clemency.*

Obs.—If *quām* is expressed, the following noun will be in the same case as that which precedes; e. g., *Eurōpā mīnōr est quām Asiā, Europe is smaller than Asia.*

637. RULE XV. *Infinitive*.—The infinitive sometimes depends upon adjectives; e. g., *Dignūs āmarī, worthy to be loved.*

Rem.—Infinitives dependent upon adjectives are generally used as substantives, and as such may be referred to Rule XI. or XII.

SECTION IV.—MODIFIERS OF VERBS.

638. Verbs may be modified,

- I. By objects.
- II. By adverbial modifiers.

§ 1. *Objects.*

639. Verbs may be modified by objects. These are,

- 1) The oblique cases of nouns.
- 2) Infinitives or clauses used as nouns.

640. Verbs may take one or more oblique cases of nouns as *objects*; e. g., (1) *Caiūs puellām laudāt*, *Caius praises the girl*.
(2) *Balbūs puērō viām monstrāt*, *Balbus shows the way to the boy*.

641. RULE XVI.—The *accusative* is used as the *direct object* of an action; e. g., *Caiūs puellām laudāt*, *Caius praises the girl*.

642. RULE XVII.—The *genitive* is used,

- 1) After verbs of pitying; e. g., *Misērēmīnī sōciōrūm*, *pity the allies*.
- 2) After verbs of remembering and forgetting; e. g., *Mēmīnī vīvōrūm*, *I remember the living*.
- 3) After *rēfert* and *intērest*; e. g., *Intērest omniūm*, *it is the interest of all*.

REM.—Verbs of remembering and forgetting sometimes take the *accusative*; e. g., *Mēmīnī Cinnām*, *I remember Cinna*.

643. RULE XVIII.—The *dative* is used,

- 1) After *essē* in expressions denoting possession; e. g., *Puērō est libēr*, *the boy has a book* (lit., *there is a book to the boy*).
- 2) After the compounds of *essē*, except *possē*, to be able; e. g., *Mihī prōfuīt*, *it profited me*.
- 3) After the compounds of *bēnē*, *sātīs*, and *mālē*; e. g., *Officiō suō sātīsfēcīt*, *he has discharged his duty* (lit., *has done enough for*).
- 4) After the compounds of the prepositions, *ād*, *antē*, *cōn*, *īn*, *intēr*, *ōb*, *post*, *prae*, *sūb*, and *sūpēr*, together with a few others; e. g., *Vēnī ūt mihī succurrās*, *I have come that you may assist* (succor) *me*.
- 5) After verbs signifying *to command* or *obey*, *please* or *displease*, *favor* or *injure*, *serve* or *resist*, together with *to indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *envy*, *believe*, *persuade*, &c.; e. g., *Lēgībūs pārēt*, *he obeys the laws* (is obedient to the laws).

644. RULE XIX.—The *ablative* is used,

- 1) After the deponent verbs, *ūtī*, *fruī*, *fungī*, *pōtīrī*, *vescī*,

dignārī,* and their compounds; e. g., *Lactē vescuntūr*, they live upon milk.

- 2) After verbs signifying to abound or be destitute of; e. g., *Nēmō āliorūm ōpē cārērē pōtest*, no one can be (do) without the assistance of others.

645. RULE XX. *Two Accusatives*.—Verbs of asking, demanding, teaching, and concealing, may take two accusatives, one of the person and one of the thing; e. g., *Caesār frūmentūm Aeduōs flāgītābāt*, Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.

646. RULE XXI. *Accusative and Genitive*.—Verbs of accusing, convicting, acquitting, warning, and the like, take the accusative of the person, and the genitive of the crime, charge, &c.; e. g., *Caiūm prōditionis accūsant*, they accuse Caius of treachery.

REM.—The genitive is perhaps best explained by making it depend upon the ablative *crīmīnē*, understood. See 214, Note.

647. RULE XXII. *Accusative and Genitive*.—The impersonal verbs of feeling, *mīserēt*, *poenītēt*, *pūdēt*, *taedēt*, and *pīgēt*, take the accusative of the person, together with the genitive of the object which produces the feeling; e. g., *Taedēt mē vitae*, I am weary of life (lit., it wearies me of life).

648. RULE XXIII. *Accusative and Dative*.—Any transitive verb may take the accusative of the direct object and the dative of the indirect object; e. g., *Balbūs puērō viām monstrāt*, Balbus shows the way to the boy.

649. RULE XXIV. *Accusative and two Datives*.—Transitive verbs of giving, sending, imputing (*dārē*, *mittērē*, *vertērē*, &c.), sometimes take a direct object in the accusative, together with two indirect objects in the dative; e. g., *Rēgnūm suūm Rōmānīs donō dēdīt*, he gave his kingdom to the Romans as a present (for a present).

650. RULE XXV. *Accusative and Ablative*.—Verbs signifying to separate from, or deprive of, take the accusative of the direct object, together with the ablative of that from which it is separated, &c. e. g., *Mē lūcē prīvant*, they deprive me of light.

* *Dignārī* takes a direct object in connection with the ablative; e. g., *Tē hōnōrē dignātūr*, he thinks you worthy of honor.

651. RULE XXVI. *Two Datives*.—Intransitive verbs signifying *to be, to come, to go*, and the like, often take two datives, one denoting the object *to which*, and the other the object *for which*; e. g., *Caesāri auxiliō vēnīt, he went to the assistance of Caesar.*

652. RULE XXVII. *Dative and Ablative*.—*Opūs est* and *ūsūs est*, as impersonal verbs signifying need, take the dative of the person and the ablative of the object needed; e. g., *Dūcē nōbīs ōpūs est, we need a leader* (lit., *there is need to us of a leader*).

653. Verbs sometimes take an infinitive or clause as object; e. g.,

1. *Cūpīt pūgnārē, he desires (what?) to fight.*
2. *Spērō tē essē beātūm, I hope (what?) that you are happy.*
3. *Nesciō undē sōl īgnēm hābeāt, I know not (what?) whence the sun derives its fire.*

654. RULE XXVIII. *Infinitive as Object*.—The infinitive mood, either alone or with other words connected with it, may be used as the object of a verb. (See examples above.)

REM.—The infinitive as *object* is used chiefly after verbs of *perceiving, declaring, desiring*, and the like.

655. RULE XXIX. *Subject of Infinitive*.—The subject of the infinitive is put in the accusative; e. g., *Spērō tē essē beātūm, I hope you are happy.*

REM.—In this example *te*, which is the subject of *essē*, is put in the accusative according to rule.

656. RULE XXX. *Dependent Question as Object*.—An *indirect or dependent question* may be used as the object of a verb; e. g., *Nesciō undē sōl īgnēm hābeāt, I know not whence the sun derives its fire.*

657. The verb in dependent questions is put in the subjunctive, as in the above example.

658. RULE XXXI. *Object after Passive Verbs*.—Verbs in the passive voice are followed by the same cases as in the active, except the direct object, which becomes the subject of the passive; e. g., (*Act.*) *Balbūm furtī accūsant, they accuse Balbus of theft*; (*Pass.*) *Balbūs furtī accūsātūr, Balbus is accused of theft.*

659. RULE XXXII. *Agent of Passive Verbs*.—After passive verbs, the agent of the action is expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *āb*; e. g., *Puēr ā Caiō dōcētūr, the boy is taught by Caius*; except,

The second periphrastic conjugation (425), which takes the dative of the agent; e. g., *Mihī scribendū est, I must write.*

660. RULE XXXIII. *Impersonal Passive Verbs.*—Verbs which have no direct object in the active voice, are only used impersonally in the passive; e. g., *Mihī crēditūr, I am believed* (lit., *it is believed to me*).

§ II. *Adverbial Modifiers.*

661. Verbs often take adverbial modifiers: these are,

- 1) Adverbs.
- 2) Adverbial expressions.

662. Verbs may be modified by adverbs; e. g., *Fortitēr pugnāt, he fights bravely.*

See Rule VIII.

REM.—Adverbial modifiers are the same whether the verb is *active* or *passive*.

663. Verbs may be modified by adverbial expressions: these are,

- 1) The oblique cases of nouns, with or without prepositions.
- 2) Infinitives, or dependent propositions.

664. The oblique cases of nouns (with or without prepositions) used as adverbial modifiers, may be referred to the following classes, viz.:

- 1) Adverbial expressions of *manner, means, &c.*
- 2) Adverbial expressions of *time.*
- 3) Adverbial expressions of *place.*
- 4) Miscellaneous adverbial expressions.

665. The oblique cases of nouns (and sometimes of adjectives) may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *manner, means, &c.*

666. RULE XXXIV. *Manner, Means, &c.*—The *manner* or *cause* of an action, and the *means* or *instrument* employed, are expressed by the ablative; e. g., *Dōminū glādiō occidit, he killed his master with a sword.*

667. RULE XXXV. *Price.*—Price, when expressed by nouns, is usually put in the ablative, and when expressed by adjectives, usually in the genitive; e. g., (1) *Avārūs pātriām aurō vendēt, the avaricious man will sell his country for gold*; (2) *Avārūs pēcūniām magnī aestimāt, the avaricious man values money highly.*

668. The oblique cases of nouns may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *time*.

669. RULE XXXVI. *Time*.—Time *when* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; e. g., *Hiěmě ursūs dormīt, the bear sleeps in winter.*

670. RULE XXXVII. *Length of Time*.—Length of time is generally expressed by the accusative; e. g., *Caiūs annūm ūnūm vixīt, Caius lived one year.*

671. The oblique cases of nouns (with or without prepositions) may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *place*.

672. RULE XXXVIII.—The name of a town where any thing is, or is done, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive, otherwise in the ablative; e. g., (1) *Caiūs Cortōnæ vixīt, Caius lived at Cortona*; (2) *Caiūs Tibūrē vixīt, Caius lived at Tibur.*

673. RULE XXXIX.—The name of a place where any thing is, or is done, when not a town, is generally put in the ablative with a preposition; e. g., *Ursūs ĩn antrō dormīt, the bear sleeps in a cave.*

674. RULE XL.—After verbs of motion,

1) The place to which the motion is directed, if a town or small island, is expressed by the accusative without a preposition, otherwise by the accusative with one; e. g., (1) *Rōmām vēnĭrě, to come to Rome*; (2) *In Itāliām vēnĭrě, to come into Italy.*

2) The place from which the motion proceeds, if a town or small island, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition, otherwise by the ablative with one; e. g., (1) *Rōmā vēnĭrě, to come from Rome*; (2) *Ab Itāliā vēnĭrě, to come from Italy.*

675. RULE XLI.—*Dōmūs* and *rūs*, together with the genitives *bellĭ*, *hŭmĭ*, and *mĭlĭtĭæ*, are used like names of towns; e. g., *Caiūs rūrě rědiit, Caius returned from the country*; *Balbūs ět dōmĭ ět mĭlĭtĭæ fuĭt, Balbus was with me both at home and on service.*

676. RULE XLII.—The supine in *ŭm*, as a verbal noun in the accusative, follows verbs of motion to express the purpose or object

of that motion; e. g., *Mittit lēgātōs pācēm pētītūm*, *he sends ambassadors to sue for peace.*

677. The ablative absolute and the oblique cases of nouns with prepositions are used to express various adverbial relations.

678. RULE XLIII. *Ablative Absolute*.—A noun and a participle standing grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence, are put in the ablative absolute; e. g., *Caesār victis hostībūs*, *Caesar having conquered his enemies* (or, *when he had conquered*; lit., *his enemies being conquered*).

REM.—The ablative absolute generally expresses either the adverbial relation of *time* (as in the above example) or that of *cause*; sometimes, however, it adds an attendant circumstance.

679. RULE XLIV. *Prepositions with Accusative*.—The following twenty-six prepositions govern the accusative; viz., *Ad*, *adversūs*, *antē*, *apūd*, *circā* or *circūm*, *cīs* or *cītrā*, *contrā*, *ergā*, *extrā*, *infrā*, *intēr*, *intrā*, *juxtā*, *ob*, *pēnēs*, *pēr*, *pōnē*, *post*, *praetēr*, *prōpē*, *propētēr*, *sēcundūm*, *sūprā*, *trans*, *ultrā*, *versūs* (*rare*).

680. RULE XLV. *Prepositions with Ablative*.—The following eleven prepositions govern the ablative; viz., *A* (*āb* or *abs*), *absquē*, *cōrām*, *cūm*, *dē*, *ē* or *ex*, *pālām*, *prae*, *prō*, *sīnē*, *tēnūs*.

681. RULE XLVI. *Prepositions with Accusative or Ablative*.—The five prepositions, *clām*, *īn*, *sūb*, *subtēr*, and *sūpēr*, take sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative.

REM. 1.—*In* and *sūb* govern the accusative in answer to *whither* (i. e. after verbs of motion), and the ablative in answer to *where* (i. e. after verbs of rest). *Subtēr* generally takes the accusative. *Sūpēr* takes the accusative after verbs of motion, and also when it signifies *upon*, and the ablative when it signifies *on* or *of* (as of a subject spoken or written about).

REM. 2.—Prepositions in composition often govern the same cases as when they stand alone.

682. Verbs may be modified by infinitives or by dependent propositions.

683. RULE XLVII. *Infinitive as Modifier of Verb*.—The infinitive mood may be used after verbs denoting *custom*, *ability*, and the like; e. g., *Nōn facērē possūm*, *I am not able to do*, &c.

684. Dependent propositions, as adverbial modifiers, are gene-

rally introduced by conjunctions, and express a great variety of relations, as *time, place, manner, condition, &c.*

685. Dependent propositions take the verb,

- 1) Sometimes in the indicative; e. g., *Itēr faciēbām, quūm hās littērās dābām, I was making a journey when I gave these letters.*
- 2) But more commonly in the subjunctive; e. g., *Sī quīd hābeāt, dābīt, if he has any thing, he will give it.*

SECTION V.—MODIFIERS OF ADVERBS.

686. Adverbs are modified by other adverbs; e. g., *Sātis bēnē scripsīt, he has written sufficiently well.*

687. Prepositions and conjunctions are connectives, and neither modify nor are modified.

688. Interjections are expressions of emotion or mere marks of address, and have no grammatical influence upon the rest of the sentence.

CHAPTER III.

USE OF MOODS, PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

689. THE indicative is used in positive assertions; e. g., *Puēr lūdīt, the boy plays.*

REM.—The indicative is commonly used in principal propositions, but sometimes in dependent ones.

690. The subjunctive is used both in principal and dependent propositions.

691. I. In principal propositions the subjunctive is used,

- 1) To express a wish or a command; e. g., *Scribāt, he may write, may he write, or let him write.*
- 2) To express an affirmation *doubtfully or conditionally*; e. g., *Dārēt, he would give it (i. e. if he had it, perhaps).*

692. II. In dependent propositions.

- 1) With *ut, nē, quō, quīn, quōmīnūs*, to express *purpose or*

consequence; e. g., *Vēnit ūt scribāt, he has come to write; Caiō nihil obstat quōmīnūs sīt beātūs, nothing prevents Caius from being happy (by which he should be less happy).*

- 2) With *quūm* (*cūm*), when it introduces a *cause* or *reason*, or in any way shows the dependence of one event upon another; e. g., *Quae cūm itā sint, since these things are so.*
- 3) With *licēt*, although, *quāsi, tanquām, ac sī, as if, dūm, mōdō, dummodō*, provided, if only, *quamvis*, however much, however; e. g., *Imprōbūs itā vivit, quāsi nesciāt, &c., the wicked (man) lives, as if he did not know, &c.; Nēmō, quamvis sīt locūplēs, no one, however wealthy he may be.*
- 4) In conditional sentences, to represent the condition either as *simply possible* or as *impossible*; e. g., *Sī quid hābeāt, dābit, if he has any thing, he will give it. Sī quid hāberēt, dārēt, if he had any thing, he would give it.*
- 5) In indirect or dependent questions; e. g., *Nesciō undē sōl ignēm hābeāt, I know not whence the sun derives its fire.*
- 6) In relative clauses, (1) to express *purpose* or *result*, and (2) to define an indefinite antecedent; e. g., (1) *Lēgātōs misērunt quī dīcērent, they sent ambassadors to say; (2) Sunt quī putent, there are (some) who think.*

693. *Subjunctive Tenses in Dependent Propositions.*—The subjunctive, (1) when dependent upon a present tense (*pres., perf. def., or ful.*) is put in the *present* to denote an incomplete action, and in the *perfect* to denote a completed action; and (2) when dependent upon a past tense (*imperf., perf. indef., or pluperf.*), in the *imperfect* to denote an incomplete action, and in the *pluperfect* to denote a completed action; e. g.,

1. *Nesciō quid dicāt, I know not what he is saying.*
2. *Nesciō quid dixerit, I know not what he said.*
3. *Nesciuit quid diceret, I knew not what he said.*
4. *Nesciuit quid dixisset, I knew not what he had said.*

694. The imperative is used to express a command; e. g., *Portās claudē, shut the gates.*

*695. The infinitive, which expresses the simple meaning of the verb without reference to person or number, is used,

- 1) As the subject of another verb; e. g., *Difficilē est iudicārē, it is difficult to judge.*

- 2) As the object of another verb; e. g., Cūpiō săpěřě, *I desire to be wise.*
- 3) As the modifier of an adjective or verb; e. g., (1) Dignūs āmārī, *worthy to be loved*; (2) Nōn făcěřě possūm, *I am not able to do*, &c.

696. Participles, gerunds, and supines are followed by the various cases of nouns like the other parts of verbs. In regard to their own government, it must be observed,

- 1) That participles, like adjectives, agree with substantives.
- 2) That gerunds are governed like the same cases of substantives.
- 3) That supines, as verbal nouns, are governed like the same cases of other nouns.



DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.

ENGLISH IDIOM.

1. To think nothing of.

2. To value highly.*

3. To think little of.† }
To hold cheap. }

4. No stability.

Some time.

Much good.

How much pleasure.

LATIN IDIOM.

To reckon at nothing (*nihili ducere* or *facere*).

To value at a high price (*magni aestimare*).

To value at a little price (*parvi aestimare*).

Nothing of stability (*nihil stabilitatis*).

Something of time (*aliquid temporis*).

Much of good (*multum boni*).

How much of pleasure (*quantum voluptatis*).

REM.—Hence *no*, *some* (when they denote *quantity*, not *number*), *much*, *how much*, are to be translated by *nihil*, *aliquid*, *multum*, *quantum*, followed by the *gen*.

5. He did it *unwillingly*.

He *unwilling* did it.

6. *It* is disgraceful to lie.

To lie is disgraceful.

7. It is the *part* }
 duty } of a wise
 business } man.
 mark }
 character }

It is of a wise man.

8. To condemn a man *to death*.

To condemn a man *of the head*.

9. As many as *possible*. }
 he can or could. }

As the most (*quam plurimi*).

The greatest *possible*. }
 he can or could. }

As the greatest (*quam maximus*).

[That is, *as many as the most: as great as greatest, &c.*]

10. On the *top* of the mountain.
 In the *middle* of the water.

On the mountain *highest*.

In the water *middle* (in *summo monte*; in *media aqua*).

* To value *very highly* (*maximi aestimare*).

† The substantive will follow in the *accusative* notwithstanding the *of*, for that has nothing to do with the Latin verb.

ENGLISH IDIOM.

11. Is going to bed.
 12. It is hard *to say*.
 13. Whilst they were (are, &c.)
 playing.
 14. The intention of writing a letter.
 15. We must cultivate virtue.
 16. Caius must write.
 17. We must believe Caius.
 18. The ways of expressing the
 purpose are,

He comes to see the games.

19. *a*) I may go.
 b) I might *have gone*.
 20. *a*) I ought to go.
 b) I ought to have gone.

LATIN IDIOM.

Is going *to lie down* (*cubitum*, sup.)
 It is hard *in saying* (*difficile est dictu*; supine).
 During playing (*inter ludendum*).
 The intention of a letter *to-be-written* (*scribendae epistolae*).
 Virtue is *to-be-cultivated* (*colenda est virtus*).
 It is *to-be-written* by Caius (*Caio scribendum est*).
 It is *to-be-believed* to Caius (*credendum est Caio*).

{ (*a*) Venit ut ludos spectet.
 (*b*) Venit ludos spectatum (*sup.*).
 (*c*) Venit ludos spectaturus.
 (*d*) Venit ad ludos spectandos.
 To which add,
 (*e*) Venit causa (*for the purpose*)
 ludorum spectandorum; and
 (*f*) Instead of *ut*, the relative
 may be used:

He sent ambassadors, *qui pacem*
 petèrent (*to sue for peace*).
 Mihi ire licet (*it is permitted to me*
 to go).
 Mihi ire licuit (*it was permitted to*
 me to go).
 Me ire oportet.
 Me ire oportuit.

CAUTIONS.

- a. *Him, her, them* (or *he, she, they*, when they are to be translated by the *accusative*), must be translated into Latin by the proper case of *suī*, when they and the *nominative of the verb* stand for the *same person*. Also, in the same case, *his, hers, its, theirs*, must be translated by *suūs*.
- b. In a sentence with *that* dependent on a past tense, the perfect is to be translated into Latin by the *present infinitive*, whenever the notion expressed by it is not to be described as *over before the time* of the principal verb.
- c. *Would, should*, after a past tense are future forms :

{ He *says* that he *will* come.
 { He *said* that he *would* come.
- d. *Thing* should be expressed by *res* (fem.), when the adjective alone would leave it doubtful whether *men* or *things* were meant :
 Thus, of many things, not *multōrum*, but *multārum rerum*.
- e. *Cum* is written *after*, and as *one word with* the ablatives *me, te, &c.* :
mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum.
- f. Many English verbs *become* transitive by the addition of a *preposition* ; for instance, *to smile at, &c.*
- g. *Such* in English is often used where *size* is meant, rather than *quality*. It should then be translated into Latin by *tantus, quantus* ; not *talis, qualis*.
- h. *That* or *those*, when it stands for a substantive which has been expressed in a preceding clause, is not to be translated.
- i. When *that* introduces a *consequence*, *that not* is *ut non*, not *ne*.

That—not { for a purpose *ne*.
 { for a consequence ... *ut non*.
- j. After verbs of *fearing*, the Eng. *future* and the *participial substantive* are translated into Latin by the *present* or *imperfect subjunctive*, with *ut* or *nē*.
- k. *Who, what, which*, are often *dependent interrogatives*, especially after verbs of *asking, knowing, doubting, &c.*

- l. *May, might*, sometimes mean *can, could*, and must be translated by *possūm*.
- m. The *perf. infin.* must be translated into Latin by the *present infin.* after *might, could, ought*, unless the action is to be represented as *over* before the time to which *might, could, &c.* refer.
- n. In English, substantives standing before and spoken of other substantives, are used *adjectively*, and must be translated into Latin by adjectives.
- o. *What* is sometimes used for *how* (*quam*); sometimes for *how great* (*quantus*).
- p. *For* and *as* are to be untranslated, when the noun that follows can be placed in *apposition* to another noun in the sentence.
- q. *W. en one, two, &c.* mean *one, two, &c. apiece, or for each*, they must be translated by the *distributive* numerals, *singŭli, bini, &c.*
- r. *I have to do it*, must be translated by the part. in *dus*.
 (Eng.) With whom we *have to live*.
 (Lat.) With whom *it is to-be-lived* (*quibuscum vivendum est*).
- s. *It is*, followed by what is in form the *infin. pass.*, generally expresses *necessity, fitness, or something intended*.
- t. But *is to be* sometimes means, not *necessity, fitness, or intention*, but *possibility*; as, 'the passage *is to be found* in the fifth book,' = the passage *may or can be found* in the fifth book.
- u. A *present participle* must be translated into Latin by a *perfect participle* (or its substitute, *quum* with *perf. or pluperf. subj.*) when the action expressed by it must be *over*, before that expressed by the verb *begins*.
- v. The English *present part. act.* is generally translated by the Latin *past partic.*, when the verb is *deponent*.
- w. When the action was not done *in*, but only near a town, *at* must be translated by *ad* or *apud*.
- x. *One* often means *some one* (*aliquis*) or *a certain one* (*quidam*).
- y. *Will* and *would, will not* and *would not*, are often principal verbs, to be translated by *velle* and *nolle* respectively.
 They are to be so translated when for
 will, *would*, we may substitute
 is (are, &c.) willing, was (were, &c.) willing.
- z. When an English word is followed by a preposition, consider whether the Latin word to be used is followed by a preposition or by a case; and then by what preposition or what case.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A.

A, āb, abs (*prep. with abl.*), *from, by*.
 Abirē, i, it, *to go away, depart*.
 Absolvērē, v, ūt, *to acquit*.
 Ac, *and*.
 Accēdērē, cess, cess, *to approach*.
 Accipērē (iō), cēp, cept, *to receive, accept*.
 Accipitēr, trīs, *hawk*.
 Accūsārē, āv, āt, *to accuse*.
 Acēr, ācrīs, ācrē, *sharp, severe*.
 Achillēs, īs, *Achilles, a Grecian hero*.
 Aciēs, ēī, *line of battle*.
 Ad (*prep. with acc.*), *to*.
 Addūcērē (*ad and ducere*), dux, duct, *to lead to*.
 Adeō, so, *in such a manner*.
 Adessē (*ad and esse*), fu, fūt, *to be present*.
 Adjumentū, ī, *aid, help*.
 Adjūvārē, jūv, jūt, *to aid, help*.
 Admīrātiō, ōnīs, *admiration*.
 Admōnērē, u, it, *to admonish, warn*.
 Adulātiō, ōnīs, *flattery*.
 Adulātōr, ōrīs, *flatterer*.
 Adventūs (*advenire*), ūs, *approach*.
 Aedificārē, āv, āt, *to build*.
 Aedificiū, ī, *building, edifice*.
 Aenēas, ae, *Aeneas, a Trojan prince*.
 Aequitās, ātis, *equity, justice*.
 Aestās, ātis, *summer*.
 Aestimārē, āv, āt, *to value, prize*;
 māgnī aestimārē, *to prize highly*.
 Afferrē (*ad and ferre*), attūl, allāt, *to bring to*.
 Agēr, āgrī, *field*.
 Agērē, ēg, act, *to drive, lead, do*;
 grātiās āgērē, *to render thanks*.
 Agnūs, ī, *lamb*.
 Agricolā, ae, *husbandman*.
 Aliquandō, *some time*.

Aliquīs, quā, quid, *any one, any some*; aliquid tempōris, *some time*.
 Aliūs, ā, ūm (113. R.), *other*.
 Alpēs, iūm, *the Alps*.
 Altūs, ā, ūm, *high, lofty*.
 Amārē, āv, āt, *to love*.
 Ambītūs, ūs, *bribery*.
 Ambulārē, āv, āt, *to walk*.
 Amēricānūs, ā, ūm, *American*.
 Amīcitiā, ae, *friendship*.
 Amīcūs, ī, *friend*.
 Amittērē, mīs, *miss, to lose*.
 Amphibiū, ī, *an amphibious animal*.
 Ampliūs (*adv.*), *more, further*.
 Amplūs, ā, ūm, *ample, large*.
 An, *interrog. part., used in double questions, 482*.
 Anchīsēs, ae, *Anchises, the father of Aeneas*.
 Anguīs, īs, *m. or f., snake*.
 Angustiae, ārūm, *a narrow pass, defile*.
 Animāl, ālīs, *animal*.
 Animūs, ī, *mind, soul*.
 Annuērē, nu, nūt, *to assent, to give assent*.
 Annūs, ī, *year*.
 Antē (*prep. with acc.*), *before*.
 Anteā (*adv.*), *before*.
 Antrūm, ī, *cave*.
 Anulūs, ī, *ring*.
 Apērrē, ēru, ert, *to uncover, to open*.
 Apprōpinquārē, āv, āt, *to approach*.
 Aquā, ae, *water*.
 Aquārī, āt, *to bring water*.
 Aquilā, ae, *eagle*.
 Arā, ae, *altar*.
 Arārē, āv, āt, *to plough*.
 Arbōr, ōrīs, *f., tree*.
 Argentū, ī, *silver*.

Armĭgĕr, ĭ, *armor-bearer*.
 Arrĭpĕrĕ (iŏ), ĭpu, ept, *to snatch, seize*.
 Ars, artĭs, *art*.
 Arx, arcĭs, *citadel, tower*.
 Ascĕniŭs, ĭ, *Ascanius, son of Aeneas*.
 Asĭnŭs, ĭ, *ass*.
 Aspergĕrĕ (or adspĕrgĕrĕ), ers, ers, *to sprinkle*.
 At, *but*.
 Athĕnae, ārŭm, *Athens, city of Greece*.
 Athĕniensĭs (Athĕnae), ĕ, *Athenian, pl., the Athenians*.
 Atquĭ (conj.), *but, now (as used in reasoning)*.
 Attāmĕn, *but, but yet*.
 Attingĕrĕ (ad and tangĕre), tĭg, tact, *to attain, reach*.
 Auctŏr, ōrĭs, *author*.
 Auctumnŭs, ĭ, *autumn*.
 Audax, ācĭs, *daring, audacious*.
 Audĭrĕ, ĩv, ĩt, *to hear*.
 Augĕrĕ, aux, auct, *to increase*.
 Aureŭs (aurŭm), ā, ŭm, *golden*.
 Aurŭm, ĭ, *gold*.
 Aut, or ; aut—aut, *either—or*.
 Autĕm, *but*.
 Auxĭliŭm, ĭ, *aid*.
 AvĕrĭciĀ, ae, *avarice*.
 Avĕrŭs, ā, ŭm, *avaricious*.
 Avĭs, ĩs, *bird*.

B.

Balbŭs, ĭ, *Balbus, a man's name*.
 BarbĀ, ae, *beard*.
 BeĀtĕ (beĀtus), *happily*.
 BeĀtŭs, ā, ŭm, *happy*.
 Bellŭm, ĭ, *war*.
 Bĕnĕ, *well*.
 Bĕnĕficiŭm, ĭ, *benefit*.
 Bĕnignŭs, ā, ŭm, *kind*.
 Bĭbĕrĕ, bĭb, bĭbĭt, *to drink*.
 Biennĭŭm, ĭ, *two years, space of two years*.
 Bŏnŭs, ā, ŭm, *good*.
 Brĕchiŭm, ĭ, *arm*.
 Brĕvĭs, ĕ, *short*.
 Brŭtŭs, ĭ, *Brutus, a Roman consul*.

C.

CĀdĕrĕ, cĕcĭd, cĀs, *to fall*.
 Caecŭs, ā, ŭm, *blind*.
 CaesĀr, ārĭs, *Caesar, a distinguished Roman general*.
 Caiŭs, ĭ, *Caius, a man's name*.
 CĀlĀmĭtĀs, ātĭs, *misfortune, calamity*.
 Candidŭs, ā, ŭm, *white*.
 CĀnĕrĕ, cĕcĭn, cant, *to sing*.
 CĀnĭs, ĩs, c., *dog*.
 CantĀrĕ (canĕre), āv, āt, *to sing*.
 CĀpĕrĕ (iŏ), cĕp, capt, *to take, receive*.
 Captivŭs, ā, ŭm, *capt. ive*.
 CĀpŭt, ĩtĭs, *head; cĀpĭtĭs, of the head, to death*.
 Carpĕrĕ, carps, carpt, *to gather, to pluck, to card*.
 CarthĀgĭniensĭs (CarthĀgo), ĕ, *Carthaginian*.
 CarthĀgŏ, ĩnĭs, *Carthage, an ancient city in northern Africa*.
 CastĭgĀrĕ, āv, āt, *to chastise*.
 CastrĀ, ōrŭm, *camp*.
 CĀtĕnĀ, ae, *chain*.
 CĀvĕrĕ, cĀv, caut, *to take care, to be on one's guard against*.
 Cĕlĕbĕr, brĭs, brĕ, *celebrated*.
 Cĕlĕrĭtĕr, *quickly*.
 CertĀmĕn, ĩnĭs, *contest*.
 Certŭs, ā, ŭm, *certain*.
 Christianŭs, ĭ, *Christian*.
 Cĭbŭs, ĭ, *food*.
 Cĭcĕrŏ, ōnĭs, *Cicero, the great Roman orator*.
 Cĭngĕrĕ, nx, nct, *to surround*.
 CircumdĀrĕ (circum and dĀre), dĕd, dĀt, *to surround*.
 Cĭs, *on this side*.
 Cĭvilĭs (cĭvĭs), ĕ, *civil*.
 Cĭvĭs, ĩs, *citizen*.
 CĭvĭtĀs (cĭvĭs), ātĭs, *state*.
 Claudĕrĕ, claus, claus, *to shut*.
 Clĕmens, entĭs, *mild, merciful*.
 ClĕmentiĀ, ae, *mildness, clemency*.
 Clĭpeŭs, ĭ, *shield*.
 Coelŭm, ĭ, *heaven, the heavens*.
 CoenĀ, ae, *supper, feast*.
 CŏgĭtĀrĕ, āv, āt, *to think, to think about*.
 Cŏgnĭtŭs, ā, ŭm, *known*.

Cōgnoscĕrĕ, nōv, nīt, *to ascertain.*
 Cōiĕrĕ, cōlu, cult, *to till, cultivate, practise.*
 Collōquiūm, ī, *conference.*
 Cōlōr ōris, *color.*
 Cōlumbā, ae, *dove.*
 Committĕrĕ, mīs, miss, *to engage; proeliūm committĕrĕ, to engage battle.*
 Comparāre, āv, āt, *to procure, raise, levy.*
 Compellĕrĕ, pūl, puls, *to compel, drive.*
 Compescĕrĕ, escu, *to restrain, repress.*
 Complĕrĕ, ēv, ēt, *to fill.*
 Comprĕhendĕrĕ, nd, ns, *to arrest.*
 Concertāre, āv, āt, *to contend, quarrel.*
 Conciliūm, ī, *council, meeting.*
 Condĕrĕ (*con* [cūm] and *dāre*), dīd, dīt, *to build, found.*
 Conditīō, ōnīs, *condition, terms.*
 Confūgĕrĕ (iō), fūg, *to flee for refuge.*
 Conjux, ūgīs, *spouse, wife, husband.*
 Conservāre, āv, āt, *to preserve.*
 Consiliūm, ī, *advice, instruction.*
 Conspicĕrĕ (iō), spex, spect, *to see, discover.*
 Constāt (*impers.*), *it is known, is an admitted fact.*
 Constitūerĕ, u, ūt, *to arrange, appoint.*
 Construĕrĕ, strux, struct, *to build, construct.*
 Consūl, ūlīs, *consul, the Roman chief magistrate.*
 Consulĕrĕ, sūlu, sult, *to consult, ask advice.*
 Contentūs, ā, ūm, *contented, content.*
 Continĕrĕ, u, tent, *to restrain, confine.*
 Continuūs, ā, ūm, *successive.*
 Contrā (*prep. with acc.*), *against.*
 Convĕnīrĕ (*cōn* [cūm] and *venīre*), vĕn, vent, *to come together.*
 Convertĕrĕ, t, s, *to turn, convert.*
 Cōpiaē, ārūm, *forces.*
 Cōquĕrĕ, x, ct, *to cook, to bake, to ripen.*
 Cōr, cordīs, n., *heart.*
 Cōrām (*prep. with abl.*), *before, in presence of; adv., openly, in person.*

Cōrōnā, ae, *crown, garland.*
 Corpūs, ōris, *body.*
 Corrigĕrĕ, rex, rect, *to correct.*
 Corrupĕrĕ, rūp, rupt, *to mislead, corrupt.*
 Crābrō, ōnīs, *wasp.*
 Crĕbĕr, brā, brūm, *frequent.*
 Crĕdĕrĕ, crĕdīd, crĕdīt, *to believe, put confidence in.*
 Crescĕrĕ, crĕv, crēt, *to increase, to wax (as moon).*
 Culpā, ae, *fault, blame.*
 Cūm (*prep. with abl.*), *with.*
 Cunctūs, ā, ūm, *all as a whole.*
 Cūpĕrĕ (iō), īv (ī), īt, *to desire.*
 Cūpīdītās, ātīs, *desire, passion.*
 Cūpīdūs, ā, ūm, *desirous of.*
 Cūrārĕ (*cura*), āv, āt, *to take care of.*
 Currĕrĕ, cūcurr, curs, *to run.*
 Currūs ūs, *chariot.*
 Custōdirĕ (*custos*), īv, īt, *to guard.*

D.

Damnārĕ, āv, āt, *to condemn.*
 Dārĕ, dĕd, dāt, *to give.*
 Dĕ (*prep. with abl.*), *from, about, concerning.*
 Dĕcĕm, ten.
 Dĕcernĕrĕ, crĕv, crēt, *to decree, decide.*
 Dĕcīmūs, ā, ūm, *tenth.*
 Dĕcīpĕrĕ (iō), cĕp, cept, *to deceive.*
 Dĕdĕrĕ, dĕdīd, dĕdīt, *to surrender.*
 Dĕfendĕrĕ, d, s, *to defend.*
 Dĕglūbĕrĕ, ups, upt, *to skin, flay.*
 Dĕlĕrĕ, lĕv, lĕt, *to destroy.*
 Dĕmonstrārĕ, āv, āt, *to show, demonstrate.*
 Dĕprĕhendĕrĕ, d, s, *to seize, catch.*
 Dĕterrĕrĕ, u, īt, *to deter, prevent.*
 Dĕvincĕrĕ, vīc, vict, *to conquer.*
 Dīcĕre, dix, dict, *to say.*
 Dīdō, ōnīs, *Dido, the foundress of Carthage.*
 Dīēs, ēī, *day.*
 Diffīcīlīs, ĕ, *difficult.*
 Dīgnūs, ā, ūm, *worthy.*
 Dīlāniārĕ, āv, āt, *to tear in pieces.*
 Dīlīgens, tīs, *diligent.*

Diligentia (*diligens*), ae, *diligence*.
 Dīmīttēre, mīs, miss, to dismiss.
 Discēre, dīdīc, to learn.
 Discīpūlus, ī, pupil.
 Disjūgēre, x, ct, to separate.
 Dīvidēre, vīs, vīs, to divide.
 Dīvīnus, ā, ūm, divine.
 Divitiācūs, ī, Divitiacus, a man's name.
 Dōcēre, u, t, to teach.
 Dōlēre, u, īt, to grieve.
 Dōlōr, ōrīs, pain, grief, sorrow.
 Dōmīnus, ī, master as owner.
 Dōmūs, ūs or ī, f., house; dōmī, at home.
 Dōnāre, āv, āt, to give, present.
 Dōnum, ī, gift.
 Dormīre, īv, īt, to sleep.
 Dūbītāre, āv, āt, to doubt.
 Dūcentī, ae, ā, two hundred.
 Dūcēre, dux, duct, to lead.
 Dūm, while.
 Dūmmōdō, īf, but, provided.
 Duō, ae, ō, two.
 Duōdēcīm, twelve.
 Dūrāre, āv, āt, to last.
 Dux, dūcīs, leader, guide.

E.

Edēre, ēd, ēs (420), to eat.
 Educēre (e and ducēre), dux, duct, to lead forth.
 Efficēre (iō), fēc, fect, to effect, accomplish.
 Egō, meī, &c., I.
 Elēgantiā, ae, elegance.
 Elēphās, antīs, m., elephant.
 Emēre, ēm, empt, to buy, purchase.
 Enīm, for, indeed.
 Enūmērāre, āv, āt, to enumerate.
 Epistolā, ae, letter, epistle.
 Epītōmē, ēs, abridgment.
 Equēs, ītis, horseman.
 Equitātūs, ūs, cavalry.
 Equūs, ī, horse.
 Ergā (prep. with acc.), towards.
 Ergō (conj.), therefore.
 Errāre, āv, āt, to err.
 Erūdīre, īv, īt, to instruct.
 Essē, fu, fūt, to be; est, īs, it is.
 Et, and; ēt—ēt, both—and.

Etiām, also, even; ētiām atquē ētiām, again and again.
 Evertēre, rt, rs, to pull down, to overthrow.
 Evōlārē, āv, āt, to fly away, to flee from.
 Ex (prep. with abl.), from.
 Excītāre, āv, āt, to excite, arouse.
 Exclāmārē, āv, āt, to exclaim, cry out.
 Exerūciārē, āv, āt, to torture.
 Exercēre, u, īt, to practise, exercise.
 Exercītūs, ūs, army.
 Exōrārē, āv, āt, to supplicate.
 Expellērē, pūl, puls, to expel, banish.
 Expōnērē, pōsu, pōsīt, to set forth, explain.
 Expūgnārē (ex and pūgnārē), āv, āt, to storm.
 Exspectārē, āv, āt, to expect.

F.

Fābūlōsūs, ā, ūm (*fabūla*), fabulous.
 Fācēre (iō), fēc, fact, to do, make, act.
 Fāciēs, ēī, face, appearance.
 Fācilis, ē, easy.
 Fallax (*fallēre*), ācīs, false, deceptive.
 Fāmēs, īs, hunger.
 Faustūlus, ī, Faustulus, an Italian shepherd.
 Fāvēre, fāv, faut, to favor.
 Fēlicitās, ātis, happiness.
 Ferrē, tūl, lāt (414), to bear.
 Ferrūm, ī, iron.
 Fīdēlis, ē, faithful.
 Fīdēs, ēī, faith, fidelity; fīdēm viōlārē, to break one's word.
 Fiērī, fact (416), to become, be made.
 Fīgūrā, ae, figure.
 Fīliā, ae (D. pl. *fīliābūs*), daughter.
 Fīliūs, ī, son.
 Fīnīre (*finīs*), īv, īt, to finish.
 Fīnīs, īs (m. and f. sing., m. pl.), end.
 Firmūs, ā, ūm, firm.
 Flāgitiūm, ī, crime.
 Flērē, flēv, flet, to weep.
 Flōrērē (*flos*), u, to flourish, bloom.
 Flōrescēre (*florēre*), to begin to bloom.

Flōs, ōris, *flower*.
 Fluērē, x, x, *to flow*.
 Flūmēn, inis, *river, stream*.
 Foedūs, ēris, *treaty*.
 Fortis, ē, *brave*.
 Fortitēr (*fortis*), *bravely*.
 Fortūnā, ae, *fortune*.
 Frangērē, frēg, fract, *to break*.
 Frātēr, tris, *brother*.
 Fraudārē, āv, āt, *to defraud*.
 Frētūs, ā, ūm, *relying on*.
 Frīgūs, ōris, *cold*.
 Frūtex, icis, m., *shrub*.
 Fūgā, ae, *flight*.
 Fūgārē (*fūgā*), āv, āt, *to put to flight*.
 Fūgērē (iō), fūg, fūgīt, *to flee*.
 Fundūs, ī, *estate, farm*.
 Fungī, funct, *to discharge, fulfil*.
 Furtūm, ī, *theft*.
 Fūtūrūs, ā, ūm, *future*.

G.

Gallīcūs (*Galliā*), ā, ūm, *Gallic*.
 Gallūs, ī, *a Gaul*.
 Gēnēr, ī, *son-in-law*.
 Gēnūs, ēris, *kind, nature*.
 Gērērē, gess, gest, *to carry on, to wage (as war)*.
 Germāniā, ae, *Germany*.
 Glādiūs, ī, *sword*.
 Glōriā, ae, *glory*.
 Graeci, ōrūm, *the Greeks*.
 Grānūm, ī, *grain*.
 Grātiā, ae, *gratitude, favor; pl., thanks*.
 Grāvis, ē, *heavy*.
 Grex, ēgis, m. *flock, herd*.

H.

Hābērē, u, īt, *to have*.
 Hābitārē (*habēre*), āv, āt, *to inhabit*.
 Haedūs, ī, *kid*.
 Hannibāl, ālis, *Hannibal*.
 Hastā, ae, *spear*.
 Hērōs, ōis, *hero*.
 Hesternūs, ā, ūm, *of yesterday*.
 Hic, haec, hōc, *this*.
 Hiems, ēmis, *winter*.
 Histōriā, ae, *history*.

Hōmō, inis, *man*.
 Hōnōr, ōris, *honor*.
 Hortūlūs (*hortūs*), *little garden*.
 Hortūs, ī, *garden*.
 Hostis, is, *enemy*.
 Hūmānūs, ā, ūm, *human, natural to man*.
 Hūmērūs, ī, *shoulder*.

I.

Ibī, *there*.
 Idēm, eādēm, idem, *same*.
 Ideō, *therefore*.
 Igitūr, *therefore*.
 Ignārūs, ā, ūm, *ignorant*.
 Ignāvūs, ā, ūm, *indolent, cowardly*.
 Ignis, is, m., *fire, heat*.
 Ignōrātiō, ōnis, *ignorance*.
 Ignoscērē, ōv, ōt, *to pardon*.
 Illē, illā, illūd, *that, he, she, it*.
 Illustrārē, āv, āt, *to illumine, to enlighten*.
 Immensūs, ā, ūm, *immense*.
 Immergērē, rs, rs, *to plunge into*.
 Immōbilis, ē, *immovable*.
 Immortālis, ē, *immortal*.
 Impēdirē, īv, īt, *to impede, hinder*.
 Impendērē, *to overhang, threaten*.
 Impērārē, āv, āt, *to command; imperātā, ōrūm, commands*.
 Impērātōr (*impērāre*), ōris, *commander*.
 Impētūs, ūs, *attack*.
 Impiūs, ā, ūm, *impious*.
 Imprōbūs, ā, ūm, *bad, wicked*.
 Imprūdēns, entis, *imprudent*.
 In (*prep. with acc. or abl.*), with acc., *into, to, against; with abl.; in*.
 Incendērē, d, s, *to set on fire, to burn*.
 Inceptūm, ī, *beginning*.
 Incertūs, ā, ūm, *uncertain*.
 Incōgnītūs, ā, ūm, *unknown*.
 Incōlā (*in and colēre*), ae, *inhabitant*.
 Incōlūmīs, ē, *safe, uninjured*.
 Incrēdībīlis (*in and credēre*), ē, *incredible*.
 Indicērē, dix, dict, *to declare (as war)*.
 Indīgnūs, ā, ūm, *unworthy*.
 Indoctūs, ā, ūm, *unlearned*.

Indulgērē, *ls, lt, to indulge.*
 Industriā, *ae, industry.*
 Inferre, *intul, illat (414), to wage.*
 Infrā (*prep. with acc.*), *below.*
 Infligēre, *flixi, flicti, to inflict.*
 Ingēniūm, *i, talent, ability.*
 Injūriā, *ae, injury, wrong done.*
 Innōcens, *tis, innocent.*
 Innoxius, *ā, ūm, harmless.*
 Instruere, *strux, struct, to arrange, array.*
 Intelligere, *lex, lect, to understand.*
 Inter (*prep. with acc.*), *between, during.*
 Interdūm, *sometimes.*
 Interest, *fu, fuit, to be engaged in.*
 Interficere, *(iŝ), fec, fect, to kill.*
 Interim, *in the mean time, meanwhile.*
 Intervallūm, *i, distance, space.*
 Intrā (*prep. with acc.*), *within.*
 Inutilis, *ē, useless.*
 Invadere, *(in and vadere), vās, vās, to invade.*
 Invenire, *vēn, vent, to find.*
 Invidere, *vid, vīs, to envy.*
 Invitus, *ā, ūm, unwilling.*
 Ipsē, *ā, ūm, self, he himself.*
 Irā, *ae, anger.*
 Ire, *iv, it, to go.*
 Irritare, *āv, āt, to irritate.*
 Is, *eā, id, he, she, it, that.*
 Istē, *ā, ūd, that.*
 Italiā, *ae, Italy.*
 Itaque, *therefore.*
 Iter, *itinēris, journey, way.*
 Iterūm, *again.*

J.

Jubere, *juss, juss, to direct, order.*
 Jucundus, *ā, ūm, pleasant, delightful.*
 Jūdex, *icis, judge.*
 Judicare, *āv, āt, to judge.*
 Jurare, *āv, āt, to swear.*
 Justus, *ā, ūm, just, fair.*

L.

Lābor, *ōris, labor.*
 Lāborare, *āv, āt, to labor.*
 Lānā, *ae, wool.*

Lātinus, *i, Latinus, a king of Latium.*
 Laudare, *āv, āt, to praise.*
 Laus, *dīs, praise.*
 Lāvare, *lāv, laut, or lāvāt, to wash.*
 Lāviniā, *ae, Lavinia, daughter of Latinus.*
 Lēgātus, *ūs, ambassador.*
 Lēgere, *lēg, lect, to read.*
 Lēgiō, *ōnis, legion, body of foot.*
 Lēnis, *ē, mild, merciful.*
 Leō, *ōnis, lion.*
 Lex, *lēgis, law.*
 Līber, *lībrī, book.*
 Līber, *ā, ūm, free.*
 Līberī, *ōrum, children.*
 Līcēt (*impers. v.*), *it is lawful.*
 Līcēt, *although.*
 Līquescere, *licu, to melt.*
 Lītērae, *ārūm (pl.), letter, epistle.*
 Lōcūplēs, *ētis, wealthy, rich.*
 Lōcis, *i (pl. loci or loca), place.*
 Lōqui, *lūcūt, to speak.*
 Lūcere, *lux, to shine.*
 Luctus, *ūs, grief, sorrow.*
 Lūcus, *i, grove.*
 Lūdēre, *lūs, lūs, to play.*
 Lūdus, *i, play, sport.*
 Lūgēre, *lux, to grieve, mourn, weep for.*
 Lūnā, *ae, moon.*
 Lūpus, *i, wolf.*
 Lusciniā, *ae, nightingale.*
 Lux, *lūcis, light.*

M.

Māculare, *āv, āt, to stain, to blemish.*
 Māgister, *trī, master as teacher.*
 Māgnitūdō (*magnus*), *inis, greatness, size.*
 Māgnus, *ā, ūm, great, large; māgnī, at a great price, highly; māguūm est, it is a great thing.*
 Major, *ūs (comp. of magnus), greater, larger.*
 Mālē (*malus*), *badly.*
 Mallē, *mālū (410), to prefer.*
 Mālūm, *i, evil, misfortune.*
 Mālūs, *ā, ūm, bad.*
 Mānere, *ns, ns, to remain.*

Mānūs, ūs, *f., hand, force.*
 Mārē, is, *sea.*
 Mārīnūs, ā, ūm, *marine, of the sea.*
 Mātēr, trīs, *mother.*
 Mātrōnā, ae, *matron.*
 Maximūs, ā, ūm (*superl. of magnus*),
greatest, very great; maximī, at
a very great price.
 Mēdicūs, i, *physician.*
 Mēdiūs, ā, ūm, *middle, midst of, mid-*
dle of, 267.
 Mēl, mellīs, *honey.*
 Mendāciūm, lie, *falsehood.*
 Mens, tīs, *mind, the reasoning fa-*
culty.
 Mensis, is, *m., month.*
 Mētūērē, u, *to fear.*
 Mētūs, ūs, *fear.*
 Meū, ā, ūm (*masc. voc. sing., mi*), *my.*
 Micārē, u, *to glitter, shine.*
 Milēs, itīs, *soldier.*
 Militiā, ae, *military service; milī-*
tiae (gen. sing.), in war, on service.
 Millē, *thousand.*
 Minōr, ūs (*comp. of parvus*), *smaller.*
 Mirābilīs, ē, *wonderful.*
 Misēr, ā, ūm, *miserable, wretched.*
 Misērēri, ert or ērit, *to pity.*
 Misērēt (*impers. verb*), *it pities, one*
pities.
 Mittērē, mīs, *miss, to send.*
 Mōbilīs, ē, *movable.*
 Mōdō, *only.*
 Mōnērē, u, it, *to advise, admonish.*
 Mons, tīs, *m., mountain.*
 Monstrārē, āv, āt, *to show.*
 Mordērē, mōmord, mors, *to bite.*
 Mors, tīs, *death.*
 Mortālīs (*mors*), ē, *mortal.*
 Mōvērē, mōv, mōt, *to move.*
 Mūliēr, ērīs, *woman.*
 Multitūdō (*multūs*), inīs, *multitude.*
 Multūs, ā, ūm, *much, many; multā*
(neut. pl.), many things; multūm
bōnī, much good; multūm tem-
pōris, much time.
 Mūrūs, i, *wall.*
 Mūtārē, āv, āt, *to change.*

N.

Nām, *for.*
 Namquē, *for.*

Nārē, nāv, *to swim.*
 Narrārē, āv, āt, *to relate, narrate.*
 Narrātiō (*narrārē*), *narration, nar-*
rative.
 Nascī, nāt, *to be born.*
 Nātiō, ōnīs, *nation.*
 Nē, *interrog. particle, 287 and 288.*
 Nē (*used with imperat. and subj.*), *not.*
 Nēc, *neither; nēc—nēc, neither—*
nor.
 Nēglīgērē, lex, lect, *to disregard.*
 Nēmō (*īnis, not in good i. sc.*), *nobody,*
no one.
 Nēquidēm, *not even, generally with*
the emphatic word between the
two parts; as, nē pōpūlūs quidēm,
not even the people.
 Nērē, nēv, nēt, *to spin.*
 Nescirē, iv, it, *not to know, to be ig-*
norant of.
 Nidūs, i, *nest.*
 Nihil, *nothing.*
 Nīmiūs, ā, ūm, *too much, excessive.*
 Nix, nivīs, *snow.*
 Nōcērē, u, it, *to hurt.*
 Nollē, nōlu (410), *to be unwilling.*
 Nōmēn, inīs, *name.*
 Nōn, *not; nōn solūm—sēd etiām,*
not only—but also.
 Nondūm, *not yet.*
 Nonnē, *interrog. particle; expects*
ans, yes. 288, REM.
 Nostēr, trā, trūm, *our.*
 Nōvembēr, brīs (*abl. i.*), *November.*
 Nox, noctīs, *night.*
 Nūbēs, is, *cloud.*
 Nullūs, ā, ūm (113, R.), *no, no one.*
 Nūm, *interrog. particle; expects*
ans, no. 288, REM.
 Nūmā, ae, *Numa, second king of*
Rome.
 Nūmērārē, āv, āt, *to number.*
 Nūmērūs, i, *number.*
 Nunquām, *never.*
 Nuntiārē (*nuntiūs*), āv, āt, *to an-*
nounce, report.
 Nuntiūs, i, *messenger.*

O.

O (*interjection*), *O.*
 O sī, *O if, would that.*

Obessē, fu, fūt, *to be prejudicial to.*
 Obliviscī, oblīt, *to forget.*
 Obsēs, idīs, *hostage.*
 Obstārē, stīt, stāt, *to oppose, prevent.*
 Obtinērē, inu, ent, *to acquire, obtain.*
 Occāsiō, ōnīs, *occasion.*
 Occidērē (*ob and caedēre*), cīd, cīs, *to kill.*
 Occidērē (*ob and cādēre*), cīd, cās, *to fall.*
 Occultārē (*occulēre*), āv, āt, *to conceal, hide.*
 Octō, *eight.*
 Oculūs, ī, *eye.*
 Odiūm, ī, *hatred.*
 Officiūm, ī, *duty.*
 Olīm, *once, formerly.*
 Omnīuō, *in all.*
 Omnis, ē, *all, every.*
 Oportēt (*impers.*), *it behooves, one ought.*
 Optiō, ōnīs, *choice.*
 Opūs, ēris, *work.*
 Orātiō, ōnīs, *oration.*
 Orātōr, ōris, *orator.*
 Ornārē, āv, āt, *to adorn.*
 Ovīs, īs, *sheep.*

P.

Pābulārī, āt, *to forage.*
 Palliūm, ī, *cloak.*
 Pārārē, āv, āt, *to prepare.*
 Pārērē, u, īt, *to obey.*
 Parcērē, pēperc, parcīt, *to spare.*
 Pars, tīs, *part.*
 Parvūs, ā, ūm, *small, little; parvūm, little, a little; parvī, at a low price; parvī aestimārē, to think little of.*
 Pastōr (*pascēre*), ōris, *shepherd.*
 Pātēr, trīs, *father.*
 Pātriā, ae, *native country.*
 Paucūs, ā, ūm, *little, few.*
 Paupēr, ēris, *a poor man.*
 Pausāniās, ae, *Pausaniās, a distinguished Spartan general.*
 Pāvō, ōnīs, *peacock.*
 Pax, pācis, *peace.*
 Peccārē, āv, āt, *to sin, do wrong.*
 Pēcūniā, ae, *money.*
 Pendērē, pēpend, *to hang.*

Pēr (*prep. with acc.*), *through.*
 Perdērē, did, dīt, *to waste.*
 Perfīdiā, ae, *perfidy.*
 Perfūgiūm, ī, *refuge.*
 Pēriculōsūs (*pericu.ūm*), ā, ūm, *dangerous.*
 Pērītūs, ā, ūm, *skilful, skilled in.*
 Perniciēs, ēī, *destruction.*
 Perpētūō, *for ever.*
 Perspicērē (iō), ex, ect, *to perceive, see.*
 Persuādērē, s, s, *to persuade.*
 Pertimescērē, timu, *to fear greatly.*
 Pervēnirē, vēn, vent, *to arrive at, reach.*
 Pēs, pēdis, *foot.*
 Pētērē, īv or ī, īt, *to seek.*
 Philōsōphūs, ī, *philosopher.*
 Piētās, ātis, *piety, faithfulness.*
 Pigēt (*impers.*), *it irks, one is grieved at; mē pigēt, I am grieved.*
 Piscīs, īs, *m., fish.*
 Piūs, ā, ūm, *pious.*
 Plācārē, āv, āt, *to appease.*
 Plācērē, u, īt, *to please.*
 Plānē, *plainly.*
 Plūrīmūs, ā, ūm (*superl. of multus*), *very much or great; pl., very many.*
 Poēmā, ātis, *poem.*
 Poenītēt (*impers.*), *it repents, one repents.*
 Poētā, ae, *poet.*
 Pōnērē, pōsu, pōsit, *to place.*
 Pons, tīs, *m., bridge.*
 Pōpulārīs (*populūs*), ē, *popular.*
 Pōpulūs, ī, *people.*
 Portā, ae, *gate.*
 Poscērē, pōposc, *to demand.*
 Possē, pōtu (irreg., 407), *to be able.*
 Possidērē, ēd, ess, *to possess.*
 Post (*prep. with acc.*), *after.*
 Postērā, ūm (*mas. not used*), *next, following.*
 Postulārē, āv, āt, *to demand.*
 Pōtīrī, īt, *to get possession of.*
 Prae (*prep. with abl.*), *before, in comparison with.*
 Praebērē, u, īt, *to furnish, offer.*
 Praeceptūm, ī, *precept, instruction.*
 Praedā, ae, *booty.*
 Praeditūs, ā, ūm, *endued with.*

Praemitterē, mīs, miss, *to send before*.
 Praeparārē, āv, āt, *to prepare*.
 Praesens, tīs, *present*.
 Praestans, tīs, *excellent*.
 Praestāt (*impers.*), *it is better*.
 Praetērītūs, ā, ūm, *past*; neut. pl., *the past*.
 Prātūm, ī, *meadow*.
 Prētiōsūs, ā, ūm, *valuable*.
 Prīmūs, ā, ūm, *first*.
 Princeps (*primūs and cāpēre*), īpīs, *chief, leader*.
 Prīvārē, āv, āt, *to deprive*.
 Prīvātūs, ā, ūm, *private, personal*.
 Prō (*prep. with abl.*), *for, before*.
 Prōbūs, ā, ūm, *honest*.
 Prōdessē, prōfu, prōfūt, *to profit*.
 Prōditiō, ōnīs, *treachery*.
 Prōdītōr, ōrīs, *traitor*.
 Prōdūcērē, dux, duct, *to lead forward, or out*.
 Proeliūm, ī, *battle*.
 Prōfīcisci, fect, *to set out, to march*.
 Prōmitterē, mīs, miss, *to promise*.
 Prōmōvērē, mōv, mōt, *to move forward, advance*.
 Prōpensūs, ā, ūm, *inclined to*.
 Prōpiōr, ūs (*comp.*), *nearer*.
 Prōvidūs, ā, ūm, *cautious, prudent*.
 Prōvinciā (*pro and vincēre*), ae, *province*.
 Proximūs, ā, ūm, *nearest, next*.
 Prūdēns, tīs, *prudent, cautious*.
 Prūdentiā (*prudens*), ae, *prudence*.
 Pūdōr, ōrīs, *shame, modesty*.
 Puellā, ae, *girl*.
 Puēr, ī, *boy*.
 Pūgnārē (*pugnā*), āv, āt, *to fight*.
 Pulchēr, chrā, chrūm, *beautiful*.
 Pūnirē, īv, īt, *to punish*.
 Pūtārē, āv, āt, *to think, regard*.

Q.

Quaestiō, ōnīs, *question*.
 Quām (*adv.*), *how*; quām multī, *how many*; with superl. intensive, as quām maximūs, *as great as possible*.
 Quām (*conj.*), *than*.
 Quamvis, *however, however much*.
 Quantūs, ā, ūm, *how great*.

Quārē, *wherefore*.
 Quartūs, ā, ūm, *fourth*.
 Quāsī, *as if*.
 Quatuōr, *four*.
 Quē (always appended to another word), *and*.
 Quī, quae, quōd, *who, which, that*.
 Quī, quae, quōd (*interrog.*), *who, which, what?*
 Quīā, *because*.
 Quiescērē, ē, ēt, *to rest, be quiet*.
 Quīn (473), *that not, but that*.
 Quinquē, *five*.
 Quintūs, ā, ūm, *fifth*.
 Quīs, quae, quīd (*interrog. subs.*), *who, which, what?*
 Quō, *that, in order that*.
 Quōminūs (472), *that not, from*.
 Quōquē, *also*.
 Quūm, *when*; quūm—tūm, *both—and*.

R.

Rātiō, ōnīs, *reason*.
 Rēcipērē (iō), cēp, cept, *to receive*.
 Rēcordārī, āt, *to remember, call to mind*.
 Rēdirē, ī, īt, *to return*.
 Rēdūcērē, dux, duct, *to lead back*.
 Rēferrē, tūl, lāt, *to relate*.
 Rēgērē, rex, rect, *to rule, govern*.
 Rēginā, ae, *queen*.
 Rēgnārē, āv, āt, *to reign*.
 Rēgnūm, ī, *kingdom, government*.
 Rēliquūs, ā, ūm, *remaining, the rest*.
 Rēpērīrē, rēpēr, rēpert, *to find*.
 Rēs, rēi, *thing, affair*.
 Rēsistērē, stīt, *to resist*.
 Respondērē, d, s, *to answer*.
 Responsūm, ī, *answer, response*.
 Respuērē, pu, *to reject*.
 Reūs, ī, *criminal*.
 Rēvertērē, vert, vers, *to return, to turn back*.
 Rex, rēgis, *king*.
 Rhēnūs, ī, *Rhine*.
 Rīdērē, rīs, rīs, *to laugh, laugh at*.
 Rōbustūs, ā, ūm, *robust, strong*.
 Rōgārē, āv, āt, *to ask, entreat*.
 Rōmā, ae, *Rome*.
 Rōmānūs (Rēmā), ā, ūm, *Roman*.

Römülŭs, ī, *Romulus*.
 Rōtundŭs, ā, ūm, *round*.
 Ruērĕ, ru, rūt (rūt), *to rush*.
 Rŭmōr, ōrīs, *rumor*.
 Rumpĕrĕ, rūp, rupt, *to break, violate*.
 Rŭs, rūrīs, n., *country*.

S.

Sācerdōs, ōtīs, *priest, priestess*.
 Saepĕ, *often*.
 Saevīrĕ (saevŭs), īv (ī), īt, *to rage*.
 Sāgittā, ae, *arrow*.
 Saltārĕ, āv, āt, *to dance*.
 Sālŭs, ūtīs, *safety*.
 Sānārĕ, āv, āt, *to cure, reform*.
 Sancīrĕ, x, ct, *to enact, confirm*.
 Sanguīs, īnīs, m., *blood*.
 Sāpĕrĕ, īv or ī, *to be wise*.
 Sāpiens, entīs, *wise*.
 Sāpientiā, ae, *wisdom*.
 Sātiārĕ, āv, āt, *to satisfy*.
 Sātīs, *enough*.
 Sceptrŭm, ī, *sceptre*.
 Scientiā, ae, *knowledge*.
 Scīpī, ōnīs, *Scipio, a distinguished Roman*.
 Scīrĕ, īv, īt, *to know*.
 Scribĕrĕ, ps, pt, *to write*.
 Sĕcundŭs, ā, ūm, *second*.
 Sĕd, *but*.
 Sēmĕn, īnīs, *seed*.
 Sempĕr, *always*.
 Sempiternŭs, ā, ūm, *lasting, eternal*.
 Sĕnātor, ōrīs, *senator*.
 Sĕnātŭs (*senex*), ūs, *senate*.
 Sĕnectŭs, ūtīs, *old age*.
 Sĕnex, sĕnīs, *an old man*.
 Sensŭs, ūs, *feeling, perception*.
 Sententiā, ae, *sentiment*.
 Sentīrĕ, s, s, *to perceive, to feel (as pain)*.
 Sĕpĕlīrĕ, pĕlīv or ī, pult, *to bury*.
 Sermō, ōnīs, *discourse*.
 Servārĕ, āv, āt, *to keep, observe, save*.
 Servīrĕ, īv, īt, *to serve, be slave to*.
 Serviŭs, ī, *Servius, a man's name*.
 Servŭs, ī, *slave*.
 Seu—seu, *whether—or, either—or*.

Sex, *six*.
 Sī, *if*.
 Sīc, *so*.
 Sīcŭt, *so as, just as*.
 Simplex, īcīs, *simple*.
 Sīmŭlatiō, ōnīs, *assumed appearance, pretence*.
 Sīnĕ (*prep. with abl.*), *without*.
 Sīnŭs, ūs, *bosom*.
 Sīrĕn, ĕnīs, *siren*.
 Sītīrĕ, īv, īt, *to thirst*.
 Sīvĕ—sīvĕ, *whether—or*.
 Sōcrātes, īs, *Socrates, the celebrated Grecian philosopher*.
 Sōl, sōlīs, m., *sun*.
 Somnŭs, ī, *sleep*.
 Sōnŭs, ī, *sound*.
 Sōrōr, ōrīs, *sister*.
 Spargĕrĕ, rs, rs, *to scatter, sow*.
 Spĕciōsŭs (*species*), ā, ūm, *specious, plausible*.
 Spectārĕ (*specĕre*), āv, āt, *to look at, behold*.
 Spĕrārĕ, āv, āt, *to hope for*.
 Spĕs, ĕī, *hope*.
 Splendens, tīs, *shining*.
 Spōliārĕ, āv, āt, *to rob of, de spoil*.
 Stābilitās, ātīs, *firmness, stability*.
 Stātŭm (*stāre*), *immediately*.
 Stellā, ae, *star*.
 Stŭdĕrĕ, u, *to study, strive for*.
 Stŭdiōsŭs, ā, ūm, *studious*.
 Stultitiā, ae, *folly*.
 Suādĕrĕ, s, s, *to advise*.
 Subvĕnīrĕ, vĕn, vent, *to aid*.
 Succurrĕrĕ, curr, curs, *to aid, succor*.
 Suĕrĕ, su, sūt, *to sew, stitch*.
 Suī, sībī (257), *of himself, herself, &c.*
 Sullā, ae, *Sulla, a man's name*.
 Summŭs, ā, ūm, *highest, greatest; sometimes the top of (267); summŭs mons, the top of the mountain*.
 Sumptŭs, ūs, *expense*.
 Sŭpĕrārĕ, āv, āt, *to surpass, conquer, to go over*.
 Sŭperficiĕs, ĕī, *surface*.
 Sŭpervācuŭs, ā, ūm, *unnecessary*.
 Supplicātiō, ōnīs, *thanksgiving*.

Sūprā (*adv. and prep. with acc.*),
above.

Sustīnērē, u, *tent, to sustain, endure.*

Suūs, ā, ūm, *his, her, &c.*

T.

Tācērē, u, īt, *to be silent, to pass over in silence.*

Tām, so; tām—quām, so—as.

Tāmēn, *yet.*

Tangērē, tētīg, *tact, to touch.*

Tanquām, *as if.*

Tantūs, ā, ūm, *so great.*

Tārentūm, ī, *Tarentum, a town in Italy.*

Tardūs, ā, ūm, *slow.*

Tarquīniūs, ī, *Tarquin, one of the kings of Rome.*

Tectūm (*tegēre*), ī, *roof, house.*

Tēgērē, tex, tect, *to cover.*

Tempūs, ōris, *time.*

Tēnērē, u, t, *to hold.*

Tentārē, āv, āt, *to try, attempt.*

Terrā, ae, *the earth.*

Terrērē, u, īt, *to terrify.*

Tertiūs, ā, ūm, *third.*

Tibūr, ūris, *Tibur, a town in Italy.*

Tīmērē, u, *to fear.*

Tīmīdūs, ā, ūm, *timid.*

Tondērē, tōtōnd, tons, *to shear, shave.*

Tōtūs, ā, ūm (113, R.), *the whole, the entire.*

Tranquillūs, ā, ūm, *calm, tranquil.*

Transīrē, ī, īt, *to go over.*

Trēs, triā, *three.*

Trojānūs (*Trojā*), ā, ūm, *Trojan.*

Tū, tuī, *thou.*

Tullia, ae, *Tullia, a queen of Rome.*

Turpūs, ē, *base, disgraceful.*

Turrīs, īs (acc., *ēm* or *īm*; abl., *ē* or *ī*),
tower.

Tuūs, ā, ūm, *your.*

U.

Ullūs, ā, ūm (113, R.), *any.*

Undē, *whence.*

Unquām, *ever.*

Unūs, ā, ūm (113, R.), *one, single, single one.*

Urbs, īs, *city.*

Ursūs, ī, *bear.*

Usquē, *as far as*; usquē ād, *even to.*

Ut (*conj.*), *that, as.*

Utī, ūs, *to use.*

Utilīs, ē, *useful.*

Utilītās (*ūtīlis*), ātis, *utility, advantage.*

Utīnām (*conj.*), *would that.*

Utrūm (*interrog. part.*), *whether*;
utrūm—ān, *whether—or.*

Uvā, ae, *grape.*

V.

Vācārē, āv, āt, *to have leisure for.*

Vēl (*conj.*), *or*; vēl—vēl, *either—or.*

Vellē, vōlu (410), *to wish, be willing.*

Vēlox, ōcis, *swift.*

Vēnārī, āt, *to hunt.*

Vendērē, dīd, dīt, *to sell.*

Vēnirē, vēm, vent, *to come.*

Vēr, vēris, *n., spring.*

Verbūm, ī, *word.*

Vērērī, īt, *to fear.*

Vērō, *indeed, truly.*

Vērūs, ā, ūm, *true, real*; vērūm,
truth.

Vēruntāmēn, *but yet.*

Vestēr, trā, trūm, *your.*

Vestīs, īs, *garment.*

Vētustūs, ā, ūm, *ancient.*

Viā, ae, *way, road.*

Victimā, ae, *victim.*

Victōriā, ae, *Victoria.*

Vīdērē, vīd, vīs, *to see*; pass., vī-
dērī, *to seem.*

Vīgilārē (*vīgil*), āv, āt, *to watch.*

Vīgintī, *twenty.*

Vīncērē, vīc, vict, *to conquer.*

Vīncirē, vīnx, vīnct, *to bind.*

Vīncūlūm, ī, *chain.*

Vīndicārē, āv, āt, *to avenge.*

Vīōlārē, āv, āt, *to violate, wrong, break.*

Vīr, vīrī, *man, hero.*

Vīrgō, īnīs, *virgin, maiden.*

Virtūs, ūtīs, *virtue, manliness.*

Vīs, vīs (*acc., vīm*), *pl.*, vīrēs, vīriūm,
 &c., *force, strength.*

Vītā, ae, *life.*

Vītārě, āv, āt, *to shun, avoid.*

Vītŭpěrārě, āv, āt, *to blame, criticise.*

Vīvērě, vix, vict, *to live.*

Vŏcārě, āv, āt, *to call.*

Vŏlārě, āv, āt, *to fly.*

Vŏluptās, ātīs, *pleasure.*

Vox, vŏcīs, *voice.*

Vulněrārě, āv, āt, *to wound.*

Vulnūs, ěrīs, *wound.*

Vulpēs, ěs, *fox.*

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

- Ability*, ingēnium, ī.
About, dē (with *abl.*).
Above, sūprā (adv. and prep. with *acc.*).
Abridgment, ěpitōmē, ěs.
Accept, accipērē (iō), cēp, cept (550).
Accomplish, effīcērē (iō), fēc, fect.
Accuse, accūsārē, āv, āt.
Achilles, Achillēs, īs.
Acquire, obtīnērē, tīnu, tent.
Acquit, absolvērē, v, ūt.
Act, v, fācērē (iō), fēc, fact.
Admiration, admīrātiō, ōnīs.
Admonish, mōnērē, u, ět, admōnērē, &c.
Adorn, ornārē, āv, āt.
Advance, prōmōvērē, mōv, mōt.
Advantage, ūtīlītās, ātīs.
Advice, consiliūm, ī.
Advise, suādērē, s, s; mōnērē, u, ět.
Aeneas, Aenēās, ae.
Affair, rēs, rēl.
After, post (with *acc.*).
Again, ětērūm.
Again and again, ětiām atquē ětiām.
Against, ěn (acc.); contrā (acc.).
Aid, s., adjūmentūm, ī; auxiliūm, ī.
Aid, v., subvērē, vērē, vent, adjūvārē, jūv, jūt.
All (as a whole), cunctūs, ā, ūm.
All (every), omnis, ě.
Alps, Alpēs, iūm.
Also, ětiām, quoquē.
Altar, ārā, ae.
Although, licēt.
Always, sempēr.
Ambassador, lēgātūs, ī.
American, Amēricānūs, ā, ūm.

- Amphibious animal*, amphibiūm, ī.
Ample, amplūs, ā, ūm.
Anchises, Anchīsēs, ae.
Ancient, vētustūs, ā, ūm.
And, ět, quē (enclitic), āc.
Anger, ěrā, ae.
Animal, ānimāl, ālis.
Announce, nuntiārē, āv, āt (540).
Answer, s., responsūm, ī.
Answer, v., respondērē, d, s.
Any, ullūs, ā, ūm (113, R.).
Any one, ālīquīs, ā, quīd.
Appearance, fāciēs, ēl.
Appease, plācārē, āv, āt.
Appoint, constitūērē, u, ūt.
Approach, s., adventūs, ūs (521).
Approach, v., appropinquārē, āv, āt; accēdērē, cess, cess.
Arm, brāchiūm, ī.
Armor-bearer, armīgēr, ī.
Army, exercītūs, ūs.
Arouse, excitārē, āv, āt.
Arrange, constitūērē, u, ūt.
Arrange, array, instruērē, ux, uct.
Arrest, comprēhendērē, d, s.
Arrival, adventūs, ūs (521).
Arrive at, pervērē, vērē, vent.
Arrow, sāgittā, ae.
Art, ars, artīs.
As, ūt.
As far as, usquē.
As if, quāsi, tanquām.
As possible, quām with superl. (309).
Ascanius, Ascāniūs, ī.
Ascertain, cōgnoscērē, nōv, nīt.
Ask, rōgārē, āv, āt.
Ask advice, consūlērē, lu, lt.
Ass, asīnūs, ī.
Assemble, convērē, vērē, vent (550).
Assent, give assent, annuērē, u, ūt.
Assumed appearance, sīmūlātiō, ōnīs.

At a high price, mǎgnī; *at a very high price*, maxīmī.
At a low price, parvī.
At home, dōmī.
Athenian, Athēniensīs, ě.
Athens, Athēnae, ārūm.
Attack, impētūs, ūs.
Attain, attingērě, tīg, tact.
Attempt, tentārě, āv, āt.
Audacious, audax, acīs.
Author, auctōr, ōrīs.
Autumn, auctumnūs, ī.
Avarice, āvāritiā, ae.
Avaricious, āvārūs, ā, ūm.
Avenge, vindicārě, āv, āt.
Avoid, vītārě, āv, āt.

B.

Bad, imprōbūs, ā, ūm; *malicious*, ā, ūm.
Badly, mālě.
Bake, cōquērě, cox, coct.
Balbus, Bālbūs, ī.
Banish, expellērě, pŭl, puls.
Base, turpīs, ě.
Battle, proeliūm, ī.
Be, essě, fu, fŭt.
Be able, possě, pōtu.
Be born, nascī, nāt.
Be engaged in, intēressě, fu, fŭt.
Be ignorant of, nescīre, īv (i), īt.
Be made, fiērī, fact.
Be on one's guard against, cāvērě, cāv, caut.
Be prejudicial to, ōbessě, fu, fŭt.
Be present, ādessě, fu, fŭt.
Be quiet, quiescērě, quiēv, quiēt.
Be silent, tēcērě, u, īt.
Be slave to, servīrě, īv, īt.
Be unwilling, nollě, nōlu.
Be willing, vellě, vōlu.
Be wise, sāpērě, īv or ī.
Bear, s., ursūs, ī.
Bear, v., ferrě, tŭl, lāt.
Beard, barbā, ae.
Beautiful, pulchēr, chrā, chrŭm.
Because, quīā.
Become, fiērī, fact.
Before (adv.), antēā.
Before (prep.), antě, cōrām, prae, prō.
Beg for, sue for, pētērě, īv (i), īt.
Begin to bloom, flōrescērě (544).

Beginning, inceptŭm, ī.
Behold, spectārě, āv, āt.
Believe, crēdērě, crēdid, crēdit.
Below, infrā (with acc.).
Benefit, bēnēficiūm, ī.
Between, intēr (with acc.).
Bind, vincīrě, vinx, vinct.
Bird, āvis, īs, f.
Bite, mordēre, mōmord, mora.
Blame, s., culpā, ae.
Blame, v., vītŭpērārě, āv, āt.
Blind, caecūs, ā, ūm.
Blood, sanguis, inīs, m.
Bloom, flōrērě, u.
Body, corpūs, ōrīs.
Book, libēr, librī.
Booty, praedā.
Bosom, sinūs, ūs.
Both—and, et—et; quān—tŭm.
Boy, puēr, ī.
Brave, fortīs, ě.
Bravely, fortītēr.
Break, frangērě, frāg, fract; rum-pērě, rūp, rupt; violārě, āv, āt:
break one's word, fidēm violārě.
Bribery, ambītūs, ūs.
Bridge, pons, tīs, m.
Bring, bring to, afferrě, attŭl, allāt.
Bring water, āquārī, āt.
Brother, frātēr, trīs.
Brutus, Brŭtūs, ī.
Build, aedificārě, āv, āt; construērě, x, ct; condērě, did, dīt.
Building, aedificiūm, ī.
Burn, incendērě, d, s.
Bury, sēpēlīrě, īv (i), pult.
But, sēd, āt, autēm.
But, now (in reasoning), atquī.
But, but yet, attāmēn, vēruntāmēn.
But that, quān.
Buy, ěmērě, ěm, empt.
By (with voluntary agent), ā, āt, abq,
in other cases indicated by abl.

C.

Caesar, Caesār, ārīs.
Caius, Caiūs, ī.
Calamity, cālāmītās, ātīs.
Call, vōcārě, āv, āt.
Call to mind, rēcōrdārī, āt.
Calm, tranquillūs, ā, ūm.

Camp, castră, ōrūm.
Captive, captīvūs, ī.
Card, carpērē, ps, pt.
Carry, ferrē, tūl, lāt.
Carry on (as war), gērērē, gess, gest.
Carthage, Carthāgō, inīs.
Carthaginian, Carthāgīniensis, ē.
Catch, dēprēhendērē, d, s.
Cautious, prūdēns, tīs; prōvīdūs, ā, ūm.
Cavalry, equitātūs, ūs.
Cave, antrūm, ī.
Celebrated, cēlēbēr, brīs, brē.
Censure, vītūpērārē, āv, āt.
Certain, certūs, ā, ūm.
Chain, vincūlūm, ī; cātēnā, ae.
Change, mūtārē, āv, āt.
Chariot, currūs, ūs.
Chastise, castīgārē, āv, āt.
Chief, princeps, cīpis.
Children, libērī, ōrūm.
Choice, optiō, ōnīs.
Christian, Christiānūs, ī.
Cicero, Cicerō, ōnīs.
Citadel, arx, arcīs.
Citizen, cīvīs, īs.
City, urbs, urbīs.
Civil, cīvilis, ē (528).
Clemency, clēmētiā, ae.
Cloak, palliūm, ī.
Cloud, nūbēs, is.
Cold, frigūs, ōrīs.
Collect, compārārē, āv, āt.
Color, cōlōr, ōrīs.
Come, vērērē, vēr, vent.
Come together, convērērē, vēr, vent.
Command, v., impērārē, āv, āt.
Commands, s., impērātā, ōrūm.
Commander, impērātōr, ōrīs (521).
Compel, compellērē, pūl, puls.
Conceal, occultārē, āv, āt.
Concerning, dē (with abl.).
Condemn, damnārē, āv, āt.
Condition, conditiō, ōnīs.
Conference, collōquiūm, ī.
Confine, continērē, tīnu, tent.
Confirm, sancērē, sanx, sanct.
Conquer, sūpērārē, āv, āt; vincērē, vic, vict; dēvincērē, vic, vict.
Construct, construērē, x, ct.
Consul, consūl, ūlīs.
Consult, consūlērē, lu, lt.

Contend, concertārē, āv, āt.
Contented, contentūs, ā, ūm.
Contest, certāmēn, inīs.
Convert, convertērē, t, s.
Cook, cōquērē, cox, coct.
Correct, corrigērē, rex, rect.
Corrupt, corrumpērē, rūp, rupt.
Council, conciliūm, ī.
Country, rūs, rūrīs.
Cover, tēgērē, tex, tect.
Cowardly, ignāvūs, ā, ūm.
Crime, flāgitiūm, ī.
Criminal, reūs, ī.
Criticise, vītūpērārē, āv, āt.
Crown, s., cōrōnā, ae.
Crown, crown with a garland, cōrōnā cingērē, nx, nct.
Cry out, exclāmārē, āv, āt.
Cultivate, cōlērē, cōlu, cult.
Cure, sārārē, āv, āt.

D.

Dance, saltārē, āv, āt.
Dangerous, pēriculōsūs, ā, ūm.
Daring, audax, ācis.
Daughter, filiā, ae.
Day, diēs, ēī.
Death, mors, tīs.
Deceive, dēcipērē (iō), cēp, cept.
Deceptive, fallax, ācis.
Decide, dēcernērē, crēv, crēt.
Declare, indicērē, dix, dict; *declare war*, bellūm indicērē.
Decree, dēcernērē, crēv, crēt.
Defend, dēfendērē, d, s.
Defile, angustiae, ārūm.
Defraud, fraudārē, āv, āt.
Delightful, jūcundūs, ā, ūm.
Demand, poscērē, pōposc; postūlārē, āv, āt.
Demonstrate, dēmonstrare, āv, āt.
Depart, abērē, ī, it.
Deprive, prīvārē, āv, āt.
Derive, have, hābērē, u, it.
Desire, s., cūpiditās, ātis.
Desire, v., cūpērē (iō), iv or ī, it.
Desirous of, cūpidūs, ā, ūm.
Despoil, spōliārē, āv, āt.
Destroy, dēlērē, ēv, ēt.
Destruction, pernīciēs, ēī.
Deter, dētterrērē, u, it.

Dido, Dīdō, ōnīs.
Difficult, difficīlis, ě.
Diligence, diligentiā, ae.
Diligent, diligens, tīs.
Direct, order, jūbērě, juss, juss.
Discharge, fungī, funct.
Discourse, sermō, ōnīs.
Discover, conspīcērě (iō), spex, spect.
Disgraceful, turpis, ě.
Dismiss, dīmīttērě, mīs, miss.
Disregard, nēglīgērě, lex, lect.
Distance, intervallū, ī.
Divide, dividērě, vīs, vīs.
Divine, dīvīnūs, ā, ūm.
Divitiacus, Divitiācūs, ī.
Do, fācērě (iō), fēc, fact.
Do good to, prōdessě, prōfu, prōfūt.
Do wrong, peccārě, āv, āt.
Dog, cānis, īs.
Doubt, dūbītārě, āv, āt.
Dove, cōlumbā, ae.
Drink, bībērě, bīb, bībīt.
Drive, āgērě, ěg, act; compellērě, pūl, puls.
During, inter (*with acc.*).
Duty, officiū, ī.
Dwell, hābitārě, āv, āt.

E.

Eagle, aquilā, ae.
Earth, terrā, ae.
Easy, fācilīs, ě.
Eat, ēdērě, ēd, ēs.
Edifice, aedificiū, ī.
Effect, effīcērě (iō), fēc, fect.
Eight, octō.
Either—or, aut—aut.
Elegance, ēlēgantiā, ae.
Elephant, ēlēphās, antīs,
Enact, sancērě, x, ct.
End, finīs, īs, m. and f.
Endued with, praeditūs, ā, ūm.
Endure, sustīnērě, tīnu, tent; ferrě, tūl, lāt.
Enemy, hostīs, īs, c.
Engage (as battle), committērě, mīs, miss; *engage battle*, proeliūm committērě.
Enjoy, fruī, fruct (fruit).
Enlighten, illustrārě, āv, āt.
Enough, sātīs.

Entire, tōtūs, ā, ūm (113, R.).
Entreat, rōgārě, āv, āt.
Enumerate, ēnūmērārě, āv, āt.
Envy, invīdērě, vīd, vīs.
Epistle, ēpistolā, ae; *litērae*, ārūm.
Equity, aequitās, ātīs.
Err, errārě, āv, āt.
Estate, fundūs, ī.
Eternal, sempiternūs, ā, ūm.
Even, ētiām.
Even to, usquē ād.
Ever, unquām.
Every, omnīs, e.
Evil, mālū, ī.
Excellent, praestans, tīs.
Excessive, nīmīūs, ā, ūm.
Excite, excitārě, āv, āt.
Exclaim, exclāmārě, āv, āt.
Exercise, exercērě, u, īt.
Expect, expectārě, āv, āt.
Expel, expellērě, pūl, puls.
Expense, sumptūs, ūs.
Explain, expōnērě, pōsu, pōsīt.
Eye, ōculūs, ī.

F.

Fabulous, fābūlōsūs, ā, ūm.
Face, faciēs, ēī.
Faith, fidēs, ēī.
Faithful, fidēlis, ě.
Faithfulness, piētās, ātīs.
Fall, cādērě, cēcīd, cās; *occidērě*, cīd, cās.
False, fallax, ācīs (535).
Falsehood, mendaciū, ī.
Farm, fundūs, ī.
Father, pātēr, pātrīs.
Fault, culpā, ae.
Faustulus, Faustulūs, ī.
Favor, s., grātiā, ae.
Favor, v., fāvērě, fāv, faut.
Fear, s., mētūs, ūs.
Fear, v., tīmērě, u; *mētuerě*, u, ūt; *vērērī*, īt.
Fear greatly, pertīnescērě, mu.
Feast, coenā, ae.
Feel (as pain, &c.), sentīrě, s, s.
Feeling, sensūs, ūs.
Few, paucī, ae, ā.
Fidelity, fidēs, ēī.
Field, āgēr, āgrī.

Fifth, quintūs, ā, ūm.
Fight, pugnārē, āv, āt.
Figure, figurā, ae.
Fill, complērē, ēv, ēt.
Find, invēnirē, vēm, vent; rēpērirē, rēpēr, rēpert.
Fine, beautiful, pulchēr, chrā, chrūm.
Finish, finirē, īv, īt (540).
Fire, ignis, īs, m.
Firm, firmūs, ā, ūm.
Firmness, stābilitās, ātis.
First, primūs, ā, ūm.
Fish, piscis, īs, m.
Five, quinquē.
Flatterer, ādulātōr, ōris.
Flattery, ādulātiō, ōnis.
Flay, dēglūbērē, ps, pt.
Flee, fūgērē (iō), fūg, fūgit.
Flee for refuge, confūgērē (iō), fūg.
Flee from, ēvōlārē, āv, āt.
Flight, fūgā, ae.
Flock, grex, grēgis, m.
Flourish, flōrērē, u.
Flow, fluērē, x, x.
Flower, flōs, ōris.
Fly, vōlārē, āv, āt.
Fly away, ēvōlārē, āv, āt.
Following, postērā, ūm (masc. nom. not used).
Folly, stultitiā, ae.
Food, cībūs, ī.
Foot, pēs, pēdis.
For (conj.), ēnīm, nām, namquē.
For (prep.), prō (with abl.).
For ever, perpētūō.
Forage, pābulārī, āt.
Force, mānūs, ūs; vīs, vīs (pl. virēs).
Forces, cōpia, arūm.
Forget, obliviscī, oblīt.
Formerly, ōlīm.
Fortune, fortunā, ae.
Found, condērē, dīd, dīt (550).
Four, quātuōr.
Fourth, quartūs, ā, ūm.
Fox, vulpēs, īs.
Free, libēr, ā, ūm.
Frequent, crēbēr, brā, brūm.
Friend, āmicūs, ī.
Friendship, āmicitiā, ae.
Frighten, terrērē, u, īt.

From, ā, āb, abs, dē, ex, and sometimes before participial nouns, quōmīnūs.
Fulfil, fungī, funct.
Furnish, praeberē, u, īt.
Further, ampliūs.
Future, fūtūrūs, ā, ūm.

G.

Gallic, Gallicūs, ā, ūm.
Game, lūdūs, ī.
Garden, hortūs, ī.
Garland, cōrōnā, ae.
Garment, vestīs, īs.
Gate, portā, ae.
Gather, carpērē, ps, pt.
Gaul, a Gaul, Gallūs, ī.
Germany, Germāniā, ae.
Get possession of, pōtirī, īt.
Gift, dōnūm, ī.
Girl, puellā, ae.
Give, dārē, dēd, dāt; dōnārē, āv, āt.
Glitter, mīcārē, u.
Glory, glōriā, ae.
Go, irē, īv or ī, īt.
Go away, ābirē, ī, īt.
Go over, transirē, ī, īt; supērārē, āv, āt.
Gold, aurūm, ī.
Golden, aureūs, ā, ūm.
Good, bōnūs, ā, ūm.
Govern, rēgērē, rex, rect.
Government, rēgnūm, ī.
Grain, grānūm, ī.
Grape, ūvā, ae.
Gratitude, grātiā, ae.
Great, māgnūs, ā, ūm; at a great price, māgnī; it is a great thing, māgnūm est.
Greater, majōr, ūs.
Greatest, highest, summūs, ā, ūm.
Greatest, very great, maximūs, ā, ūm; at a very great price, maximī.
Greatness, māgnitūdō, īnis.
Greeks, Graecī, ōrūm.
Grief, dōlōr, ōris; luctūs, ūs.
Grieve, dōlērē, u, īt; lūgērē, lux.
Grove, lūcūs, ī.
Guard, custōdirē, īv, īt (540).
Guide, dux, dūcis.

H.

Hand, mănūs, ūs.
Hang, pendērē, pēperād.
Hannibal, Hannibāl, ālis.
Happily, beātē.
Happiness, fēlicitās, ātis.
Happy, beātūs, ā, ūm.
Harmless, innoxius, ā, ūm.
Hatred, ōdiūm, ī.
Have, hābērē, u, īt.
Hawk, accipitēr, trīs.
He himself, ipsē, ā, ūm.
He, she, it, illē, ā, ūd.
He, she, or it is, est.
Head, cāpūt, itis.
Hear, audirē, iv, īt.
Heart, cōr, cordis, n.
Heat, ignis, is, m.
Heaven, the heavens, coelūm, ī.
Heavy, grāvis, ē.
Help, s., adjūmentūm, ī.
Help, v., adjūvārē, jūv, jūt.
Herd, grex, grēgis, m.
Hero, vir, viri; hērōs, ōis.
Hide, occultārē, āv, āt.
High, altūs, ā, ūm.
Highest, summūs, ā, ūm.
Hinder, impēdirē, iv (i), īt.
His, her, its, &c., suūs, ā, ūm.
History, histōriā, ae.
Hold, tēnērē, u, tent.
Home, dōmūs, ūs or ī, f.
Honest, prōbūs, ā, ūm.
Honey, mēl, mellis.
Honor, hōnōr, ōris.
Hope, s., spēs, ēi.
Hope, hope for, spērārē, āv, āt.
Horse, ēquūs, ī.
Horseman, ēquēs, itis.
Hostage, obsēs, idis.
House, tectūm, ī; dōmūs, ūs or ī, f.
How, quām; *how many*, quām multī.
How great, quantūs, ā, ūm; *how much*, quantum (*with gen.*).
However, however much, quamvis.
Human, hūmānūs, ā, ūm.
Hunger, fāmēs, is.
Hunt, venārī, āt.
Hurt, nōcērē, u, īt.
Husband, conjux, ūgis.
Husbandman, āgricōlā, ae.

I.

I, ēgō, meī.
If, sī, dummōdō.
Ignorance, ignōrātiō, ōnis.
Ignorant, ignārūs, ā, ūm.
Illumine, illustrārē, āv, āt.
Immediately, stātīm.
Immense, immensūs, ā, ūm.
Immortal, immortalis, ē.
Immovable, immōbilis, ē.
Impede, impēdirē, iv (i), īt.
Impious, impiūs, ā, ūm.
Imprudent, imprūdēns, tis.
In, in (*with abl.*).
In all, omninō.
In comparison with, prae.
In order that, quō.
In person, in presence of, cōrām.
In the mean time, intērīm.
In such a manner, ādeō.
Inclined to, prōpensūs, ā, ūm.
Increase, augērē, aux, auct; crescērē, crēv, crēt.
Incredible, incrēdībīlis, ē. (535).
Indeed, enī, verō.
Indolent, ignāvūs, ā, ūm.
Indulge, indulgērē, ls, lt.
Industry, industriā, ae.
Inflit, infligērē, x, ct.
Inhabit, hābitārē, āv, āt.
Inhabitant, incōlā, ae, (560).
Injury, injūriā, ae.
Innocent, innōcens, tis.
Instruct, ērūdirē, iv, īt.
Instruction, consiliūm, ī: praeceptūm, ī.
Into, in (with acc.).
Invade, invādērē, vās, vās, (550).
Invite, call, vōcārē, āv, āt.
Iron, ferrūm, ī.
Irritate, irritārē, āv, āt.
It behooves, oportēt.
It is better, praestāt.
It is well known, is an admitted fact, constāt.
It is lawful, licēt.
It pities, one pities, misērēt.
It repents, one repents, pœnitēt.
Italy, Itāliā, ae.

J.

Journey, ĭtĕr, ĭtĭnĕrĭs, *n*.
Judge, s., jŭdex, ĭcĭs.
Judge, v., jŭdicĕrĕ, āv, āt.
Just, jŭstŭs, ā, ūm.
Just as, sĭcŭt.
Justice, æqŭitās, ātĭs.

K.

Keep, servārĕ, āv, āt.
Kid, hædŭs, ĭ.
Kill, occidĕrĕ, cĭd, cĭs; interficĕrĕ (iŏ), fĕc, fect.
Kind, sort, s., gĕnŭs, ĕrĭs.
Kind, a., bĕnĭgnŭs, ā, ūm.
King, rex, rĕgĭs.
Kingdom, rĕgnŭm, ĭ.
Know, scĭrĕ, scĭv, scĭt.
Knowledge, scientĭā, ae.
Known, cŏgnĭtŭs, ā, ūm.

L.

Labor, s., lābŏr, ōrĭs.
Labor, v., lābŏrārĕ, āv, āt.
Lamb, āgnŭs, ĭ.
Large, māgnŭs, ā, ūm; amplŭs, ā, ūm.
Larger, majŏr, ūs.
Last, dŭrārĕ, āv, āt.
Lasting, sempĭternŭs, ā, ūm.
Latinus, Lātinŭs, ĭ.
Laugh, laugh at, rĭdĕrĕ, rĭs, rĭs.
Lavinia, Lāvĭniā, ae.
Law, lex, lĕgĭs.
Lead, dŭcĕrĕ, dux, duct; āgĕrĕ, ĕg, act.
Lead back, rĕdŭcĕrĕ, dux, duct.
Lead forth, ĕdŭcĕrĕ, dux, duct.
Lead forward or out, prŏdŭcĕrĕ, dux, duct.
Lead to, addŭcĕrĕ, dux, duct.
Leader, dux, dŭcĭs.
Learn, discĕrĕ, dĭdĭc.
Legion, lĕgiŏ, ōnĭs.
Letter, lĭtĕrĕ, ārŭm: ĕpĭstŏlā, ae.
Levy, compārārĕ, āv, āt.
Lie, a falsehood, mendāciŭm, ĭ.
Life, vĭtā, ae.
Light, lux, lŭcĭs.

Line of battle, āciĕs, ēl.
Lion, leŏ, ōnĭs.
Listen to, audĭrĕ, ĭv, ĭt.
Little, parvŭs, ā, ūm; a little, parvŭm: paucŭs, ā, ūm.
Little garden, hortŭlŭs, ĭ. (515).
Live, vĭvĕrĕ, vix, vict.
Lofty, altŭs, ā, ūm.
Look at, spectārĕ, āv, āt.
Lose, āmittĕrĕ, mĭs, miss.
Love, āmārĕ, āv, āt.

M.

Maiden, virgŏ, ĭnĭs.
Make, fĕcĕrĕ (iŏ), fĕc, fact: make a reply, responsŭm dārĕ.
Man, hŏmŏ, ĭnĭs: vĭr, ĭ.
Manliness, virtŭs, ūtĭs.
Many, multŭs, ā, ūm; many things, multā.
March, prŏficiscĭ, fect.
Marine, of the sea, mārĭnŭs, ā, ūm.
Master as teacher, māgĭstĕr, trĭ.
Master as owner, dŏmĭnŭs, ĭ.
Matron, mātŕŏnā, ae.
Meadow, prātŭm, ĭ.
Meanwhile, intĕrĭm.
Meeting, concĭliŭm, ĭ.
Melt, liquescĕrĕ, lĭcŭ.
Merciful, clĕmens, tĭs: lĕnĭs, ĕ.
Messenger, nuntiŭs, ĭ.
Middle, midst of, middle of, mĕdiŭs, ā, ūm, (267.)
Mild, lĕnĭs, ĕ: clĕmens, tĭs.
Mildness, clĕmentĭā, ae.
Military service, militĭā, ae.
Mind, ānĭmŭs, ĭ; mind, the reasoning faculty, mens, tĭs.
Miserable, mĭsĕr, ā, ūm.
Misfortune, cālāmĭtās, ātĭs: mālŭm, ĭ.
Mislead, corrupĕrĕ, rūp, rupt.
Modesty, pŭdŏr, ōrĭs.
Money, pĕcŭniā, ae.
Month, mensĭs, ĭs, m.
Moon, lŭnā, ae.
More, ampliŭs, (adv.).
Mortal, mortālĭs, ĕ.
Mother, mātĕr, trĭs.
Mountain, mons, tĭs, m.
Mourn, wear mourning for, lŭgĕrĕ, x, ct.

Movable, mōbīlis, ě.

Move, mōvēřě, mōv, mōt.

Move forward, prōmōvēřě, mōv, mōt.

Much, multūs, ā, ūm; *much good*, multūm bōnī; *much time*, multūm tempōris.

Multitude, multītūdō, īnīs.

My, meūs, ā, ūm.

N.

Name, nōmēn, īnīs.

Narrate, narrārě, āv, āt.

Narration, narratīo, ōnīs, (521.)

Narrow pass, angustīae, ārām.

Nation, nātīō, ōnīs.

Native country, pātriā, ae.

Natural to man, hūmānūs, ā, ūm.

Nature, gēnūs, ěris.

Nearer, prōpiōr, ūs.

Neither, nēc; *neither—nor*, nēc—nēc.

Nest, nīdūs, ī.

Never, nunquām.

Next, nearest, proximūs, ā, ūm; *next following*, postērā, ūm (masc. nom. not used).

Night, nox, noctīs.

Nightingale, luscīniā, ae.

No, no one (adj.), nullūs, ā, ūm (113. R.).

No one, nobody, (sub.), nēmō, (īnīs).

Not, nōn; *with imperat. or subj.*, nē;

not only—but also, nōn sōlūm—sēd etiām.

Not even, nēquīdēm.

Not to know, nescīřě, īv, īt.

Not yet, nondūm.

Nothing, nihīl (indec.).

November, Nōvemběr, brīs (abl. ī.),

Numa, Nūmā, ae.

Number, s., nūmērūs, ī.

Number, v., nūmērārě, āv, āt.

O.

O, O.

O if, o sī.

Obey, pārěřě, u, īt.

Observe, servārě, āv, āt.

Obtain, obtīněřě, u, tent.

Occasion, occāsiō, ōnīs.

Of himself, suī.

Of yesterday, hesternūs, ā, ūm.

Offend-against, viōlārě, āv, āt.

Offer, praeberě, u, īt.

Often, saepě.

Old age, sēnectūs, ūtīs.

Old man, sēnex, sēnīs.

On service, milītiaē.

On this side, cīs.

One, single one, ūnūs, ā, ūm (113. R.).

One is grieved at, pigēt; *I am grieved at*, mē pigēt.

One ought, oportēt.

Only, mōdō.

Open, āpērīřě, u, t.

Openly, cōrām.

Opportunity, occāsiō, ōnīs.

Oppose, obstārě, stīt, stāt.

Or, aut, vėl; *either—or*, vėl—vėl.

Or, in double questions, ān.

Oration, ōrātīō, ōnīs.

Orator, ōrātōr, ōrīs.

Order, jūbērě, juss, juss.

Other, āliūs, ā, ūd (113. R.).

Our, nostēr, trā, trūm.

Overhang, impenděřě.

Overthrow, ēvertěřě, rt, rs.

P.

Pain, dōlōr, ōrīs.

Pardon, ignoscěřě, nōv, nōt.

Parent, pārens, entīs.

Part, pars, tīs.

Pass over in silence, tēcěřě, u, īt.

Passion, cūpīdītās, ātīs.

Past, praetērītūs, ā, ūm; *the past*, praetērītā.

Pausanias, Pausāniās; ae.

Peace, pax, cīs.

Peacock, pāvō, ōnīs.

People, pōpūlūs, ī.

Perceive, sentīřě, s. s; perspicěřě (iō), spex, spect.

Perception, sensūs, ūs.

Perfidy, perfīdiā, ae.

Personal, prīvātūs, ā, ūm.

Persuade, persuāděřě, s. s.

Philosopher, philōsōphūs, ī.

Physician, medicūs, ī.

Piety, piētās, ātīs.

Pious, piūs, ā, ūm,
Pity, mīserērī, īt.
Place, s., lōcūs, ī. (*pl.* I, *or* ā.)
Place, v., pōnērē, pūsu, pōsīt.
Plainly, plānē.
Plausible, spēcīōsūs, ā, ūm.
Play, s., lūdūs, ī.
Play, v., lūdērē, s. s.
Pleasant, jūcundūs, ā, ūm.
Please, plācērē, u, īt.
Pleasure, vōluptās, ātis.
Plough, ārārē, āv, āt.
Pluck, carpērē, ps, pt.
Plunge into, immergērē, rs, rs.
Poem, poēmā, ātis.
Poet, poētā, ae.
Poor man, paupēr, ēris.
Popular, pōpūlāris, ē (528).
Possess, possīdērē, ēd, ess.
Practise, cōlērē, u, cult; exercērē, u, īt.
Praise, s., laus, dīs.
Praise, v., laudārē, āv, āt.
Precept, praeceptūm, ī.
Prefer, mallē, mālu.
Prepare, pārārē, āv, āt; praepārārē.
Present (adj.), praesens, tīs.
Present, to make a present, dōnārē, āv, āt.
Preserve, conservārē, āv, āt.
Pretence, sīmūlātiō, ōnīs.
Prevent, dētērrērē, u, īt; obstārē, stīt, stāt.
Priest, priestess, sācerdōs, ōtīs.
Private, prīvātūs, ā, ūm.
Prize, aestīmārē, āv, āt; *prize highly*, māgnī aestīmārē.
Procure, compārārē, āv, āt.
Profit, prōdessē, prōfu, prōfūt.
Promise, prōmittērē, mīs, miss.
Provided, dummōdō.
Province, prōvincia, ae.
Prudence, prūdentiā, ae.
Prudent, prūdēns, tīs; prōvīdūs, ā, ūm.
Pull down, ēvertērē, t, s.
Punish, pūnērē, īv, īt.
Pupil, discipūlus, ī.
Purchase, ēmērē, ēm, empt.
Put confidence in, crēdērē, crēdīd, crēdīt.
Put to flight, fūgārē, āv, āt, (540).

Q.

Quarrel, concertārē, āv, āt.
Queen, rēgīnā, ae.
Question, quaestiō, ōnīs.
Quickly, cēlērītēr.

R.

Rage, saevīrē, īv, īt.
Raise, compārārē, āv, āt.
Reach, attingērē, tīg, tact; pervēnērē, vēn, vent.
Read, lēgērē, lēg, lect.
Real, vērūs, ā, ūm.
Reason, rātiō, ōnīs.
Receive, accipērē (iō), cēp, cept; rēcīpērē (iō); cāpērē (iō), cēp, capt.
Reform, sānārē, āv, āt.
Refuge, perfūgiūm, ī.
Regard, pūtārē, āv, āt.
Reign, rēgnārē, āv, āt.
Reject, respuērē, pu.
Relate, narrārē, āv, āt; rēferrē, tūl, lāt.
Relying on, frētūs, ā, ūm.
Remain, mănērē, mans, mans.
Remaining, rēliquūs, ā, ūm.
Remember, rēcōrdārī, āt.
Render thanks, grātiās āgērē.
Repent, one repents, poenītēt (435).
Report, s., rūmōr, ōris.
Report, nuntiārē, āv, āt.
Repress, compescērē, cu.
Resist, rēsistērē, stīt, stīt.
Response, responsūm, ī.
Rest, the rest, rēliquūs, ā, ūm.
Rest, quiescērē, quīēv, quīēt.
Restrain, cōtīnērē, u, tent; compescērē, cu.
Return, rēdirē, ī, īt; rēvertērē, t, s (551.)
Rhine, Rhēnūs, ī.
Rich, lōcuplēs, ētīs.
Ring, ānūlus, ī.
Ripen, cōquērē, cox, coct.
River, flūmēn, īnīs.
Road, viā, ae.
Rob of, spōliārē, āv, āt.
Robust, rōbustūs, ā, ūm.
Roman, Rōmānūs, ā, ūm.
Rome, Rōmā, ae.

Romulus, Rōmŭlŭs, ī.
Roof, tectŭm, ī.
Round, rōtundŭs, ā, ūm.
Rule, rēgērē, rex, rect.
Rumor, rūmōr, ōrīs.
Run, currērē, cŭcurr, curs.
Rush, ruērē, ru, rŭt.

S.

Safe, incōlŭmīs, ē.
Safety, sālŭs, ūtīs.
Same, idēm, eādēm, idēm.
Satisfy, sātiārē, āv, āt.
Save, servārē, āv, āt.
Say, dicērē, dix, dict.
Scatter, spargērē, spars, spars.
Sceptre, sceptrŭm, ī.
Scipio, Scīpiō, onīs.
Sea, mārē, īs.
Second, sēcundŭs, ā, ūm.
See, vidērē, vid, vis; conspīcērē
 (iō), spex, spect.
Seed, sēmēn, īnīs.
Seek, pētērē, īv or ī, īt.
Seem, vidērī, vīs.
Seize, arrīpērē (iō), īpu, ept; dēprē-
 hendērē, hend, hens.
Self, ipsē, ā, ūm.
Sell, vendērē, dīd, dīt.
Senate, sēnātŭs, ūs, (517.)
Senator, sēnātōr, ōrīs.
Send, mittērē, mīs, miss.
Send before, praemittērē, mīs, miss.
Sentiment, sententiā, ae.
Separate, disjüngērē, x, ct.
Serve, servīrē, īv (ī), īt.
Servius, Serviŭs, ī.
Set forth, expōnērē, pōsu, pōsīt.
Set on fire, incendērē, d, s.
Set out, prōficisci, fect.
Severe, ācēr, ācrīs, ācrē.
Sew, stīch, suērē, su, sūt.
Shame, pūdōr, ōrīs.
Sharp, ācēr, ācrīs, ācrē.
Shave, tondērē, tōtōnd, tons.
Shear, tondērē, tōtōnd, tons.
Sheep, ōvīs, īs.
Shepherd, pastōr, ōrīs. (520.)
Shield, clīpeŭs, ī.
Shine, micārē, u; lŭcērē, x.
Shining, splēndens, tīs.

Short, brēvīs, ē.
Shoulder, hŭmērŭs, ī.
Show, monstrārē, āv, āt; dēmon-
 strārē, āv, āt.
Shrub, frŭtex, īcīs, m.
Shun, vitārē, āv, āt.
Shut, claudērē, s, s.
Silver, argentŭm, ī.
Simple, simplex, īcīs.
Sin, peccārē, āv, āt.
Since, cŭm, quŭm.
Sing, cānērē, cēcīn, cant; cantārē,
 āv, āt.
Single, single one, ūnŭs, ā, ūm
 (113, R.).
Siren, sīrēn, ēnīs.
Sister, sōrōr, ōrīs.
Six, sex.
Size, māgnītūdō, īnīs.
Skilful, skilled in, pērītŭs, ā, ūm.
Skin, dēglŭbērē, ps, pt.
Slave, servŭs, ī.
Sleep, s., somnŭs, ī.
Sleep, dormīrē, īv, īt.
Slow, tardŭs, ā, ūm.
Small, parvŭs, ā, ūm.
Smaller, mīnōr, ūs.
Snake, anguīs, īs, m.
Snatch, arrīpērē (iō), īpu, ept.
Snow, nix, nīvīs.
So, sic, ādeō, tām; so—as, tām—
 quām, sicŭt.
So great, tantŭs, ā, ūm.
Socrates, Sōcrātēs, īs.
Soldier, milēs, ītīs.
Some, āliquīs, quā, quīd (quōd);
 some time, āliquīd tempōrīs.
Some time, some time or other, āli-
 quandō.
Sometimes, intērīm.
Son, filiŭs, ī.
Son-in-law, gēnēr, ī.
Sorrow, dōlōr, ōrīs; luctŭs, ūs.
Soul, ānimŭs, ī.
Sound, sōnŭs, ī.
Sow, spargērē, rs, rs.
Space, intervallŭm, ī.
Spare, parcērē, pēperc (pars), parcīt
 (pars).
Speak, lōquī, lōcūtŭs.
Spear, hastā, ae.
Specious, spēcīōsŭs, ā, ūm (530).

Spin, nērē, nēv, nēt.
Sport, lūdūs, i.
Spouse, conjux, gīs.
Spring, vēr, vērīs, n.
Sprinkle, aspergērē, rs, rs.
Stability, stābilitās, atīs
Stain, mǎculārē, āv, āt.
Star, stellā, ae.
State, civitās, atīs.
Storm, expūgnārē, āv, āt.
Stream, flūmēn, inīs.
Strength, vīs, vis (pl., vīrēs).
Strive for, stūdērē, u.
Strong, rōbustūs, ā, ūm.
Studious, stūdiōsūs, ā, ūm.
Study, stūdērē, u.
Successive, continuūs, ā, ūm.
Succor, succurrērē, rr, rs.
Sue for, pētērē, iv (i), it.
Sulla, Sullā, ae.
Summer, aestās, atīs.
Sun, sōl, sōlīs, m.
Supper, coenā, ae.
Supplicate, exōrārē, āv, āt.
Surface, sūperficiēs, ēi.
Surpass, sūpērārē, āv, āt.
Surrender, dēdērē, dīd, dīt.
Surround, circumdārē, dēd, dāt; cingērē, x, ct.
Sustain, sustinērē, u, tent.
Swear, jūrārē, āv, āt.
Swift, vēlox, ocīs.
Swim, nārē, āv, āt.
Sword, glādiūs, i.

T.

Take, cǎpērē (iō), cep, capt.
Take care, cǎvērē, cāv, caut.
Take care of, cūrārē, āv, āt.
Take by storm, expūgnārē, āv, āt (550).
Talent, ingēniūm, i.
Tarentum, Tārentūm, i.
Tarquin, Tarquiniūs, i.
Teach, dōcērē, u, doct.
Tear in pieces, dilāniārē, āv, āt.
Ten, dēcēm.
Tenth, dēcīmūs, ā, ūm.
Terms, conditiō, ōnīs.
Terrify, terrērē, u, it.
Than, quām.
Thanks, grātiaē, ārūm.

Thanksgiving, supplicātiō, ōnīs.
That (pron.), illē, ā, ūd; is, eā, id; istē, ā, ūd.
That (conj.), ūt, with comp. (469), quō.
That not, quōmīnūs, quīn.
The entire, tōtūs, ā, ūm (113, R.).
Theft, furtūm, i.
There, ibi.
Therefore, ergō, itāquē, ideo, igitūr.
Thing, rēs, rēi.
Think, pūtārē, āv, āt; *think about*, cōgītārē, āv, āt; *think little of*, parvī aestimārē, āv, āt.
Third, tertiūs, ā, ūm.
Thirst, sitirē, iv, it.
This, hīc, haec, hōc.
Thou, you, tū, tuī.
Thousand, millē.
Threaten, impendērē.
Three, trēs, triā.
Through, pēr.
Tibur, Tībūr, ūrīs.
Till, cōlērē, u, cult.
Time, tempūs, ōrīs.
Timid, timidūs, ā, ūm.
To, ad, in (with acc.).
To death, c' pītīs.
Too much, nimīūs, ā, ūm.
Top, the top, summūs, ā, ūm; *agreeing with the noun, as*, summūs mons, *the top of the mountain*.
Torture, excrucīārē, āv, āt.
Touch, tangērē, tētīg, tact.
Towards, ergā (with acc.).
Tower, arx, cis; turris, is (acc., ēm or im, abl. ē or i).
Traitor, prōdītōr, ōrīs.
Tranquil, tranquillūs, ā, ūm.
Treachery, treason, prōditiō, ōnīs.
Treaty, foedūs, ērīs.
Tree, arbōr, ōrīs, f.
Trojan, Trojānūs, ā, ūm.
True, vērūs, ā, ūm.
Truly, vērō.
Truth, vērūm, i.
Try, tentārē, āv, āt.
Tullia, Tulliā, ae.
Turn, convert, convertērē, t, s.
Turn back, rēvertērē, t, s.
Twelve, duodēcīm.
Twenty, vīgintī.

Two, duō, duae, duō.
Two hundred, dūcentī, ae, ā.
Two years, space of two years, bien-
 niūm.

U.

Uncertain, incertūs, ā, ūm (550).
Uncover, āpērīrē, ru, rt.
Understand, intelligērē, lex, lect.
Uninjured, incōlūmīs, ē.
Unknown, incōgnītūs, ā, ūm.
Unlearned, indoctūs, ā, ūm.
Unnecessary, sūpervācuūs, ā, ūm.
Unwilling, invītūs, ā, ūm.
Unworthy, indignūs, ā, ūm.
Use, v., ūtī, ūs.
Useful, ūtilis, ē.
Useless, inūtilis, ē.
Utility, ūtilitās, ātis.

V.

Valuable, prētiōsūs, ā, ūm.
Value, aestimārē, āv, āt.
Very (before a noun or pronoun, sometimes), ipsē, ā, ūm.
Very fond, stūdiōsūs, a, um.
Very much or great, plūrīmūs, ā, ūm; *very many*, plūrimī.
Victim, victimā, ae.
Victoria, Victōriā, ae (*prop. name*).
Victory, victōriā, ae.
Violate, violārē, āv, āt; rumpērē, rūp, rupt.
Virgin, virgō, inīs.
Virtue, virtūs, ūtis.
Voice, vox, vōcis.

W.

Wage (as war), gērērē, gess, gest;
 inferrē, tūl, lāt.
Walk, ambūlārē, āv, āt.
Wall, mūrūs, ī.
War, bellūm, ī.
Warn, admōnērē, u, it.
Wash, lāvārē, lāv, laut, and lāvāt.
Wasp, crābrō, ōnīs.
Waste, perdērē, did, dīt.
Watch, vīgīlārē, āv, āt.
Water, āquā, ae.
Wax (as moon), crescērē, crēv, crēt.
Way, viā, ae; itēr, itinēris, n.

Wealthy, lōcuplēs, ētis.
Weep, flērē, ēv, ēt.
Weep for, lūgērē, lux.
Well, bēnē.
When, quūm.
Whence, undē.
Wherefore, quārē.
Whether, utrūm; *whether—or, in double questions*, utrūm—ān, in other cases, seu—seu; sīvē—sīvē.
While, dūm; *while walking*, intēr ambūlandūm.
White, candidūs, ā, ūm.
Who, which, that (rel.), quī, quae, quōd.
Who, which, what? (interrog.), quīs, quae, quīd? (*subs.*); quī, quae, quōd? (*adj.*).
Whole, tōtūs, ā, ūm (113, R.).
Wicked, imprōbūs, ā, ūm.
Wife, conjux, gīs.
Winter, hiems, īs.
Wisdom, sāpientiā, ae.
Wise, sāpiens, tīs.
Wish, vellē, vōlu.
With, cūm.
Within, intrā (*with acc.*).
Without, sinē (*with abl.*).
Witness, spectārē, āv, āt (543).
Wolf, lūpūs, ī.
Woman, mūliēr, īs.
Wonderful, mīrābilis, ē.
Wool, lānā, ae.
Word, verbūm, ī.
Work, ōpūs, ēris.
World, mundūs, ī; orbis terrārūm.
Worthy, dignūs, ā, ūm.
Would that, ūtinām, o sī.
Wound, s., vulnūs, ēris.
Wound, v., vulnērārē, āv, āt.
Wretched, mīser, ā, ūm.
Write, scribērē, ps, pt.
Wrong, v., violārē, āv, āt.

Y.

Year, annūs, ī.
Yesterday, hesternō diē.
Yet, tāmēn.
You, tū, tuī.
Your, thy, tuūs, ā, ūm; *your, vestēr,*
 trā, trūm.

ARNOLD'S CLASSICAL SERIES

I.

A FIRST AND SECOND LATIN BOOK

AND PRACTICAL GRAMMAR. By THOMAS K. ARNOLD, A. M. Revised and carefully
Corrected, by J. A. Spencer, A. M. One vol. 12mo., 75 cts.

II.

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION:

A Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition. By THOMAS K. ARNOLD, A. M.
Revised and Corrected by J. A. Spencer, A. M. 12mo., \$1.

III.

FIRST GREEK BOOK;

With Easy Exercises and Vocabulary. By THOMAS K. ARNOLD, A. M. Revised and Cor-
rected by J. A. Spencer, A. M. 12mo., 75 cts.

IV.

GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION:

A Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition. By THOMAS K. ARNOLD, A. M.
Revised and Corrected by J. A. Spencer, A. M. One vol. 12mo., 75 cts.

V.

GREEK READING BOOK,

For the Use of Schools; containing the substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Com-
position, and a Treatise on the Greek Particles, by the Rev. THOMAS K. ARNOLD,
A. M., and also a Copious Selection from Greek Authors, with English
Notes, Critical and Explanatory, and a Lexicon, by
J. A. Spencer, A. M. 12mo., \$1 25

VI.

CORNELIUS NEPOS;

With Practical Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. By
THOMAS K. ARNOLD, A. M. Revised, with Additional Notes, by Prof. Johnson,
Professor of the Latin Language in the University of the City of
New-York. 12mo. A new, enlarged edition, with
Lexicon, Index, &c., \$1.

"ARNOLD'S GREEK AND LATIN SERIES.—The publication of this valuable collection of
classical school books may be regarded as the presage of better things in respect to the mode of
teaching and acquiring languages. Heretofore boys have been condemned to the drudgery of
going over Latin and Greek Grammar without the remotest conception of the value of what
they were learning, and every day becoming more and more disgusted with the dry and un-
meaning task; but now, by Mr. Arnold's admirable method—substantially the same with that of
Dillendorff—the moment they take up the study of Latin or Greek, they begin to learn sentences,
to acquire ideas, to see how the Romans and Greeks expressed themselves, how their mode of
expression differed from ours, and by degrees they lay up a stock of knowledge which is utterly
astonishing to those who have dragged on month after month in the old-fashioned, dry, and
tedious way of learning languages.

"Mr. Arnold, in fact, has had the good sense to adopt the system of nature. A child learns
his own language by *imitating* what he hears, and constantly *repeating* it till it is fastened in
the memory; in the same way Mr. A. puts the pupil immediately to work at Exercises in Latin
and Greek, involving the elementary principles of the language—words are supplied—the mode
of putting them together is told the pupil—he is shown how the ancients expressed their ideas,
and then, by repeating these things again and again—*iterum iterumque*—the docile pupil has
them indelibly impressed upon his memory and rooted in his understanding.

"The American Editor is a thorough classical scholar, and has been a practical teacher for
years in this city. He has devoted the utmost care to a complete revision of Mr. Arnold's works,
has corrected several errors of inadvertence or otherwise, has rearranged and improved various
matters in the early volumes of the series, and has attended most diligently to the accurate print-
ing and mechanical execution of the whole. We anticipate most confidently the speedy adoption
of these works in our schools and colleges."

"Arnold's Series of Classical Works has attained a circulation almost unparalleled, being
introduced into nearly all the Colleges and leading Educational Institutions in the United States

Greek and Latin.

THE HISTORIES
OF
CAIUS CORNELIUS TACITUS.

WITH NOTES FOR COLLEGES.

BY W. S. TYLER,

Professor of Languages in Amherst College.

One volume, 12mo. \$1.00.

The text of this edition follows, for the most part, Orelli's, Zurich, 1848, which, being based on new and most faithful recension of the Medicean MS., by his friend Baiter, may justly be considered as marking a new era in the history of the text of Tacitus. In several passages, however, where he has needlessly departed from the MS., I have not hesitated to adhere to it in company with other editors, believing, that not unfrequently "the most corrected copies are the less correct." The various readings have been carefully compared throughout, and, if important, are referred to in the notes.

The editions which have been most consulted, whether in the criticism of the text or in the preparation of the notes, are, besides Orelli's, those of Walther, Halle, 1831; Ruperti, Hanover, 1839; and Döderlein, Halle, 1847. * * * *

It will be seen, that there are not unfrequent references to my edition of the *Germania* and *Agricola*. These are not of such a nature, as to render this incomplete without that, or essentially dependent upon it. Still, if both editions are used, it will be found advantageous to read the *Germania* and *Agricola* first. The Treatises were written in that order, and in that order they best illustrate the history of the author's mind. The editor has found in his experience as a teacher that students generally read them in that way with more facility and pleasure, and he has constructed his notes accordingly. It is hoped, that the notes will be found to contain not only the grammatical, but likewise all the geographical, archæological and historical illustrations, that are necessary to render the author intelligible. The editor has at least endeavored to avoid the fault, which Lord Bacon says "is over usual in annotations and commentaries, viz., to blanch the obscure places, and discourse upon the plain." But it has been his constant, not to say his chief aim, to carry students beyond the dry details of grammar and lexicography, and introduce them into a familiar acquaintance and lively sympathy with the author and his times, and with that great empire, of whose degeneracy and decline in its beginnings he has bequeathed to us so profound and instructive a history. The Indexes have been prepared with much labor and care, and, it is believed, will add materially to the value of the work.—*Extract from Preface.*

THE GERMANIA AND AGRICOLA
OF
CAIUS CORNELIUS TACITUS.

WITH NOTES FOR COLLEGES.

BY W. S. TYLER,

Professor of the Greek and Latin Languages in Amherst College.

One very neat volume, 12mo. 62½ cents.

"We welcome the book as a useful addition to the classical literature of our country. It is very correctly and elegantly prepared and printed. Thirteen pages are occupied by a well-written Life of Tacitus, in which not merely outward events are narrated, but the character of the historian, both as a man and a writer, is minutely and faithfully drawn. The notes to each of the treatises are introduced by a general *critique* upon the merits and matter of the work. The body of the notes is drawn up with care, learning, and judgment. Points of style and grammatical constructions, and historical references, are ably illustrated. We have been struck with the elegant precision which marks these notes; they hit the happy medium between the too much of some commentators, and the too little of others."—*North American Review.*

Among the numerous classical Professors who have highly commended and introduced this volume are FELTON of Howard, LINCOLN of Brown University, CROSBY of Dartmouth, COLEMAN of Princeton, NORTH of Hamilton, PACKARD of Bowdoin, OWEN of New-York, CHAMPLAIN of Waterville, &c., &c.

Greek and Latin.

TITUS LIVIUS.

CHIEFLY FROM THE TEXT OF ALSCHESKI

WITH

ENGLISH NOTES, GRAMMATICAL AND EXPLANATORY

TOGETHER

WITH A GEOGRAPHICAL AND HISTORICAL INDEX.

BY J. L. LINCOLN,

Professor of Latin in Brown University.

WITH AN ACCOMPANYING PLAN OF ROME, AND A MAP OF THE PASSAGE OF HANNIBAL.

One volume, 12mo. Price \$1.

The publishers believe that, in the edition of Livy herewith announced, a want is supplied which has been universally felt; there being previous to this no American edition furnished with the requisite apparatus for the successful prosecution of the study of this Latin author.

OPINIONS OF CLASSICAL PROFESSORS.

From Professor Kingsley, of Yale College.

"I have not yet been able to read the whole of your work, but have examined it enough to be satisfied that it is judiciously prepared, and well adapted to the purpose intended. We use it for the present year, in connection with the edition that has been used for several years. Most of the class, however, have procured your edition; and it is probable that next year it will be used by all."

From Professor Tyler, of Amherst College.

"The notes seem to me to be prepared with much care, learning, and taste; the grammatical illustrations are unusually full, faithful, and able. The book has been used by our Freshman Class, and will I doubt not come into general use in our colleges.

From Professor Packard, of Bowdoin College.

"I have recommended your edition to our Freshman Class. I have no doubt that your work will give a new impulse to the study of this charming classic.

From Professor Anderson, of Waterville College.

"A careful examination of several portions of your work has convinced me that, for the use of students it is altogether superior to any edition of Livy with which I am acquainted. Among its excellences you will permit me to name, the close attention given to particles—to the subjunctive mood—the constant references to the grammars—the discrimination of words nearly synonymous—and the care in giving the localities mentioned in the text. The book will be hereafter used in our college."

From Professor Johnson, of New-York University.

"I can at present only say that your edition pleases me much. I shall give it to one of my classes next week. I am prepared to find it just what was wanted."

WORKS OF HORACE.

WITH ENGLISH NOTES, CRITICAL AND EXPLANATORY.

BY J. L. LINCOLN,

Professor of Latin in Brown University.

WITH MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

One volume, 12mo.

The text of this edition is chiefly that of Orelli; and the Notes, besides embodying whatever is valuable in the most recent and approved German editions of Horace, contain the results of the Editor's studies and experience as a College Professor, which he has been gathering and maturing for several years with a view to publication. It has been the aim of both the Publishers and the Editor to make this edition in all respects suitable to the wants of American schools and colleges.

C. JULIUS CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES

ON THE

GALLIC WAR.

With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory; A Lexicon, Geographical and Historical Indexes, &c.

BY REV. J. A. SPENCER, A. M.,

Editor of "Arnold's Series of Greek and Latin Books," etc.

One handsome vol, 12mo, with Map. Price \$1.

The press of Messrs. Appleton is becoming prolific of superior editions of the classics used in schools, and the volume now before us we are disposed to regard as one of the most beautiful and highly finished among them all, both in its editing and its execution. The classic Latin in which the greatest general and the greatest writer of his age recorded his achievements, has been sadly corrupted in the lapse of centuries, and its restoration to a pure and perfect text is a work requiring nice discrimination and sound learning. The text which Mr. Spencer has adopted is that of Oudendorp, with such variations as were suggested by a careful collation of the leading critics of Germany. The notes are as they should be, designed to aid the labors of the student, not to supersede them. In addition to these, the volume contains a sketch of the life of Cæsar, a brief Lexicon of Latin words, a Historical and a Geographical Index, together with a map of the country in which the great Roman conqueror conducted the campaigns he so graphically describes. The volume, as a whole, however, appears to be admirably suited to the purpose for which it was designed. Its style of editing and its typographical execution reminds us of Prof. Lincoln's excellent edition of Livy—a work which some months since had already passed to a second impression, and has now been adopted in most of the leading schools and colleges of the country.—*Providence Journal*.

"The type is clear and beautiful, and the Latin text, as far as we have examined it, extremely accurate, and worthy of the work of the great Roman commander and historian. No one edition has been entirely followed by Mr. Spencer. He has drawn from Oudendorp, Achaintre, Lamaire, Oberlin, Schneider, and Gian. His notes are drawn somewhat from the above, and also from Vossius, Davies, Clarke, and Stuttgart. These, together with his own corrections and notes, and an excellent lexicon attached, render this volume the most complete and valuable edition of Cæsar's Commentaries yet published.—*Albany Spectator*.

EXERCISES IN GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION.

ADAPTED TO THE

FIRST BOOK OF XENOPHON'S ANABASIS.

BY JAMES R. BOISE,

Professor in Brown University.

One volume, 12mo. Price seventy-five cents.

"For the convenience of the learner, an English-Greek Vocabulary, a Catalogue of the Irregular Verbs, and an Index to the principal Grammatical Notes have been appended.

"A school-book of the highest order, containing a carefully arranged series of exercises derived from the first book of Xenophon's Anabasis, (which is appended entire,) an English and Greek vocabulary and a list of the principal modifications of irregular verbs. We regard it as one peculiar excellence of this book, that it presupposes both the diligent scholar and the painstaking teacher, in other hands it would be not only useless, but *unusable*. We like it also, because, instead of aiming to give the pupil practice in a variety of styles, it places before him but a single model of Greek composition, and that the very author who combines in the greatest degree, purity of language and idiom, with a simplicity that both invites and rewards imitation."—*Christian Register*.

"Mr. Boise is Professor of Greek in Brown University, and has prepared these exercises as an accompaniment to the First Book of the Anabasis of Xenophon. We have examined the plan with some attention, and are struck with its utility. The exercises consist of short sentences, composed of the words used in the text of the Anabasis, and involving the same constructions; and the system, if faithfully pursued, must not only lead to familiarity with the author and a natural adoption of his style, but also to great ease and faultless excellence in Greek composition."—*Protestant Churchman*.

CICERO DE OFFICIIS.

WITH ENGLISH NOTES.

Chiefly selected and translated from the editions of Zumpt and Bonnell.

BY THOMAS A. THACHER,

Assistant Professor of Latin in Yale College.

One volume 12mo. 90 cents.

This edition of *De Officiis* has the advantage over any other with which we are acquainted, of more copious notes, better arrangement, and a more beautiful typography. The text of Zumpt appears to have been closely followed, except in a very few instances, where it is varied on the authority of Beier, Orelli and Bonnell. Teachers and students will do well to examine this edition.

"Mr. Thacher very modestly disclaims for himself more than the credit of a compiler and translator in the editing of this work. Being ourselves unblest with the works of Zumpt, Bonnell, and other German writers to whom Mr. T. credits most of his notes and comments, we cannot affirm that more credit is due him than he claims for his labors, but we may accord him the merit of an extremely judicious and careful compiler, if no more; for we have seen no remark without an important bearing, nor any point requiring elucidation which was passed unnoticed.

"This work of Cicero cannot but interest every one at all disposed to inquire into the views of the ancients on morals.

"This valuable philosophical treatise, emanating from the pen of the illustrious Roman, derives a peculiar interest from the fact of its being written with the object to instruct his son, of whom the author had heard unfavorable accounts, and whom the weight of his public duties had prevented him from visiting in person. It presents a great many wise maxims, apt and rich illustrations, and the results of the experience and reflections of an acute and powerful mind. It is well adapted to the use of the student by copious and elaborate notes, explanatory of the text, affording ample facilities to its entire comprehension. These have been gleaned with great judgment from the most learned and reliable authorities,—such as Zumpt, Bonnell, and others. Mr. Thacher has evinced a praiseworthy care and diligence in preparing the volume for the purposes for which it was designed."

SELECT ORATIONS OF M. TULLIUS CICERO.

WITH NOTES, FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY E. A. JOHNSON,

Professor of Latin in the University of New-York.

One volume, 12mo. \$1.

"This edition of Cicero's *Select Orations* possesses some special advantages for the student which are both new and important. It is the only edition which contains the improved text that has been prepared by a recent careful collation and correct deciphering of the best manuscripts of CICERO's writings. It is the work of the celebrated ORELLI, together with that of MADVIG and KLOTZ, and has been done since the appearance of ORELLI's complete edition. The Notes, by Professor JOHNSON, of the New-York University, have been chiefly selected, with great care, from the best German authors, as well as the English edition of ARNOLD. Although abundant, and almost profuse, they yet appear generally to relate to some important point in the text or subject, which the immature mind of pupils could not readily detect without aid. We do not know how a more perfect edition for the use of schools could well be prepared."

"This is a beautiful and most excellent edition of the great Roman orator; and, so far as we know, the best ever published in this country. It contains the four orations against Catiline, the oration for the Monilian Law, the oration for Marcellus, for Ligarius, for King Deiotarius, for the poet Archias, and for Milo. In preparing the text of these orations the editor has availed himself of the best German and English editions; and the notes have been gathered from every available source. These are so abundant—filling more than 300 pages—as to leave almost nothing to be desired by the student. They are philological, explanatory and historical. Each Oration is furnished with a valuable Introduction, containing what is necessary for the student to know preparatory to the commencement of the study of the Oration, and an analysis of the plan and argument of each Oration. Furnished with this edition of Cicero's *Select Orations*, the student is prepared to enter with pleasure and profit on the study of this elegant and renowned classic author."—*Boswell Atlas*.

GREEK OLLENDORFF;

BEING A PROGRESSIVE EXHIBITION OF THE PRINCIPLES
OF THE GREEK GRAMMAR.

Designed for Beginners in Greek, and as a Book of Exercises for
Academies and Colleges.

BY ASAHEL C. KENDRICK,

Professor of the Greek Language and Literature in the University of Rochester.

One volume, 12mo. \$1.

Extract from the Preface.

The present work is what its title indicates, strictly an *Ollendorff*, and aims to apply the methods which have proved so successful in the acquisition of the Modern languages to the study of Ancient Greek, with such differences of course as the different genius of the Greek, and the different purposes for which it is studied, would suggest. It differs from the modern *Ollendorffs* in containing Exercises for reciprocal translation, in confining them within a smaller compass, and in a more methodical exposition of the principles of the language.

It differs, on the other hand, from other excellent elementary works in Greek, which have recently appeared, in a more rigid adherence to the *Ollendorff* method, and the greater *simplicity* of its plan; in simplifying as much as possible the character of the Exercises, and in keeping out of sight every thing which would divert the student's attention from the naked construction.

The object of the Author in this work was twofold; first, to furnish a book which should serve as an *introduction* to the study of Greek, and precede the use of any Grammar. It will therefore be found, although not claiming to embrace all the principles of the Grammar, yet complete in itself, and will lead the pupil, by insensible gradations, from the simpler constructions to those which are more complicated and difficult.

The exceptions, and the more idiomatic forms, it studiously leaves one side, and only aims to exhibit the regular and ordinary usages of the language, as the proper starting point for the student's further researches.

In presenting these, the Author has aimed to combine the strictest accuracy with the utmost simplicity of statement. He hopes, therefore, that his work will find its way among a younger class of pupils than have usually engaged in the study of Greek, and will win to the acquisition of that noble tongue many in our Academies and Primary Schools, who have been repelled by the less simple character of our ordinary text-books. On this point he would speak earnestly. This book, while he trusts it will bear the criticism of the scholar, and be found adapted to older pupils, has been yet constructed with a constant reference to the wants of the young; and he knows no reason why boys and girls of twelve, ten, or even eight years of age may not advantageously be put to the study of this book, and, under skilful instruction, rapidly master its contents.

GESENIUS'S HEBREW GRAMMAR.

Fourteenth Edition, as revised by Dr. E. RODIGER. Translated by T. J. CONANT
Professor of Hebrew in Madison University, N. Y.

With the Modifications of the Editions subsequent to the Eleventh, by Dr. DAVIES
of Stepney College, London.

To which are added, A COURSE OF EXERCISES IN HEBREW GRAMMAR, and a HEBREW CHREIA
TOMATHY, prepared by the Translator. One handsomely printed vol. 8vo. Price \$2.

Extract from the Translator's Preface.

"The fourteenth edition of the Hebrew Grammar of Gesenius is now offered to the public by the translator of the eleventh edition, by whom this work was first made accessible to students in the English language. The conviction expressed in his preface to that edition, that its publication in this country would subserve the interests of Hebrew literature, has been fully sustained by the result. After a full trial of the merits of this work, both in America and in England, its republication is now demanded in its latest and most improved form."

A MANUAL

OF

GRECIAN AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES.

BY DR. E. F. BOJESEN,

Professor of the Greek Language and Literature in the University of Sorø.

Translated from the German.

EDITED, WITH NOTES AND A COMPLETE SERIES OF QUESTIONS, BY THE

REV. THOMAS K. ARNOLD, M. A.

REVISED WITH ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS.

One neat volume, 12mo. Price \$1.

The present Manual of Greek and Roman Antiquities is far superior to any thing on the same topics as yet offered to the American public. A principal Review of Germany says:—

Small as the compass of it is, we may confidently affirm that it is a great improvement on all preceding works of the kind. We no longer meet with the wretched old method, in which subjects essentially distinct are herded together, and connected subjects disconnected, but have a simple, systematic arrangement, by which the reader easily receives a clear representation of Roman life. We no longer stumble against countless errors in detail, which though long ago assailed and extirpated by Niebuhr and others, have found their last place of refuge in our Manuals. The recent investigations of philologists and jurists have been extensively, but carefully and circumspectly used. The conciseness and precision which the author has every where prescribed to himself, prevents the superficial observer from perceiving the essential superiority of the book to its predecessors, but whoever subjects it to a careful examination will discover this on every page."

The Editor says:—"I fully believe that the pupil will receive from these little works a correct and tolerably complete picture of Grecian and Roman life; what I may call the **POLITICAL** portions—the account of the national constitutions and their effects—appear to me to be of great value; and the very moderate extent of each volume admits of its being thoroughly mastered—of its being **GOT UP** and **RETAINED**."

"A work long needed in our schools and colleges. The manuals of Rennet, Adam, Potter, and Robinson, with the more recent and valuable translation of Eschenburg, were entirely too voluminous. Here is neither too much, nor too little. The arrangement is admirable—every subject is treated of in its proper place. We have the general Geography, a succinct historical view of the general subject; the chirography, history, laws, manners, customs, and religion of each State, as well as the points of union for all, beautifully arranged. We regard the work as the very best adjunct to classical study for youth that we have seen, and sincerely hope that teachers may be brought to regard it in the same light. The whole is copiously digested into appropriate questions."—*S. Lit. Gazette.*

From Professor Lincoln, of Brown University.

"I found on my table after a short absence from home, your edition of Bojesen's Greek and Roman Antiquities. Pray accept my acknowledgments for it. I am agreeably surprised to find on examining it, that within so very narrow a compass for so comprehensive a subject, the book contains so much valuable matter; and, indeed, so far as I see, omits noticing no topics essential. It will be a very useful book in Schools and Colleges, and it is far superior to any thing that I know of the same kind. Besides being cheap and accessible to all students, it has the great merit of discussing its topics in a consecutive and connected manner."

Extract of a letter from Professor Tyler, of Amherst College.

"I have never found time till lately to look over Bojesen's Antiquities, of which you were kind enough to send me a copy. I think it an excellent book; learned, accurate, concise, and perspicuous; well adapted for use in the Academy or the College, and comprehending in a small compass, more than is valuable on the subject than many extended treatises."

English.

HAND BOOK

OF

MEDIÆVAL GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY.

BY
WILHELM PUTZ,
PRINCIPAL TUTOR IN THE GYMNASIUM OF DUREN.

Translated from the German by

REV. R. B. PAUL, M. A.,

Vicar of St. Augustine's, Bristol, and late Fellow of Exeter College, Oxford.

1 volume, 12mo. 75 cts.

HEADS OF CONTENTS.

- I. Germany before the Migrations.
- II. The Migrations.

THE MIDDLE AGES.

FIRST PERIOD.—From the Dissolution of the Western Empire to the Accession of the Carolingians and Abbasides.

SECOND PERIOD.—From the Accession of the Carolingians and Abbasides to the first Crusade.

THIRD PERIOD.—Age of the Crusades.

FOURTH PERIOD.—From the Termination of the Crusades to the Discovery of America.

"The characteristics of this volume are: precision, condensation, and luminous arrangement. It is precisely what it pretends to be—a manual, a sure and conscientious guide for the student through the crooks and tangles of Mediæval history. All the great principles of this extensive Period are carefully laid down, and the most important facts skilfully grouped around them. There is no period of History for which it is more difficult to prepare a work like this, and none for which it is so much needed. The leading facts are well established, but they are scattered over an immense space; the principles are ascertained, but their development was slow, unequal, and interrupted. There is a general breaking up of a great body, and a parcelling of it out among small tribes, concerning whom we have only a few general data, and are left to analogy and conjecture for the details. Then come successive attempts at organization, each more or less independent, and all very imperfect. At last, modern Europe begins slowly to emerge from the chaos, but still under forms which the most diligent historian cannot always comprehend. To reduce such materials to a clear and definite form is a task of no small difficulty, and in which partial success deserves great praise. It is not too much to say that it has never been so well done within a compass so easily mastered, as in the little volume which is now offered to the public."—*Extract from American Preface.*

"This translation of a foreign school-book embraces a succinct and well arranged body of facts concerning European and Asiatic history and geography during the middle ages. It is furnished with printed questions, and it seems to be well adapted to its purpose, in all respects. The mediæval period is one of the most interesting in the annals of the world, and a knowledge of its great men, and of its progress in arts, arms, government and religion, is particularly important, since this period is the basis of our own social polity."—*Commercial Advertiser.*

"This is an immense amount of research condensed into a moderately sized volume, in a way which no one has patience to do but a German scholar. The beauty of the work is its luminous arrangement. It is a guide to the student amidst the intricacy of Mediæval History, the most difficult period of the world to understand, when the Roman Empire was breaking up and parcelling out into smaller kingdoms, and every thing was in a transition state. It was a period of chaos from which modern Europe was at length to arise.

The author has briefly taken up the principal political and social influences which were acting on society, and shown their bearing from the time previous to the migrations of the Northern nations, down through the middle ages to the sixteenth century. The notes on the crusades are particularly valuable, and the range of observation embraces not only Europe but the East. To the student it will be a most valuable Hand-book, saving him a world of trouble in hunting up authorities and facts."—*Rev. Dr. Kip, in Albany State Register.*

MANUAL

OF

ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY.

BY WILHELM PÜTZ,

PRINCIPAL TUTOR IN THE GYMNASIUM OF DUREN

Translated from the German.

EDITED BY THE REV. THOMAS K. ARNOLD, M. A.,

AUTHOR OF A SERIES OF "GREEK AND LATIN TEXT-BOOKS."

One volume, 12mo. \$1.

"At no period has History presented such strong claims upon the attention of the learned, as at the present day; and to no people were its lessons of such value as to those of the United States. With no past of our own to revert to, the great masses of our better educated are tempted to overlook a science, which comprehends all others in its grasp. To prepare a text-book, which shall present a full, clear, and accurate view of the ancient world, its geography, its political, civil, social, religious state, must be the result only of vast industry and learning. Our examination of the present volume leads us to believe, that as a text-book on Ancient History, for Colleges and Academies, it is the best compend yet published. It bears marks in its methodical arrangement, and condensation of materials, of the untiring patience of German scholarship; and in its progress through the English and American press, has been adapted for acceptable use in our best institutions. A noticeable feature of the book, is its pretty complete list of 'sources of information' upon the nations which it describes. This will be an invaluable aid to the student in his future course of reading."

"Wilhelm Pütz, the author of this 'Manual of Ancient Geography and History,' is Principal Tutor (*Oberlehrer*) in the Gymnasium of Duren, Germany. His book exhibits the advantages of the German method of treating History, in its arrangement, its classification, and its rigid analysis. The Manual is what it purports to be, 'a clear and definite outline of the history of the principal nations of antiquity,' into which is incorporated a concise geography of each country. The work is a text-book; to be *studied*, and not merely *read*. It is to form the groundwork of subsequent historical investigation,—the materials of which are pointed out, at the proper places, in the Manual, in careful references to the works which treat of the subject directly under consideration. The list of references (especially as regards earlier works) is quite complete,—thus supplying that desideratum in Ancient History and Geography, which has been supplied so fully by D. J. C. I. Gieseler in Ecclesiastical History.

"The nations whose history is considered in the Manual, are: in *Asia*, the Israelites, the Indians, the Babylonians, the Assyrians, the Medes, the Persians, the Phœnicians, the States of Asia Minor; in *Africa*, the Ethiopians, the Egyptians, the Carthaginians; in *Europe*, the Greeks, the Macedonians, the Kingdoms which arose out of the Macedonian Monarchy, the Romans. The order in which the history of each is treated, is admirable. To the whole are appended a 'Chronological Table,' and a well-prepared series of 'Questions.' The pronunciation of proper names is indicated,—an excellent feature. The accents are given with remarkable correctness. The typographical execution of the American edition is most excellent."—*S. W. Baptist Chronicle*.

"Like every thing which proceeds from the editorship of that eminent Instructor, T. K. Arnold, this Manual appears to be well suited to the design with which it was prepared, and will, undoubtedly, secure for itself a place among the text-books of schools and academies throughout the country. It presents an outline of the history of the ancient nations, from the earliest ages to the fall of the Western Empire in the sixth century, the events being arranged in the order of an accurate chronology, and explained by accompanying treatises on the geography of the several countries in which they transpired. The chief feature of this work, and this is a very important one, is, that it sets forth ancient history and ancient geography in their connection with each other.

"It was originally prepared by Wilhelm Pütz, an eminent German scholar, and translated and edited in England by Rev. T. K. Arnold, and is now revised and introduced to the American public in a well written preface, by Mr. George W. Greene, Teacher of Modern Languages in Brown University."—*Prov. Journal*.

MANUAL OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY.

BY WILHELM PUTZ,

Author of Manuals of "Ancient Geography and History," "Mediæval Geography and History," &c.

TRANSLATED FROM THE GERMAN. REVISED AND CORRECTED.

One volume, 12mo. \$1.

"Preface.—The present volume completes the series of Professor Putz's Handbooks of Ancient, Mediæval, and Modern Geography and History. Its adaptation to the wants of the student will be found to be no less complete than was to be expected from the former Parts, which have been highly approved by the public, and have been translated into several languages besides the English. The difficulty of compressing within the limits of a single volume the vast amount of historical material furnished by the progress of modern states and nations in power, wealth, science, and literature, will be evident to all on reflection; and they will find occasion to admire the skill and perspicacity of the Author of this Handbook, not only in the arrangement, but also in the facts and statements which he has adopted.

"In the American edition several improvements have been made; the sections relating to America and the United States have been almost entirely re-written, and materially enlarged and improved, as seemed on every account necessary and proper in a work intended for general use in this country; on several occasions it has been thought advisable to make certain verbal corrections and emendations; the facts and dates have been verified, and a number of explanatory notes have been introduced. It is hoped that the improvements alluded to will be found to add to the value of the present Manual."

FIRST LESSONS IN COMPOSITION,

IN WHICH THE PRINCIPLES OF THE ART ARE DEVELOPED IN CONNECTION WITH
THE PRINCIPLES OF GRAMMAR;

Embracing full Directions on the subject of Punctuation: with copious
Exercises.

BY G. P. QUACKENBOS, A.M.

Rector of the Henry Street Grammar School, N. Y.

One volume, 12mo. 45 cts.

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE.

A county superintendent of common schools, speaking of the important branch of composition, uses the following language: 'For a long time I have noticed with regret the almost entire neglect of the art of original composition in our common schools, and the want of a proper text-book upon this essential branch of education. Hundreds graduate from our common schools with no well-defined ideas of the construction of our language.' The writer might have gone further, and said that multitudes graduate, not only from common schools, but from some of our best private institutions, utterly destitute of all practical acquaintance with the subject: that to many such the composition of a single letter is an irksome, to some an almost impossible task. Yet the reflecting mind must admit that it is only this practical application of grammar that renders that art useful—that parsing is secondary to composing, and the analysis of our language almost unimportant when compared with its synthesis.

"One great reason of the neglect noticed above, has, no doubt, been the want of a suitable text-book on the subject. During the years of the Author's experience as a teacher, he has examined, and practically tested the various works on composition with which he has met. The result has been a conviction that, while there are several publications well calculated to advance pupils at the age of fifteen or sixteen, there is not one suited to the comprehension of those between nine and twelve; at which time it is his decided opinion that this branch should be taken up. Heretofore, the teacher has been obliged either to make the scholar labor through a work entirely too difficult for him, to give him exercises not founded on any regular system, or to abandon the branch altogether—and the disadvantages of either of these courses are at once apparent.

"It is this conviction, founded on the experience not only of the Author, but of many other teachers with whom he has consulted, that has led to the production of the work now offered to the public. It claims to be a first-book in composition, and is intended to initiate the beginner, by easy and pleasant steps, into that all important, but hitherto generally neglected, art."

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 037 356 A